

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OU_216653

UNIVERSAL
LIBRARY

OSMANIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARY V.1

Call No. 953.3 / K45I Accession No. 9215

Author Redhouse, sir. J. W

Title Pearl - strings 1906

This book should be returned on or before the date last marked below.

(Translations of the three Inscriptions
on the Cover.)

1. *Arabic.*

" These are our works which prove
what we have done ;
Look, therefore, at our works
when we are gone."

2. *Turkish.*

"His genius cast its shadow o'er the "world,
And in brief time he much achieved and
wrought:
The Age's Sun was he, and ageing suns
Cast lengthy shadows, though their time be
short."

(Kamal Pasha-zude.)

3. *Persian.*

' When we are dead, seek for our
resting-place
Not in the earth, but in the
hearts of men"

(Jalalu'd-Din Rumi.)

E. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL"
SERIES.

VOL. III.

THE PEARL-STRINGS;

A HISTORY OF THE RESULIYY DYNASTY OF YEMEN

BY

'ALIYYU'BNU'L-HASAN 'EL-KHAZREJIYY ;

WITH TRANSLATION, INTRODUCTION, ANNOTATIONS, INDEX,
TABLES, AND MAPS

BY THE LATE

SIR J. W. REDHOUSE, LITT.D. (CAMB),

K.C.M.G., K.N.I., K.L.S

HON. M.R.A.S., HON. M.R.S.L., ETC., ETC.

EDITED BY

E. G. BROWNE, R. A. NICHOLSON, AND A. ROGERS,

ANT^h)

PRINTED FOR THE TRUSTEES OF THE

" K. J. W. GIBB MEMORIAL."

VOLUME I,

CONTAINING THE FIRST PART OF THE TRANSLATION.

LEYDEN: E. J. BRILL, IMPRIMERIE ORIENTALE.

LONDON : LUZAC & CO., 46, GREAT RUSSELL STREET.

1906.

PRINTED BY
STEPHEN AUSTIN AND SONS, LTD.,
HERTEORD.

SHORT TABLE OF CONTENTS.

VOL. I OF THE TRANSLATION.

Detailed Table of Contents of Vol. I . . .	xiii
Editor's Preface	xxi
Author's Preface	3
Introduction	5
Chap. I.—Preliminary	45
Section : The Great Dam of Me'rib	50
„ Ruin of the Great Dam	53
Journeys of Ghassan .	56
„ The Ghassan Princes	60
„ Line of Jefna	65
„ The Benu Resul	74
„ Benu'Eyyub of Yemen	75
Chap. II.—The Mansiiriyy Sovereignty	92
Chap. III.—The Mudhafferiy Sovereignty .	123
Chap. IV.—The First or Lesser 'Eshrefiyy Sovereignty	236
Chap. V.—The Mu'eyyadiyy Sovereignty	247

VOL. II OF THE TRANSLATION.

Chap. VI.—The Mujahidiyy Sovereignty.
Chap. VII.— The 'Afdaliyy Sovereignty.
Chap. VIII.—The Second or Greater 'Eshrefiyy Sovereignty
Finis.

VOL. III.—ANNOTATIONS.

VOL. IV — INDEX ; TABLES ; MAPS.

VOL. V—ARABIC TEXT.

CONTENTS OF VOLUME I.

CHAPTER I.	I	PAGE
Lineage of the Re&tiliyy dynasty	45	Bedru'd-Din Hasan at San'a' 80
Seba' and his sons, Himyer and Kehlan	45	Nuru'd-Din 'Umer in Wasab... 80
Harith the Ra'ish; 'Amir son of		Nuru'd-Din 'Umer at Mekka 80
Ilaritha.	46	Yusuf son of 'Umer born at Mekka 80
Prophecy of Harith the Ra'ish	46	Nuru'd-Din 'Ata-Bek and viceroy 81
'Amr son of 'Amir, the Little Tatterer	50	Revolt of Yez'um the Sufiyy .. 81
Founder of the Great Dam of Me'iib	51	Battle of 'Usr near San'a' 81
The Great Dam.	51	Melik Mes'ud returns to Yemen 87
Fountains of Bilqi's; great fertility	52	Arrests the sons of' A liyy 87
Dream of Tarifa.	53	Goes to Mekka ; Nuru'd-Din viceroy 88
Emigration stratagem of 'Amr . . .	54	Melik Mes'ud dies at Mekka 90
Migrates, with 'Ezd tribe, to 'Akk . .	56	
Dies there; Tha'leba the 'Anqa'		CHAPTER II.
succeeds	SI	
Tha'leba migrates to Mekka	57	Character of Nuru'd-Din 'Umer 92
Khuza'a put in charge of the Ka'ba	58	Portents of coming sovereignty 92
Dispersal of 'Ezd from Mekka	58	His measures 94
Haritha 'Ews and Khazrej migrate to		Marries Bintu Hawza 95
Yethrib (Medina)	58	Treaty with Sherifs 95
Jefna with Ghassan goes to Syria	59	'Esedu'd-Din, prince of San'a' 96
Ghassan lord of Trans-Jordan	60	Nuru'd-Din occupies Mekka... 96
Descendants of Jefna in Syria	61	Egypt expels his garrison 97
The last prince, Jebela son of 'Lyhem	72	Nuru'd-Din proclaims his sovereignty
Resul son of Hartin in Egypt	74	and coins money 97
Salahu'd-Din sends him to Yemen ...	75	His second occupation of Mekka 98
Turan Shah made Sultan of Yemen ...	75	His embassy to the Caliph 98
Shemsu'd-D'n 'Aliyy and four sons ...	76	His pilgrimage at Mekka 98
Successors of Turan Shah in Yemen ...	76	Caliph sends the curtain for Ka'ba 98
Death of Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy	79	Caliph sends Nuru'd-Din's diploma 98

	PAGE		PAGE
Caliph sends lamps for Ka'ba	99	Character of Sultan Nuru'd-Din	117
Egypt again occupies Mekka...	99	Buried by the Benu Firuz	118
Battle of Kharifeyn	99	Institutions founded by him	118
Niiru'd-Din occupies Hajja, etc.	99	Adventure with the lord of Haly	119
Battle of Qarin	102	Issue of Sultan Niiru'd-Din ...	120
Niiru'd-Din gives back Hajja, etc.	102	His poets-laureate ..	120
Niiru'd-Din reoccupies Mekka	103	He adopts the school of Shaf 'iyy ...	122
Sultan of Egypt dies	104	A dream of his	122
Yemen garrison expelled from Mekka	105	His associates	122
Nuru'd-Din occupies Kemim	105		
Nuru'd-Din reoccupies Mekka	105		
Mekka again seized by Egypt	105	CHAPTER III.	
Adventure of Sultan'b Jew doctor	106	Accession of Sultan Melik Mudhaffer	123
Sultan occupies Yumeyn and Shewahid	107	Slave troops march to Zebid and Feshal	123
Adventure of his poet in Khawlan ..	107	Slave troops swear fealty to Fakhr'u-d-	
Fresh expeditions to Mekka	109	Din entitled Melik-Mu'adhdham ...	123
Niiru'd-Din goes himself to Mekka ...	109	Princess Daru'sh-Shemsiyy and eunuch	
Mubarizu'd-Din enters his service ...	109	Taju'd-Dfn prepare defence	123
Sultan buys Yenbu' to demolish it ..	109	Fight with rebel slave troops	123
Sultan returns from Mekka ..	110	Melik Mudhaffer at Mehjem	123
The Caliph Mustansir dies ..	no	Influence of Bintu Hawzu	124
Baghdad pilgrims reach Mekka	no	Melik Mudhaffer meditates flight ..	124
Sultan occupies Mt. Hufash and Sumat	no	His embarrassment at events	124
Sultan occupies 'Ulwan's country ...	no	Enrols troops; leaves for Zebfd	124
Sultan occupies Upper and Lower		A happy omen	124
Yemen	III	Enrols more troops during journey ..	125
Sultan occupies the 'Awadir country...	III	Addresses populations.	126
Adventure of 'Esedu'd-Din	III	Fakhr'u'd-Din in flight; slaves submit	126
'Imam 'Ahmed Qasimiyy takes arms.,	111	Slaves seize Fakhr'u'd-Din	126
'Esedu'd-Din offers to join him	112	Another version of the event	126
Nuru'd-Diu hastes to San'a'	112	A third version	127
Fights the 'Imam near Thua	112	'Esedu'd-Din wishes to save his brother	127
Engagements in the Hadur, etc.	112	Melik Mudhaffer enters Zebid	128
Sultan appoints a new governor at		Eulogy	128
Mekka	113	Auxiliaries dismissed with gifts	130
New governor deposed	114	Sultan takes Lahj, 'Aden, and 'Ebyen	130
Battles with 'Imam's forces	114	Also Yumeyn, Munif, Ma'afir, Jeba'	130
Sultan goes towards Yemen		Besieges Ta'izz, with aid of Medh-hij	130
Fighting in Jehran	" 5	Occupies Ta'izz by a stratagem	130
Fighting in the pass of Gha'ira	116	Takes Habb; eulogy	131
Fighting at Kemim ...	116	'Imam 'Ahmed b. Huseyn takes San'a'	132
Second battle of Qarin	116	'Esedu'd-Din's intrigue with 'Imam...	132
Murder of the Sultan	116	'Esedu'd-Din marches against Sultan	133
Prediction by an Indian envov	117	'Esedu'd-Din submits to Sultan	133

CONTENTS.

XV

	PAGE		PAGE
'Esedu'd-Din sent against 'Imam	134	Ultimately buried at Dheneban	150
The 'Imam quits San'a'	134	'Imam Hasan b. Wehhas sets up	151
The Sultan goes to San'a'	134	Sultan occupies castles in Hajja	151
Sultan's uncles come from Egypt	134	Fatal scarcity.	151
Sultan and 'Imam make peace	134	Sultan sends troops to Hajja ...	152
Sultan enjoins honour to his uncles ...	134	Sultan occupies Hajja and other castles	153
Sultan goes to meet them at Hays ..	135	Sultan goes to Dhemar ; takes castles	153
Sulran arrests them and a cousin	135	Zeydiyya Sherifs at variance ...	154
Sultan sends embassy to Baghdad ...	136	Earthquakes at San'a', etc.	154
Caliph confirms Sultan over Yemen...	136	Sultan's minaret at Mekka	154
Sultan reconciled with half-brothers	137	Sultan equips 'Esedu'd-Din ...	'54
Caliph drapes Ka'ba and invests Sultan	137	'Ksedu'd-Din takes 'Imam prisoner...	155
'Imam intrigues with 'Esedu'd-Din ..	138	Sdnmu'd-Dfn keeps 'Imam in prison	155
Sultan sends forces against them	138	'Esedu'd-Din becomes an outcast	156
Battles ...	138	Submits to the Sultan.	156
Sultan's forces retreat	138	Sent prisoner to Ta'izz.	156
Sultan takes Dumluwa by stratagem	139	Governors of San'a' ; castles taken ...	157
Death of a great jurist.	140	Sultan goes to Mekka	157
'Esedu'd-Din and 'Imam quarrel	141	Sultan returns ; a would-be 'Imam ...	159
'Ksedu'd-Din goes to Sheykh 'Ulwan	141	Death of Sheykh 'Ulwan Jahdcriyy	159
Sultan goes to attack them ...	141	His prayer for deliverance	160
'Ulwan arranges peace ; eulogy	142	His kindness to orphan maidens	161
'Esedu'd-Din submits...	143	His aid at capture of Ta'izz	161
'Ksedu'd-Din enters San'd'	143	Specimens of his poetry	161
Sultan goes up to San'a'	143	Sultan buys J ahiliyy castle	163
Sultan demolishes Tesa' ; returns, and		Sultan occupies Shcwafi castle	163
occupies Derwan	144	Sultan besieges Dhemermer ...	163
Sherif of Mekka murdered	144	Singular malady of the besieged	163
'Imam and retainers quarrel ...	144	Sultan drapes Mekka and Medina ...	163
Sultan assists retainers	144	Sultan occupies Himyeriyy castles ...	163
They take Sa'da ; 'Imam flees	144	Sultan takes Tbnu-'Aqass and Zahir	164
Birash of Sa'da taken ; return	145	Death of Bcdru'd-Din Hasan Resuliy)	164
Sultan sends troops to Dhahir ..	145	Dhemermer surrendered to Sultan	164
'Imam muted at Naqil Hasanat	145	(Jreat Ka?? and Birash Baqiriyy do. ...	165
'Imam in Khuleb ; troops return	146	Masna'aand 'Azzan do.	165
Sherifs Rajih, 'Ebu-Numeyy, and 'Idris	146	Lesser Fass, 'Erdem, Qufl, Shemsan do.	165
Sultan sends troops to Mekka	146	Death of Kek-Temir Qallab at Zahir ...	166
Sultan visited by Hamziyy Shen'fs ...	146	Sultan invades Dhahir and Hajja	166
Mekka Sherifs defeat Sultan's troops	147	Sends Melik 'Eshref to Hajja	166
Deaths of two eminent Yemen men ...	147	'Eshref conquers Hajja and Mikhlaflj	166
Scarcity at Sa'da, San'a', and Dhahir	148	.Sultan attacks Dethina and Jahafil ..	167
Zeydiyya chiefs reprehend the 'Imam	148	Eulogium.	167
They attack him ; Sultan assists them	149	Sultan occupies 'Artisan	170
'Imam 'Ahmad b. Huseyn killed	149	Sultan sends troops against Sa'da ..	170

	PAGE		PAGE
Battle of Naqflu'l-'Ajela	170	Peace with 'Imam and Sherifs	180
Capture of Sa'da	171	Death of Sheykh Ghirniyyi	180
Sultan adorns door of Ka'ba	171	His pledge of abstinence	181
Envoy from Egypt with presents	171	Dies at Medina ; buried there	181
Death of eunuch Nidhamu'd-Din	171	(irreat famine	181
Capture of Hirash of Sa'da	172	Khawwaliyyun seize Kewkeban	181
Siege of Thula	172	'Esediyya slave-guards revolt	182
Siege of Telmus	172	They invite 'Imam to San'a'	182
'Imam Hasan b. Wehhas set free	172	Council of war of Sherifs	183
'Imam defeats Sultan's forces	172	'Imam advances towards Dhemar	183
Siege of Thula raised	173	Sends messengers to rouse the country	184
Sultan of Egypt's pilgrimage	173	Sultan advances; sends messengers	184
Death of Sultan's half-brother	173	'Imam's council; Sarimu'd-Din	185
Expedition to Sa'da; peace	173	Sultan at Dhemdr	185
Murder of Sherif of Mekka ; 'Ebii Numeyy	173	Demonstrations ; counter - demonstrations	185
Siege of Thula resumed	173	Sherifs prepare to fight ; 'Imam in castle	186
Sultan occupies Masani' castles	174	Sultan overruled by his general	186
'Ibrahim b. 'Ahmed Hedewiyy 'Imam	174	Attacks the Sherifs	187
Death of judge Muhammed b. 'Umer	174	Gains a complete victory	187
Death of jurist Yahya b. Sahm, Shihabiyy	174	Takes 'Imam prisoner in castle	187
Death of jurist Yahya" b. 'Ibrahim b. Mi'akk	175	Treats him generously	187
His eulogy of blackness	176	Carries him prisoner to Ta'izz	187
His administrative justice	176	'Imam's poetry in prison	187
Marries the girl of his early love	177	Sultan's troops occupy San'a'	188
Imam 'Ibrahim b. 'Ahmed intrigues	177	Mutahher b. Yahya made 'Imam	188
Sherifs in disgust attack Dhemar	177	Peace between Sultan and Sarimu'd-Din	188
'Imam passes San'a'; not ganisoucd	178	'Imam becomes vagrant	188
Sultan's governor rcinfmees blmkiulc of Thula, and attacks the Sheiifs	178	Sultan's troops attack Hadi'ir	188
Various expeditions	178	Negotiations for peace	189
Sultan goes to Dhemar	178	Hadur and Redman ceded to Sultan	189
Sultan repairs walls of Dhemar	178	Death of Prince 'Esedu'd-Din	189
Sultan sends draperies to Ka'ba	179	Poetry to him by his son	190
Sultan enters San'a'; Sherifs take 'Azzan	179	Death of 'Ebu Bekr b. Yusuf Mekkiyy	190
Negotiations for peace	179	His dream of Judgment-day	190
Beyt Khabbid taken; wine-jars broken	179	Dream of a godly man at Zebid	191
Hadda and Siba' devastated	179	Dhafar the Habudite captured	191
Ancient almond-tree destroyed	179	(auscs of that event	192
Dhafar built on Peak of 'Anter	179	Expeditions by land and sea	193
Berdqish seized and restored	180	Forces rendezvous at Reysut	196
		Dhafar troops come out to battle	196
		Fight; defeat of Dhafar forces	197

CONTENTS.

XV11

	PAGE		PAGE
Prince of Dhafar killed in battle	197	Death of Ebu Ilujr at 'Aden	211
His Qur'an, whip, and corpse	197	His pious scrupulousness	213
Sultan's troops enter Dhafar	197	His hospitality; his alms	213
Sultan's troops enter Shibam	197	Suicide of his son	214
Habudite family sent to Zebid	198	Dream of a pious man thereon	214
Presents and visits by princes	198	Daughters of 'Ebu Hujr; dream of one	215
Deputy-governor appointed	198	Sarimu'd-Din seeks to regain Qufl	215
A governor sent to Hadramawt	198	'Imam invades Jewf, Dhahir, and	
His policy	198	Zahir	215
Public rejoicings at Zebid	199	Sarimu'd-Din attacks Qufl	215
Sherifs come on visit to Zebid	199	Siege of Zahir raised; Qufl pressed	216
Sarimu'd-Din seizes their castles	199	Melik 'Eshi of supersedes Melik Wathiq	216
The Intimate sent to investigate	199	Sarimu'd-Din shut in Qubba	216
The Intimate returns without success	200	Makes peace with Melik 'Eshref	217
Kewkeban recovered by Sultan	200	Melik Mu'eyyed succeeds at San'a'	217
Rupture of Sultan with the Sherifs	200	Melik Mu'eyyed embroiled with 'Imam	218
Expedition against the Dhahir	200	Death of eunuch governor of Dumluwa	218
Death of Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy b.		Mutiny quelled by Melik Mu'eyyed	218
Yahya.	201	Attack on Bcyl 'En'um; 'Imam con-	
Poetry of his; answered by 'Ibnu Da "as	201	nives	219
Is sent to fetch Prince 'Esedu'd-Din	202	Death of 'Ebu'l-Khattab of Jerusalem	219
Both sent prisoners to Ta'izz	202	His biography.	219
Death of the jurist Hadramawtiyy	202	Death of Sarimu'd-Din b. 'Imam	220
A miracle by him	202	Specimen of his poetry	220
Palace of San'a' falls on governor	202	Circumcision of Sultan's grandsons	220
Hairbreadth escapes	203	Humamu'd-Din seizes Dhafar and	
Death of the governor, Sinjcr Sha'biyy	204	Telmus	221
Sarimu'd-Din marches; is checked	204	'Imam Mutahher breaks the peace	221
Death of judge Muliammed 'Ibbiyy.	205	Melik Mu'eyyed reduces east country	221
His carree	205	Melik Mu'eyyed fights the 'Tin'im	221
Anecdotes showing his, character	205	Death of jurist 'Ibnu 'Ujryl	221
Melik Wathiq, governor of San'a'	208	His great learning and reputation	221
'Ibrahim b. 'Ahmed made 'Imam	209	His burial at Beytu'l-Faqih	223
Marches towards Sa'da	209	Melik Mu'eyyed takes Mount Lcwdh	223
Sultan's troops enter Sa'da	209	Melik Mu'eyyed and Jemalu'd-Din...	223
Death of the prisoner 'Imam	210	Jemalu'd-Din joined by 'Imam, etc.	224
Poetry by him in prison.	210	Poetical defiance to Melik Mu'eyyed	224
Death of 'Imam Hasan b. Wehhas	210	Melik Mu'eyyed's poetical reply	224
Melik Wathiq besieges Thula	210	Sultan sends troops; reconciliation	225
Peace; Qufl exchanged for Dhafar	211	Melik Mu'eyyed checked near Sa'da	225
Death of the judge of San'a'	211	Melik Wathiq prince of Dhafar	
Coin struck by Sultan at Sa'da	212	Habudryy	225
Visit to court of Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy	212	Melik Mu'eyyed and Jemalu'd-Din	226
Poetry by him on that occasion	212	They make war on one another	227

	PAGE		PAGE
Melik 'Eshref goes to restore order	228	A letter from 'Ebu Bekr b. Muhammed	240
Sherffs come to him at San'a'	228	Poets congratulate the Sultan	240
Honourably received by him...	228	Sultan rewards chief auxiliary	240
Pence ; Festival of Sacrifices	220	Princess Daru/sh-Sbensiyy sick	240
Melik 'Eshref returns to Ta'izz	229	Storm of rain and hail	240
Sultan abdicates in his favour	229	Enormous hailstones	241
Melik Mu'eyyed retires to Shahr	230	Sultan at Dumluwa and Zebid	241
Sultan Melik Mudhaffer dies at		Sultan visits NakhI with 300 litters ...	24 1
Thu'bat	230	Sultan takes Methwa	241
His qualities	231	Garrison surprised and killed	242
His pious foundations	231	Death of the Intimate 'Imraniyy	242
Those of his slave the eunuch Bedr	232	Hib character, etc.	242
The deceased Sultan's learning		Four wezirs Judge of Judges also	242
His diligence over books	233	Princess Daru/sh-ShfMiisiyy dies	243
His knowledge of medicine	233	Her character and great acts	243
His minute scrutiny of books	234	Death of Sultan 'Eshref I	244
His justice and care for his subjects ...	234	Accession of Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed	245
Maintained troops, in Egypt against		His first nets	245
Franks	234	Character of Sultan Melik 'Eshref I	245
Intercedes for Muslims in China	235	His sons and wezirs	246
His seventeen sons ; five survive him	235		
His wezir	235		
His poets laureate	235		

CHAPTER V.

CHAPTER IV.			
		Reign of Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed	247
		Funeral of Melik 'Eshref I	247
		Melik Nash lenders fealty	248
Reign of Sultan Melik 'Eshref I	236	Melik 'Adil does the same	248
Melik Mu'eyyed returns from Shahr	236	'Ebu Bekr b Muhammed, Yahvawiyy	248
Melik Mansiir, etc., encourage him	236	His poetical letter to Sultan 'Eshref I	249
Melik Mu'eyyed reaches 'Ehyen	237	Joins Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed	251
The garrison flee or join him	237	His brother made Intimate and wezi	251
Sends his family to Semdan	237	His brother made also Judge of Judge	251
Advances on 'Aden	237	Former Wezir-Judge accused	251
Consults as to mountain paths	237	Former Wezir-Judge incarcerated	252
Sends an ambush by night	237	Also three other notables	252
Advances; ambush seize gate	238	Also 'Emir of Jan-Dar guards	252
Takes Lahj and 'Ebyen	238	Sherifs sue for peace	252
Melik 'Eshref sends his son to watch	238	Sultan gives fiefs to his two sons	253
Melik 'Eshref sends other troops also	238	Sultan obtains cession of Hajja	253
Sultan's forces advance to Juwwa	239	Sultan's brother Mes'ud rebels	253
Melik Mu'eyyed marches against them	239	Sultan sends Melik Mansur	254
Melik Mu'eyyed taken prisoner	239	Death of 'Aliyy b. 'Umer, 'Uzeynyy	254
Sent to Ta'izz	239	Melik Mes'ud sues for peace	255

	PAGE		PAGE
Melik Mes'ud sent to Hays ..	255	Death of Melik 'Adil b. 'Eshref I ...	272
Melik Mudhaffer resigns San'a'	255	Mu'eyyediyya College built at Ta'izz	273
Sherif Suleyman murdered	255	Victory of Merju's-Suffer in Syria ...	
Emir Tughril besieges Shakhab	255	Seyfu'd-Din Selar at Mekka .	274
Severe rain-storm	255	A merchant of Khata.	274
Jemalu'd-Din visits Me'rib	256	Fight with the Jahafil.	275
Death of 'Imam Mulahher b Yahya .	256	Skirmishes ; negotiations near Sa'da	276
Expeditions to Hajja, Yumeyn, Dhafer	256	Death of Sultan's son Melik Dhafir	277
Expeditions against the Dhahir	256	Movements of troops at Sa'da	277
Expeditions against Himyer, Tarf,		Death of Tahir b. 'Ebu Numeyy ..	278
Sa'da	257	Sultan's indisposition . .	278
Expeditions against Dhafar of the		Embassy to Egypt	278
Shenfs.	257	March to Anan, Sa'da, and Felela ...	279
Expeditions against Kewla, 'Eshyah,		Rumeytha and Humeйда Sherifs,	
Miqa'.	258	Mekka	280
Truce ; Dheyfan surrendered	258	'Abdu'lBaqib. 'Abdu'l-Hamid	280
'Adhima and Miqa surrendered	259	Peace at Sa'da and TeImus .	281
Peace with the Sherifs.	259	Changes of governors	281
Birth and death of a prince ,...	260	Return of embassy ; pilgrims at Mekka	282
Sultan visits Zebid ; returns to Ta'iz	260	Qara'i' and Shureyb taken near Tawila	282
Sultan visits 'Aden	261	Birth of Melik Mujahid	283
MehkMudhaffer takes 'Arasuud'Eibab	261	Suipaise and in-apliue of Sdbbu	283
Death of Jemalu'd-Di'n 'Aliyy	262	Troubles with Jahafil tribe	283
'Adhima and Miqa' surrendered	263	Inroad of Bakhii' tribe on Harad	284
Sultan visits Zebid and Mehjein	263	Shey'dn and Bukur taken	284
Melik Dhafu goes to Sun'a'	264	Egyptian design on Yemen	285
Sultan visits Dumluwa	264	Embassy from Egypt ,...	285
Sultan sends troops to Mikhlaф		Pavilion of Ma'qiliyy in Thu'bat	286
Suleymaniyy... ..	264	Capture of Dhahran.	287
Troubles with Jahafil and 'Ajelim	265	Lord of Kehlan visits, the Sultan ...	288
Sultan goes to the Dhahu , .	265	They ride an elephant together	288
Sultan lakes Qunna	265	Bey-liars made Sultan of Egypt	289
Sultan takes Ta'izz of Dhafar	266	Conquest of the two Sherifs ..	289
Negotiations with the Sherifs	267	Murder of 'Emh Tughril at Dhemar	291
Telmus of Sa'da ceded to Sultan	267	Kurdsjoin the 'Imam ; hostilities	292
Hurthan besieged	268	Sultan marches against them	293
Death of 'Ebu Numeyy, Sherif of		Death of 'Ebu Bekr Yahyawiyy	294
Mekka	268	Peace with the Shetifs	295
Dissensions at Mekka	269	Miftali taken ..	296
Ruknu'd-Din Bey-Bars seizes Sherifs	269	Peace with the Kurds	296
Expeditions against Dhafar, etc.	270	'Imam attacks Sheref country	297
Peace with Sherifs of Dhafar	272	Hostilities ; truce	298
Incursions from Lahj and 'Ebyen	272	Death of Melik Wathiq at DJiafar ..	299
Sultan returns to Ta'izz	272	Death of judge Muntakhabu'd-Din .	299

	PAGE		PAGE
Peace with the 'Imam	300	Muhammed b. 'Ebi Bekr, Judge of	
The Kurds reduced	301	Judges	309
Barracks burnt at Ta'izz	301	Death of 'Ebu'l-Hasan Bejliyy	309
Pavilion of Lebiq Enclosure, Zebid... .	302	Sultan's sickness; attempt of Melik	
Melik Nasir of Egypt at Mekka	302	NAsir.	
Death of Melik Mudhaffer, Sultan's		'Ebu'l-Mahasin comes to court	312
son.	303	Death of Sherefu'd-Din 'Ahmed	313
Death of judge Jemalu'd - Din,		Safiyyu'd-Din comes to court	314
Yahyawiy	304	Embassy to Egypt	314
Death of the Intimate	304	Kesh-Dughdi reorganizes the forces	314
Capture of Hezzan from the Kinds	306	Death of Princess Nebila	315
Pardon of a prisoner on cession of		Quarrels of nobles	315
castle	306	Death of 'Emir Kesh-Dughdi	316
'Ebu'l-Ghayth Slierif of Mekka	307	A rich merchant from Egypt	316
Dhafer castle occupied.	308	'Emir Bediu'd-Diu Hasan	317
Death of 'Emir Sherif 'Imadu'd-Din	308	Death of Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed	317
'Emir Kesh-Dughdi comes to comt	309	Monuments of his reign	318
Humeyda Sherif of Mekka.	309	His bravery and learning	319

EDITOR'S PREFACE.

BUT few prefatory words are needed to introduce this book to Orientalists and students of Eastern History and Geography. Sir James Redhouse, in the Preface prefixed to this volume (p. 3), and written eighteen years ago, has explained how gratitude for the degree of Doctor of Letters, conferred upon him by the University of Cambridge in June, 1884, in recognition of the signal services rendered by him to Turkish philology and Oriental letters, prompted him to transcribe and translate, with notes, indices, and maps, the unique manuscript of *Al-Khazrajfs* in the India Office Library, and to offer this monument of his industry and scholarship to the Cambridge University Library.

While compiling my *Hand-list of the Muhammadan Manuscripts in the Library of the University of Cambridge* (1900), I had occasion to examine Sir James Redhouse's manuscript, and was greatly struck by its beauty and neatness. It comprises five volumes, one of text, two of translation, one of notes, and one of indices and maps, handsomely bound in morocco, and contained in a case bearing the class-marks of the manuscript, Add. 2937-2941. Though recognizing the truth of Sir James Redhouse's observation that "the book could not possibly find a sale sufficient to cover the expenses of its publication," I could not help regretting that so much erudition and industry should be practically wasted; for I doubt if the manuscript

had once been opened from the time when it was "consigned . . . to the protecting shelves of the University Library" until the time when I took it out to describe it in my *Hand-list*

It is improbable that any European ever had so complete and commanding a knowledge of the Ottoman Turkish language as Sir James Redhouse, and it is certain that none has rendered such service to the lexicography and grammar of the language as he. Even amongst the Turks themselves his *Muntakliabdt-i-Lugltdt-i-Osmdniyyi* (lith. Const., A.H. 1268-9), a dictionary of Arabic and Persian words used in Ottoman Turkish, explained in Turkish, is still an authority. He was the friend and teacher of the late Mr. E. J. W. Gibb, whom he d'd not cease, so long as he lived, to inspire, advise, and encourage, and who always regarded him as his master in Turkish. As I write, there lies before me a copy of the *Mihnet-Keshan* of 'Izzet Molla,¹ lithographed at the *Hawadis* Press in A.H. 1269 (= A.D. 1852-3), which bears on the blank page at the beginning a portrait of Redhouse, a brief biographical notice of him from *Debrett's Peerage* for 1886, and beneath this the inscription : " *To E.J. W. Gibb, Esq., M.R.A.S., from his old friend J. W. Redhouse, London, 23rd October, 1885.*" The notice from *Debrett* runs as follows :—

" REDHOUSE, James William, C.M.G.: b. 1811 ; ed. at Christ's Hospital; went to Constantinople 1826, and was occasionally employed there in different departments until 1834; appointed 1838 a member of the Translations Office of the Poite, and in 1840 was transferred to the Turkish Admiralty; acted as confidential medium of communication between the Porte and the British Ambassador 1839-41; in 1840 went on a mission to coast of Syria, then blockaded by the allied English, Turkish, and Austrian squadrons, and was engaged in communications between the Admirals and the Turkish Com.-in-Ch. on shore (Turkish order of the *Nishan-i-Iftikhar* in brilliants and made a Member of Naval Council); was 1842-7 Sec. to British Comm. of Mediation at Conferences which led to Treaty of Peace of Erzeroum between Turkey and Persia (Persian order of Lion and Sun, and Mil. rank of Col. 1st class); appointed Oriental Translator to Foreign Office 1854; in 1857 went to Paris to assist in wording the Persian text of Treaty of Peace with Persia; Hon. Doctor of Letters of Cambridge Univ.

¹ See vol. iv of Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, pp. 304-306 and 308-322.

1884; author of numerous works in English, French, and Turkish on Eastern subjects and Oriental Philology; formerly Sec. to Royal Asiatic Soc, and is a member or corresponding member of several learned Socs.: m. 1836, Jane E. Carruthers, daughter of the late Thomas Slade, Esqre., of Liverpool; cr. C.M.G. 1885. 14, Kilburn Priory, N. W. " :

Lying loose in the book is the letter which accompanied it, also dated October 23rd, 1885. The text of this, which seems to me sufficiently interesting to merit a place here, runs as follows:—

" 14, KILBURN PRIORY, LONDON, N.W.
23rd October, 1883.

"DEAR MR. GIBB,

I quite reproach myself for having forgotten your wish to have Izzet Molla again. I now attempt an atonement for the oversight by sending you the book to keep as your own. No more fitting successor to its ownership in England could be found or imagined than yourself. I have put my photograph, memoir from Debrctt, and signature into it as souvenirs of me when I may long have passed away,

"The ten large volumes of my manuscript Thesaurus of Arabic, Persian, and Turkish are gone to the Library of the British Museum as my offering. I have put my photograph, memoir, and signature at the head of the first volume, with a title-page and preface recording the gift and the genesis of the book. If preserved there, my name will not soon die.

" I have been much interested in reading the *منزلة على* حال. It is one of many 'catechisms' of Islam. I have penciled some remarks through it. Look in p. 54; you will find there no mention of *وسيلة*. The eight paradises, *أَجْنَاسَاتُ السَّمَاوَاتِ، هَشْتَتْ بَهْشَتْ*, that I have found in the *Quran*, and which I believe to be simply

¹ Sir James Redhouse married as his second wife a daughter of the late Sir Patrick Colquhoun, and died on the morning of Saturday, January 2nd, 1892. See the obituary notice in the *Times* of January 4th, 1892. The obituary notice in the *J.R.A.S* (vol. xxiv, pp. 160-161) is meagre and inadequate, and does not even mention the date of his death. He was knighted in 1888.

eight epithets of one sole paradise, are these, alphabetically :
 دَارُ السَّلَامِ , — اَلْمَعِیْمِ , — اَلْمَأْوٰی , — اَلْفِرْدَوْسِ , — عَدْنِ , جَنَّةُ اَلْخُلْدِ ,
 مَقَامُ اَلْوَسِيْلَةِ (for وَسِيْلَةُ , and I imagine that قَابُ قَوْسَيْنِ اَوْ اَدْنٰی , otherwise عِلْيَوْنَ , اَلْمَقَامُ ,
 station of him who is the *means* of approach to God) is this last,
 عِلْيَوْنَ , otherwise قَابُ قَوْسَيْنِ اَوْ اَدْنٰی , where Muhammed stood in
 his interview with God, and to which not even Gabriel might
 approach. At any rate it is singular that *وسلیه* is not mentioned
 in pp. 54-6. I suppose d'Ohsson got it from a picture like the
 one in the *مِزْرَاقِلِی*. You know that *علم حال* means *virtually*
 a catechism. All children learn it while young, and there are
 many commentaries ; that by *بِرْگُوْغ* (the man of Birga, *برگه* ; not
 far from Brusa) is the most used and esteemed. He is quoted in
 the *مِزْرَاقِلِی* several times.

" You must read the chapters about women and infants who
 die in Islam, pp. 110-129 ; then remember what I have said in
 'Turkish Poetry.'¹ Also look at *اَوْوَلْمَكْتُ* at p. 112.

" Will you give the inclosed photograph and memoir to
 Mr. Clouston for me. lie will gum them into some book in
 memory of me. Captain Cobbett is in Glasgow to arrange about
 going out again next month.

" Believe me, dear Mr. Gibb,

Yours very sincerely,

J. W. REDHOUSE.

" E. J. W. Gibb, Esqre
 Glasgow.

" Do not send me any more books ; I try my eyes too much
 in reading them, and cannot resist.—J. W. R."

¹ See pp. 6-15 of the work in question, originally read as a paper " On the History, System, and Varieties of Turkish Poetry" before the Royal Society of Literature on February 12th, 1879, and reprinted by Trubner.

I have quoted this letter for two reasons, firstly to prove the intimacy and intellectual sympathy which existed between Redhouse and Gibb, and secondly to show how great was the desire of the former to be remembered by his works after he himself had passed away. To this desire he alludes no less than three times in this one letter; and though there is no fear that his name will be forgotten so long as the Turkish language continues to be studied, nothing could be more appropriate than that one of his unpublished works—a work on which he expended four precious years of his old age—should appear in the series of publications which owes its existence to the munificence of the late Mrs Jane Gibb, of Glasgow, and which has the twofold object of commemorating her illustrious son and promoting those studies to which his life was devoted.

The printing of the volume was resolved on at a meeting of the Trustees of the Gibb Memorial held on July 26th, 1905, and since the original manuscript could not be placed in the printer's hands, the task of transcribing the English portion was entrusted to Mr. A. Rogers, of the Cambridge University Library. The transcript of the first volume, now published, was revised by me, while the proofs were read by Mr. R. A. Nicholson and also collated with the original by Mr. Rogers. The general principle which has guided us in our work was to alter as little as possible. Sir James Redhouse's name is a sufficient guarantee of accuracy, and, had we endeavoured to amend his translation, the work would have been no longer his but ours. We have therefore taken the translation as we found it, and have confined ourselves to correcting a few obvious mistakes and oversights, modifying in certain respects the system of transliterating Arabian names and words adopted by the translator, and making certain necessary changes in the numbering of the notes.

As regards the system of transliteration, we have only effected such changes as appeared to us essential or very desirable, such as—

- (1) The substitution of *d* for *de* in the transliteration of ذى ;
- (2) „ „ *dh* „ *ts* „ „ ظ ;

(3) The substitution of *gh* for *g* in the transliteration of غ ;

(4) The removal of the lines placed by the translator under all combinations of English letters representing single Arabic letters (such as *th* for ث, *kh* for خ, *sh* for ش, etc.), with the single exception of the above *dh* for ذ.

On the other hand, we have kept: (1) the narrow Turkish *c* used by the translator instead of *a* to represent the *fatha* ; (2) the indication of initial *hamza* by ('); (3) the transliteration of final ی by *-iyy* instead of the more usual, if less scientific, *-i*. Long marks over the long vowels have, moreover, been replaced by accents, which seem to us at once more artistic and more in keeping with the traditions of the English language than the Latin symbol.

As regards the Notes, the numbering has been made continuous, instead of being renewed on each page, as is done in the original. To be obliged to mention the pages in connection with the notes seemed in any case a needless complication, but when, as necessarily happened when the book was printed, a new pagination was introduced, the confusion would have become intolerable had we attempted to preserve this feature of the original. The pages of the Arabic original preserved in the India Office which correspond to each portion of the translation are indicated by us, as they were by Sir James Redhouse, by marginal references in European type to the folios of that MS., while the Arabic numbers also placed in the margin refer to the pagination of Sir James Redhouse's transcript of the Arabic text. The latter figures, it will be observed, occur at regular intervals throughout this volume, while the former are irregular, in consequence of the omissions and abbreviations which Sir James Redhouse deemed it expedient to make here and there (see his Preface, p. 3, at the beginning of the second paragraph). Thus, for instance, on p. 59, the translation of ff. 74^b and 75^b has been either entirely omitted or epitomized in a line or two.

The whole English portion of the work has been transcribed by Mr. Rogers, and it is hoped that the printing will now go

steadily forwards without interruption, though it may be found necessary to reconstruct the Index and revise the Maps. The Arabic text will probably be reproduced by Bromide photographs, and printed from these in Egypt, with omission of all vowel-points save such as appear necessary ; for complete vocalization would greatly increase the cost of printing, and is, moreover, absent in the original, though introduced by Sir James Redhouse into his transcript.

Any observations on the value of Al-Khazraji's work which it may appear desirable to make will be reserved for the concluding volume, and it therefore only remains for me to express my gratitude to my co-editors for their valuable co-operation.

EDWARD G. BROWNE.

CAMBRIDGE.

November 4th, 1906

A TRANSLATION
OF
" THE PEARL-STRINGS "
OF
'EL-KHAZREJIYY.

PREFACE.

IN June, 1884, the Senate of the University of Cambridge conferred on me the honorary degree of "Doctor of Letters"; and in testimony of my sense of gratitude for that distinction, I resolved to offer to the Library of the University a transcript, by my own hand, of a unique Arabic manuscript, which I knew to be among the treasures of the India Office Library, a copy of "The Pearl-Strings ; a History of the Resuliyy Dynasty in Yemen," by the 'Imam 'cl-Khaziejiyy,¹ who lived at the court of the seventh monarch of that line, Sultan Melik 'Kshref II, at the same time as Fi'ruzabadiyy, Judge of Judges of the kingdom, and author of the great Arabic lexicon 'el-Qamiisu'l-Muhit, besides many other learned works. That Sultan died in A.H. 803 (A.D. 1400), and with his death the history ends, though the dynasty was not dispossessed for another sixty years. The author of the Qamus did not die till A.H. 817 (A.D. 1414); but the demise of Khazrejiyy took place in A.H. 812 (A.D. 1409). Hence it is clear that he could not have written an account of the expulsion of the 'Alu Resul from Yemen, as Play fair's history asserts of him.

In transcribing the Arabic text (with omission of some poetry and obituary notices), the work seemed to me to possess sufficient interest to warrant its translation ; especially in its relation to the bygone fortunes of England's now most important coaling-station, the ancient emporium of 'Aden, the centre of the maritime commerce of the world until the passage of the Cape of Good Hope drew away its activity and sapped the source of its wealth. The history was therefore translated also.

¹ See Loth's *Catalogue*, p. 203, No. 710.

Many names of places unknown to geographers occurring in the work, as also some of the institutions of 'Islam not universally understood, a body of annotations was judged useful, and has been added. An index of the names of persons and places, as also of the leading words of the translated history, has further been appended as a matter of course, and a detailed table of contents.

To render more clear to the reader or student the exact place in the world's history filled by the Resuliyy Dynasty, an Introduction has been compiled, showing the general chain of events that form the history of Yemen from the earliest mention of the country in the contemporary hieroglyphic records of Egypt and cuneiform inscriptions of Assyria and Babylonia, down to this day.

A copy of my "Chronological Synopsis of the History of Arabia and its Neighbours," which grew out of my study of 'd-Khazrejiyy's work, is bound up herewith as elucidatory of the connexion of Yemen with Rome, Persia, Syria, Egypt, etc.; and a few genealogical tables and sketch-maps of approximate sites are added with the view of making the whole book as complete a body of information as I have been able to bring together by the labour of four years, when not occupied by official or social avocations.

As the book could not possibly find a sale sufficient to cover the expenses of its publication, it will be consigned without a regret to the protecting shelves of the University Library; and the unique India Office volume, a gift of Warren Hastings, will thus have its double at Cambridge, and may become more valuable as a book of consultation than it has been in the past in its almost unknown isolation.

JAMES W. REDHOUSE.

London, 1888.

INTRODUCTION.

KHAZREJIYY'S History of the Resuliyy Dynasty in Yemen opens with a short account of some ancient legends connected with the mythical descent of that family from Noah through Joktan (Qahtan), the departure of its supposed ancestors from Me'rib (Mariaba, lat. $15^{\circ} 25' N.$, long. $44^{\circ} 40' E.$) before the ruin of the great Dam, the arrival of the tribe at Mekka ($21^{\circ} 35' N$, $40^{\circ} 20' R.$) shortly before our vulgar era, its dispeisal thence to various parts of Arabia, and the settlement of that branch of it in Trans-Jordan as Roman viceroys in the time of Augustus Caesar, from which, thirteen hundred years later, the founder of the dynasty, Melilc Mansur Nuru'd-Dln 'Umer b. 'Aliyy b. Resul, claimed to be descended.

The history closes, on the other hand, 170 years further on, with the death, in A.H. 803 (1400), of its seventh sovereign, Mehk 'Eshref II, 'Isma'il b. 'Abbas b. 'Aliyy b. Davvud b. Yusuf b. 'Umer b. 'Aliyy b. Resul, though it names his son and successor, Melik Nasir 'Ahmed.

It has been thought, therefore, worth while to trace succinctly the whole history of Yemen, as far as possible, from the earliest times down to the present day, showing how the Resuliyy dynasty succeeded to a line of Egyptian princes of the family of the great Salahu'd-Dfn (the Saladin of the Crusaders), how the Ottoman rule became established there, and how England acquired possession of its great seaport, 'Aden, once a centre of maritime commerce, now a mere coaling-station.

Adequately to perform this task, a (QW geographical details have seemed necessary, in order to define the various meanings

of the name Yemen, and to fix the position and extent of the country over which the Resuliyy dynasty ruled.

The 'island,' i.e. the peninsula of Arabia, as defined by native geographers, is bounded to the south by the Indian Ocean between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. On the north it reaches to the narrow barren isthmus that lies between the Euphrates and the western parts of northern Syria in about the latitude of 37° N., where the skirts of Mount Taurus oppose a barrier to any further northern extension of the sands of the great Syrian desert. Its eastern limit is traced from that isthmus southwards by the stream of the lower Euphrates to the head of the Persian Gulf, and thence onwards by the west shore of that gulf as far as the Indian Ocean. To the west, from the Strait of Babu'l-Mendcb, the east coasts of the Red Sea and Gulf of 'Aqaba, the two valleys thence to the Dead Sea, the eastern shore of that lake, the river Jordan, and the western edges of the Syrian Desert northwards to the isthmus at the foot of Mount Taurus, complete its circuit. -

The large extent of country thus marked out is variously subdivided by geographers, ancient and modern, native and foreign. Babylonia and Mesopotamia to the east of the river Euphrates, and Syria, as well as the Sinaitic peninsula, to the west of the boundaries described, are held to be excluded from the 'Island of Arabia' as thus defined.

The 30th parallel of North latitude may be roughly taken as separating this Arabia into two very unequal parts. The desert to the north of that latitude is the 'Sham' or 'north country' of the Arabians, and is commonly designated Badiyetu'sh-sham or Bcrriyctu'sh-sham (the waste of the north country).

The lands south of the 30th degree may be again divided, roughly, into two sections by the 20th parallel. The northern of these two sections is cut up into four regions lying east and west of each other. The easternmost of the four is 'Uman (Oman), on the Indian Ocean and southern end of the Persian Gulf. The next towards the west occupies the remaining

or northern portion of the west coast of the gulf, and is known by the names of Bahreyn, Hejer, and 'El-'Ahsa. West of this lies the upland of Nejd; while between this and the Red Sea is the Hijaz, in which are the cities of Mekka and Medina.

The whole district south of latitude 20° has been sometimes called Yemen, i.e. the South Country, in its entirety. But more generally it is divided into three portions—Yemen to the west, skirting the Red Sea to the strait of Babu'l-Mendeb, and thence to a little beyond the ocean port of 'Aden; then Hadramawt, the strip of coast adjoining the Indian Ocean from near 'Aden as far as 'Uman; and north of this the sandy waste of the interior, named 'Ahqaf, which lies between Nejd, with Ilejer to the north, 'Uman to the east, Hadramawt to the south, and Yemen to the west.

The large Yemen thus bordering the Red Sea consists in a long range of high mountains, running nearly north and south, with deep valleys sloping towards the eastern sandy desert of 'Ahqaf on the one hand, and a series of narrow ravines or gullies running towards the low, flat, and hot countries bordering the Red Sea, westwards, on the other. This range of mountains, called the Serat, or in the plural, the Serewat, has its ridge at a distance of from 80 to 100 or 120 miles from the Red Sea coast; the mass being subdivided into groups of mountains, with special names, from the vicinity of 'Aden to that of Ta'if in the latitude of Mekka. It continues as a more or less definite chain through the north of Arabia, and through Syria, until it joins Mount Taurus near the head of the Gulf of 'Iskenderun (Scanderoon).

This large Yemen may be divided conveniently into three zones from north to south. The northern zone, to about lat. 18° N., may be named 'Athther (Asir of maps). It has not generally been directly subject to the rulers of Yemen proper, though they have laid claim to it, and have occasionally held the towns or castles of its coast, and although the whole is now held by Ottoman troops and governed by the Sultan-Caliph from Constantinople. The middle zone, to nearly lat. 15° X.,

though sometimes overrun from the south, has generally, during the last thousand years or so, been subject to 'Imams of the schismatic Zeydiyya sect, and other more or less independent chieftains. The southern zone, to the Indian Ocean, is the Yemen of the Resuliyy dynasty; sometimes expanding as far as Sa'da to the north, and sometimes dwindling to about lat. 14° N. in the mountains, but exerting authority generally as far as about lat. 16° N. in the low sea-coast country and some of the adjacent hills. The whole is now a peaceable, thriving Turkish province.

Near the line of crests of the great mountain range in this third zone, two districts are to be noted as bearing the names, respectively, of Upper Yemen and Lower Yemen, their capitals being San'd' in Upper Yemen, and Jened, Ta'izz, or Jubla, at various times, in Lower Yemen. The low, hot, sea-coast lands near the Red Sea, from north to south, and of varying width, form the Tihama or hot country, the home of the date-palm, of which Zebi'd has been the capital from nearly the commencement of 'Islam, though Hudeyda, a port further north, is now the centre of administration.

With respect to the ancient history of Yemen, it is found recorded in the contemporary hieroglyphs of Thotmes III, of about B.C. 1600, that Yemen, by the name of Pun, was made dependent on Egypt, its queen having to go and perform homage at Thebes to Queen Ilatasu and her young brother Thotmes. Again, in about B.C. 1450, Seti sent his fleet and re-established the Egyptian supremacy over Pun. The Bible tells us of the visit of the Queen of Sheba (Sena' or Me'rib) to Solomon in about B.C. 1000, and Arabian legend makes the pair become man and wife. She is named Bilqis in the legend and in modern Arabian poetry, being said to have added to the great Dam (built in prehistoric times) a number of conduits for the regulation and distribution of its waters. These are said to have irrigated a tract of country a month's journey in length and breadth, where the fruit-trees gave a continuous shade, and where the falling ripe fruit filled the baskets borne on the heads of slaves, who neither picked

them from the trees nor collected those that had fallen to the ground. This Dam of Me'rib appears to have gone to ruin in about the year B.C. 427, after Asshurbanipal, King of Assyria, had crossed Arabia to the Hijaz in B.C. 657, and Nebuchadnezzar had penetrated to 'Aden along the coast from the Hijaz in B.C. 574, without effecting any permanent conquests.

When the Roman empire had extended to the east, so as to include Syria and Egypt, yElius Gallus, the prefect of the latter country for Augustus Caesar, planned an expedition for the conquest of Western Arabia, borrowed a contingent from Herod the Great, engaged the services of another contingent of Arabians from Petra, under the command of Syllabus, and landed with his forces at the Arabian port of Leucd-Koine" ('El-Hawra', lat. 25° 0' N., long. 37° 20' E.) in B.C. 24. Syllabus led him into the interior, whence he proceeded to the south, probably by the modern Hajj road, the old road of commerce past the sites of Medina, Mekka, Ta'if, and Tebala, to Nejran and Me'rib. He gained a pitched battle in Nejran, and laid siege to Me'rib; but after six days, failing to capture the city, he was forced, by want of provisions, to retreat and regain Egypt with a remnant of his forces. He accused Sylkeus of premeditated treachery — a stale resource of unsuccessful generals. Circumstances were against him, the chief being ignorance of the country. He was baffled, perhaps, by a famine, with a pest, so often witnessed there, as well as by want of water, for the Dam had been long ruined.

After that Roman invasion we have no notice of southern Arabia, except legend, until it was invaded and temporarily subjugated by the Abyssinians in A.D. 528, though various Arabian historians have traced a line of powerful, but mythical monarchs, with some breaks, from Ya'rub, son of Qahtan, who is said to have founded the monarchy.

The Abyssinian conquerors were expelled by the Persians in A.D. 600. After Muhammad had captured Mekka in A.H. 8 (A.D. 630), Yemen began to adopt 'Islam, and Muslim governors were appointed, by the Prophet and his successor, to rule the

country—Ibcin, and then Ya'la, at San'd'; Mu'adh at Jened; and Ziydd In Hadramawt.

At the Prophet's death in A.H. 11 (A.D. 632), a local impostor, named 'el-'Eswed, of the tribe of 'Ans, caused some trouble in Yemen, but he was soon killed at San'a' by local chiefs, and order was restored under the Muslim governors.

In the disputes between the rival caliphs 'Aliyy and Mu'awiya, in about A.H. 37 (A.D. 657), each sent deputies to Yemen; but those of Mu'awiya obtained possession, and his successors named others from time to time, until the 'Abbasiyy dynasty acquired the supreme power in 'Islam in A.H. 132 (A.D. 749), and subsequently made Baghdad their capital. Yemen then became a province of their widely extended empire, and they appointed its governors until the heretical Qarmatiyy lebcls (Qaramita) under Mansur and 'Aliyy b. Fadl obtained the mastery over the country in A.H. 293 (A.D. 905).

The power of these heretics did not last long, for 'Aliyy b. Fadl, after a career of fifteen years, generally successful, was killed in A.H. 303 (A.D. 915) by the use of a poisoned lancet when being bled; and Mansur had died a year earlier, leaving the chiefbhip over the Qaramita to be disposed of by 'Ubcydu'llah el-Mehdiyy, founder of the Fatimite dynasty of pseudo-caliphs, who then resided at Mehdiyya (Mehedie of maps, 35° 24 N., 11° 0' E.), either to Hasan, a son of Mansur himself, or to a certain 'Abdullah Shawiriyy, a confidant. Mehdiyy decided in favour of Shawiriyy. Hasan feigned to acquiesce, until he found an opportunity and murdered Shawiriyy. He now declared himself an orthodox Sunniyy, and his followers put to death all the Qaramita they could lay hands on. Hasan, and all his family, were in their turn killed by those who had submitted to his father Mansur in the hill country near Shibam and the Hadur, west of San'a', so that the Qaramita were entirely extirpated, or were forced to fly, or to conceal themselves. They outwardly pretended to be Sunniyy in faith but were really paitisans of the Fatimiyy caliphs until the early days of 'el-Mustansir in Egypt in A.H. 427 (A.D. 1035)

From among them arose the family of Sulayhiyy, which attained to power in Yemen in A.H. 439 (A.D. 1047).

The first to rule in San'a', Jened, etc., almost to Sa'da, after the Qaramita and 'Aliyy b. Fadl, was 'Es'ad b. Ya'fur, Hiwaliyy, but Sa'da was left under the 'Imam Murtada b. Hadf. 'Es'ad died in A.H. 310 (A.D. 922). His brother 'Ahmed Nasir took 'Aden, but died in A.H. 322 (A.D. 933).

The 'Imams of Sa'da, and various chiefs of the tribes of Khawlan or of Hemdan, now acquired the rule of San'a' by turns, in rapid succession, while the family of Ziydd continued to rule at Zebid over the Tihama until the year A.H. 377 (A.D. 987), when the Hiwaliyy ruler of San'a' captured Zebid and sacked it cruelly, ceasing at the same time to pray for the caliph of Baghdad, and adopting the prayer for the Fatimiyy caliph of Egypt, 'Azi'z b. Mu'izz; he died in A.H. 387 (A.D. 997).

In the year A.H. 389 (A.D. 999), the 'Imam Mansur Qasim b. Muhammed b. 'Aliyy, of the Iluseyniyy branch of Sherifs, who had hitherto resided at Khath'am in the Seiat range, came to Sa'da and was acknowledged by the inhabitants. He then advanced to Reyda (Reda of Niebuhr, Rhede of maps, 15°45' N., 43° 5' E.), and the people of Bewn (Bdn of maps) likewise acknowledged him. He sent a governor to San'a', who took possession for him also of the 'Ans countiy and of Dhemar. On his invitation, too, the lord of Kehldn (in Hajja) declared for the 'Imam Mansur. But differences sprang up between the 'Imam and his governor; on which the latter invited another 'Imam to San'a', and great troubles ensued there, until the end of the fourth century of the Hijra (about A.D. 1008), no ruler remaining long in power.

The son of 'Imam Mansur, 'Imam Huseyn, came to Qa'a (Bewn) in A.H. 401 (A.D. 1010), declaring himself the Mehdiyy foretold by Muhammed. Most of the tribes acknowledged him and deserted the other 'Imams. He defeated and killed his father's old governor; but the son of the latter collected the tribes of 'Ans and Hemdan, asking aid also from Zebid.

Ultimately, Tmdm Huseyn was defeated and killed in A.H. 404 (A.D. 1013).

After some years, 'in A.H. 413 (A.D. 1022), Ja'fer, brother of Huseyn, came from Sa'da to San'a' as Tmam. In A.H. 423 (A.D. 1031), another 'Iindm proclaimed himself, Hasan b. 'Abdi'r-Rahman; and with him was his son Hamza, after whom are named the Hamziyy 'Imams and Shcrffs of Yemen. The chief of the Hiwaliyy family joined him ; so that the Shf'iyy sectarians became predominant over the Sunniyy Muslims for a time.

Dissensions soon broke out again, and in A.H. 439 (A.D. 1047) another Tmam, of a Deylemite family, proclaimed himself at Dewn, collecting' forces against Sa'da, which he took and ravaged. He afterwards entered San'a' also, levying the poor-rate (*pekdt*) and the fifths. He then began to tyrannize; on which he was expelled, with all Shf'iyy sectaries, the Sunniyy inhabitants of San'a' regaining thus their old ascendancy.

In this same year, A.H. 439 (A.D. 1047), 'Aliyy b. Muhammed Sulayhiyy (the 'Solahie' of Playfair, p. 85) raised his standard at Mesar (N.W. from San'a') in Yemen, of the greater part of which he shortly made himself master. He was of the Shfa belief, and proclaimed the FRtimite caliph of Egypt, Mustansir b. Dhahir, in the public prayers. He took Zebid, murdered its prince, and was acknowledged from Mekka to Hadramawt by A.H. 455 (A.D. 1063). The year following, A.H. 456, he appointed as governor of Zebfd a certain 'Es'ad b. Shihab, whose sister 'Esmd' he had married, and she had brought him a dower of 100,000 gold ducats. 'Es'ad was to pay Sulayhiyy a million ducats yearly, and bear all administrative expenses of his province besides.

Sulayhiyy was murdered, in A.H. 459 (A.D. 1066), at Mehjem, as he was on his way to Mekka, having left his son Mukrem as regent at San'd'. They who killed him were two sons of the murdered prince of Zebid, of whom one, named Sa'fd the Squinting, took possession of the wife and treasures of Sulayhiyy, entered Zebid, and kept 'Esmd' in confinement.

After a time she found means to write to her son Mukrem at San'a', who at once collected forces, retook Zeb/d, and set his mother free. Sa'id the Squinting fled to Dehleik, an island on the coast of Abyssinia.

Mukrem had a wife, a cousin of his own, named Sej'yida l.liura, to whom he now made over the whole of the state affairs, and gave himself up to pleasure. She left him at San'a', and went herself to Jubla, the lower Yemen city of the Two Rivers. His mother 'Ksma' died in A.M. 479 (A.D. 1086) at San'd', and he then followed his wife to Jubla, where they again lived together.

In A.II. 481 Seyyida Hurra planned the destruction of Sa'id the Squinting by enticing him to attack Jubla from Zebi'd, of which he had regained possession. She had prepared an army; and when Sa'id marched to attack Jubla, her forces retook Zebid and followed Sa'id towards Jubla. As he was approaching Ta'ker he was hemmed in between two bodies of troops, defeated, and slain.

Mukrem died in A.H 484 (A.D. 1091), and in A.H. 485 the city of San'd', with its dependencies, was seized by Sultan l.latim b. Ghushcym, Mughallisiyy, Hemdaniyy. Mukiem's widow, the Seyyida Hurra, now made Mufaddal b. 'Ebi Berekat b. Weh'd Himyeriyy, her agent for directing affairs, whose father had been Mukrem's commandant at Ta'ker, while his uncle, 'Ebu'l-Futihi b. Welfd, was governor of Ta'izz. He and an elder brother had successively been commandants at Ta'ker after their father. His brother was killed by one of the 'Ulema' as a heretic of the 'Isma'i'liyya sect, and Mufaddal showed himself an enemy of the 'Ulema' in consequence. He dug a canal from Hanwa to Jened, repaired the mosque of Jened, and forced the lords of 'Aden to pay half its revenue to his mistress, the Seyyida Hurra. Ta'ker was the treasury of the house of Sulayhiyy, and the Seyyida used to live there in summer.

In A.H. 504 (A.D. 1110) Mufaddal sent a force to assist a brother of the lord of Zebid against the latter. He took Zebid, but Mufaddal then plotted to get rid of him. But news came that Ta'ker itself had been surprised with all its treasures, and with

the family of Mufaddal, by one of the 'Ulema.' Mufaddal laid siege to it, but the women of his family were made to mount on to the roof of his palace and play on tambourines. When he witnessed this indignity he is said to have died of vexation, or to have sucked poison from a ring he wore. The castle was peacefully restored to the Scyyida, who appointed in his place a cousin of Mufaddal's, who was murdered in A.H. 514 (A.D. 1120) at Ta'izz.

But before that, in A.H. 510 (A.D. 1116), a certain 'Aliyy b. Nejibu'd - Dewla had come to Yemen from Egypt as missionary to call the people to obey the Fatimite caliph. He acted with prudence, and the Scyyida received him at her court. A body of horse was sent to him from Egypt, with which he delivered the Seyyida from her native guards, who had become insolent towards her. She now gave him Jened as his place of residence. In A.H. 518 (A.D. 1124) he attacked Zebid by the gate of Qurtub ; but his horse was wounded, and he returned to Jened. The year following he began to act insolently towards the Seyyida, who sent a levy to besiege him in Jened. She then, in A.H. 520 (A.D. 1126), sent money to the chiefs of her levy, with orders to her messengers to spread the report that it was a bribe given by the beleaguered 'Aliyy. Their retainers clamoured for a share, and disbanded when they were refused. 'Aliyy was then informed that his deliverance was a plot by the Seyyida, whom he had declared to have become incapable of managing affairs. He immediately rode to her and made his excuses.

In this same year, A.H. 520, another missionary came to Jubla from Egypt to preach the cause of the Fatimite caliph 'el-'Amir-bi-'Ahkami'llah. The new missionary was affronted by 'Aliyy, and he took steps to destroy 'Aliyy by calumniating him to the caliph, and by fabricating false coins with the name of Nizar (Berar of D'Herbelot, voce Mostansir) on them, as though struck by 'Aliyy in the interest of Nizar. The caliph sent an envoy to bring 'Aliyy to Cairo. The Seyyida refused at first to give him up. But her councillors suggested that she

would be denounced as a Nizarite. On this she sent him to the caliph, and also costly presents, begging that he might be graciously dealt with. No sooner was he out of Jubla than they fettered him, carried him to 'Aden, placed him on board a ship of Sewakin, and thiew his secretary into the sea. The Seyyida appointed another in his place, in whose term of office the caliph Amir was murdered in A.H. 524 (A.D. 1129), and Hafidh succeeded him.

The Seyyida appointed to the office of missionary in Yemen for the new caliph a certain Zurcy' b. 'Abbas Yamiyy, whose family continued in the office a considerable time. She died in A.H. 532 (A.D. 1137), aged 88, and was buried at the mosque she had built in Jubla. All her castles, with her treasures, were taken possession of by Mansiir b. Mufaddal b. 'Ebi Berekat b. Welfd, Himyeriyy, who, when old and in need of repose, sold twenty-eight of those castles and towns for 100,000 ducats to the missionary Muhammed b. Seba' b. 'Ebi-Mcs'ud. Among them were Jubla, Ta'ker, Ibb, Habb, etc. He withdrew to Ta'izz and Sabir, being the first prince who resided at Thu'bat as a retreat. He died in A.H. 542 (A.D. 1147), and his son 'Ahmed succeeded him until A.H. 558 (A.D. 1162), when Mehdiyy b. 'Aliyy b. Mehdiyy rose to power in the low seaboard country, who bought from him Ta'izz, etc. 'Ahmed retired himself to Jened, and died in A.H. 563 (A.D. 1167). With him ended the Sulayhiyy dynasty and its offsets.

When Sultan Hatim b. Ghusheym seized San'a' and its dependencies in A.H. 485 (A.D. 1092), as above-mentioned (p. 13), he had three sons—Muhammed, 'Abdu'llah, and Ma'n. The first was brave and active, but killed all the wives he loved. At length he married a Subayhiyya princess, and his father threatened to put him to death if he killed her. Both events came to pass before very long. When Hatim died in A.H. 502 (A.D. 1108), he was succeeded by his second son for two years, and then his third son, Ma'n b. Hatim, became king. But the tribe of Hemdan now raised seditions, and the country fell a prey to factions for a time, until, in A.H. 533 (A.D. 1138),

they made the Sultan Hamfdu'd-Dewla Hdtim b. 'Ahmed, of the Ydm tribe (Yamiyy), king over them, and he ruled in prosperity.

In his days, however, the Tmdm 'el-Mutewekkilu 'ala'ldh arose and gained possession of Nejran, the Jewf, and the ridge-country of the Dhdhir. By degrees the tribes flocked to his standard, as the Benu-Shihab, the people of Hadur, Medhhij, and Khawlan. He then advanced to attack the Sultan Hatim b. 'Ahmed in the year A.H. 545 (A.D. 1150), from Dhemari's-Serera in the land of Senhdm. A battle was fought in Serera, in which Hemdan was beaten. Sultan Hatim took to flight, and the 'Imam's forces pursued him in the direction of SaiVd'. Hatim entered the city, but the inhabitants espoused the cause of the 'Imam, whose name was 'Ahmed b. Suleymdn, though he had assumed the title of Mutcwekkil, as stated above. The Sultan went out to receive the victor, and the 'Imdm addressed him, saying: "Sultan of the Arabians, we pardon thee." He treated the Sultan with honour and kindness, until Hatim went to Maudher and Hemdan dispersed. After a while, Hdtim went to Dhafer, and remained there until the levies of the Sherffs had dispersed also. He then summoned Hemdan again, and advanced with them against San'a'. The 'Imam went forth thence and camped at Birdsh, fortifying himself there, and calling for assistance from the tribes. Hdtim forestalled them, forced the 'Imam's camp, killed a number of his followers, and returned to San'd', taking possession of the sovereignty.

The 'Imam Mutewckkil now retired again to the Jenb country. The inhabitants were divided by blood-feuds, and the 'Imam sought to pacify these and unite the people. At this conjuncture Sultan Hatim rode out to them with a few followers, without infantry or baggage, and arrived near to Dhemdr, finding there the whole of the clans of Jenb united with the Tmdm 'Ahmed b. Suleymdn, and ready to return for an attack on San'a'. When Sultan Hatim drew near, they said: "These are not horsemen of Hemdan." But they

ultimately recognized him as he rode into their midst holding his spear between his thigh and saddle, and thus addressed them: "Chiefs of the Arabians! Let me not be reproached behind my back, for God hath not given unto man two hearts or two faces." He then added: "We have come to you, Chiefs of the Arabians, on a matter honourable to you and a glory to us"; meaning, according to Khazrejiyy: "Our arrival among you is an honour to you, and the pacification of the country will be a glory to us." He offered to pay all bloodwits due among them; and he did 50. The Sherifs then dispersed, and the Sultan returned to San'a'.

He died in A.n. 556 (A.D. 1161), and was succeeded by his son 'Aliyy b. Hatim, who captured Dhemcrmer, Kewkeban, and 'Ariis, whereas Birash, Dhafer, and Oidda had belonged to his father Hatim. He took Bukur also, which he repaired and strengthened. Later, he obtained possession of the two Dhahirs, Upper and Lower; of the Jcwf, of Sa'da, and the whole Magharib (west countries). The Benii - Shihab were at times submissive to him; at times, rebellious. Ilis dominion extended over Hadur, Magharib, and the rocky district of I.Iarlz.

In A.II. 56r (AD. 1165) a certain Sultan Hatim b. 'Ibrahim Hami'diyy rebelled against Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim, and was joined by numbers of Hemdan, who escorted him from Haraz to KeyVm; but they fled to Kewkeban, then in the hands of the Benu'z-Zewwajiyy. The Sultan 'Aliyy pursued them, devastated Shibam, and then besieged Kewkeban for three whole years until he expelled them and obtained possession of the fortress from 'Lbu'n-Nur b. 'Aliyy Zewwdjiyy in the year A.n. 564 (A.D. 1168). The year after, he took Beyt 'Izz from a family of Hemdan, who had held it since the extinction of the Sulayhiyy dynasty. In the latter part of this year, A.H. 565 (A.D. 1169), war broke out between the 'Imam Mutewekkil 'Ahmed b. Suleyman and the Sherifs of the house of Qasim in the Dhahir. The 'Imam was made prisoner, and was carried by them to the castle of 'Enafith. His sons came

to the Sultan 'Aliyy b Hatim, and begged him to procure the release of their father. He wrote to the family of Qasim, and they set the 'Imam free. He went to Havvth, and after a time came to the Sultan, thanked him; and begged his aid against the house of Qasim. The Sultan granted his request, and the 'Imam eventually returned to Shibdm, where he died in A.H. 566 (A.D. 1170).

In A.H. 568 (A.D. 1172) the whole of the Dhahir country submitted to the Sultan, but about this date the Ghuzz Kurds in Dhemar began to acquire power, and in A.H. 569 (A.D. 1173) Sultan Mu'adhdham Shemsu'd-Dewla Turan-Shah, brother of the great Sultan Nasir Sahihu'd - Din (Saladin) b. 'Eyyub, conqueror of Egypt, Syria, and Western Arabia, set foot in Yemen.'

When Sulayhiyy, in A.H. 439 (A.D. 1047), took possession of the country as above related (p. 12), and seized 'Aden also, he found there as rulers a family of the children of Ma'n b. Hatim b. Ghusheyim (p. 15). Their authority extended over Lahj, 'Ebyen, and Hadramawt. Sulayhiyy confirmed them in this position.

At the marriage of Mukrem, son of Sulayhiyy, with the princess Scyyida Hurra, he gave to her as her dower the revenues of 'Aden, which the sons of Ma'n paid over to her thereafter, until Sulayhiyy was murdered. They then withheld it. Mukrem drove them out, and gave 'Aden to 'Abbas and Mes'ud, two sons of a certain Mukrem Hemdaniyy, who had given his assistance at the capture of Zebid (p. 13) and the deliverance of his mother. He aligned the land-gate of 'Aden and the fort of Ta'ker at 'Aden to 'Abbas, while he bestowed on Mes'ud the sea-gate and fort Khadra'. They were to pay her dower, as of old, to the Seyyida, his wife. This amounted yearly to a hundred thousand ducats, more or less. At the death of 'Abbas, his son Zurcy' succeeded him, whose uncle Mes'ud continued as before.

In A.H. 480 (A.D. 1087) Zurey' took possession of Dumluwa; but he and his uncle were both killed in the fight against Zebuid

by Mufaddal in A.H. 504 (A.D. 1110, p. 13). Their two sons became joint rulers of 'Aden, and attempted to withhold her dower from the Seyyida, but were defeated. It was then agreed that they should pay her half the revenue, 50,000 ducats yearly. They again defaulted, and were a second time defeated, but the Seyyida reduced their contribution to 25,000 ducats per annum. Later on they withheld even this.

At their deaths their sons succeeded, each to his share as above; but the grandson of Zurey' was also lord of Dumluwa, Samig, Matran, Yumeyn, Dhubhan, part of Ma'afir, and part of Jened. The two cousins quarrelled at last; and the lord of Dumluwa, Seba' b. 'Ebi's-Su'ud b. Zurey', prevailed and took possession of 'Aden, dying there soon afterwards, in A.H. 532 (A.D. 1137), the year of the death of the Seyyida Hurra (p. 15). His son 'Aliyy 'A'azz succeeded, and died in A.H. 534 (A.D. 1139), when his brother Muhammed became prince of 'Aden.

In A.H. 547 (A.D. 1152) he bought for 100,000 ducats, of Sultan Mansur b. 'Ebi Bcrekat, the whole of his country (p. 15), and went up to Ta'ker of Jubla, over against Habb. He died at Dumluwa in A.H. 548 (A.D. 1153), and was carried to Mekka to be buried there. He left three sons, of tender age, who were watched over by the eunuch 'Ebu'd-Durr Jewher Mu'adhdhamiyy, and 'Aden was held by Yasir b. Ihlal b. Jeri'r until Sultan Mu'adhdham Shemsu'd-Dewla Turan-Shah took possession of all Yemen in A.H. 569 (A.D. 1173), as before mentioned (p. 18). Yasir then went also to Dumluwa, which was eventually sold to Sultan Seyfu'l-Tslam Tugh-Tekin b. 'Eyyub, as is related below (p. 23). After a time Yasir went *incognito* to 'Udeyna, but was betrayed to Sultan Turan-Shah, who put him to death in A.H. 571 (A.D. 1175). This line of princes at 'Aden were known as the Benu'dh-Dhi'b, successors to the Benu's-Sulayhiyy.

As is mentioned above, the first prince to enter Yemen of the family of the Benu 'Eyyub was Sultan Melik Mu'adhdham Shemsu'd-Dewla Turan-Shah, who was deputed to conquer it

by his brother and sovereign, the great Saldhu'd-Di'n (Saladin of the Crusaders), after he had made himself master of Egypt and Syria, putting an end to the line of schismatic Fatimiyy caliphs in Cairo, and restoring the supremacy there of the orthodox 'Abbasiyy caliphs of Baghdad.

Salahu'd-Di'n was informed that an impostor named 'Abdu'n-Nebiyy b. Mehdiyy had possessed himself of Yemen, and had given out that he was about to extend his sovereignty over the whole earth. Salahu'd-Di'n in consequence sent his brother Turan-Shah to quell this imposture in the year A.H. 569 (A.D. 1173). Some say that the caliph was wiittcn to on the subject from Yemen, and that he invited Salahu'd-Di'n to the enterprise.

Turan-Shah entered Zebi'd that year, A H. 569 ; and Tbnu'l-Mehdiyy was either killed or imprisoned till he died. Jened, Ta'izz, and 'Aden were then occupied. The princes of 'Aden were taken, the Mikhlaf-Ja'fer invaded, the fortress of Ta'ker seized, the pass of Naqil-Sayd surmounted, and Dawran approached. In a battle near there the tiibes of Jenb were brought to tcims, and the castle was taken. On the way thence towards Dhemar the tribes of Jenb again opposed him, but Dhemar was occupied. San'a' was now made for ; but the Jenb tribes-, and their allies, again interposed. They were beaten with heavy losses, and pursued to Hezzan.

When Turan-Shah encamped near San'd', the chief inhabitants came out to welcome him, and the city was then entered. Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim was then at Birash, and his brother Bislu b. Hatim at 'Azzan. Turan-Shah then took his way towards the low seaboard country westwards, and the tribes of Mount Bura' plundered his retinue of many camels laden with treasure, arms, and state paraphernalia. Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim now ordered San'a' to be dismantled and its best antiquities to be destroyed. Turan-Shah again left Zebid for Jened and Mount Sabir. He received possession of the fort of Sabir, and captured those of Dakhr, Shirnaf, and 'Azzan of Dakhr, proceeding then to the Ma'aflr country, and taking the castles of Yumeyn, Munif, and

Semdan. He now went against Dumluwa, of which the eunuch Jevvher was in possession with the family of his former piince, 'Imran b. Seba'; but he failed to reduce this stronghold, and returned to Jubla, continuing his journey thence to Zebfd.

He now obtained his brother's leave to return to Syria, and before quitting Yemen caused the three sons of the pretended Mehdiyy to be strangled, and Yasir b. Bilal, with his slave Miftah, to be cut in two, in A.H. 571 (A.I). 1175). He also left governors—one at Zebid for the western sea-coast, one at 'Aden, one at Ta'ker for Ta'izz, etc., and one at Jubla for its district lie marched by way of San'a, and on reaching 'Eshyah his treasures were plundered by a host of marauders.

He was appointed to Damascus by his brother Salahu'd-Di'n, but returned to Alexandria and died there in A.II. 574 (A.D. 1178). By his brother's orders he was carried back to Damascus and buried in the college he had founded there in one of the suburbs. His governors in Yemen transmitted its revenues to him at Damascus as long as he lived.

At the death of Sultan Turan-Shah his deputies in Yemen disagreed among themselves and struck coin, each in his own name. Only, the governor of 'Aden seized Jubla also, and conquered Hadiyah, ruling over the whole until the arrival of Sultan Tugh-Tekin, when he fled to Damascus, where he eventually died in A.H. 588 (A.D. 1192).

Salahu'd-Di'n, however, on his brother's death in A.II. 574, sent his own slave Khatalba to be governor of Zebid, and the governors of 'Aden, Ta'kei, and Ta'izz joined him to expel the brother of the governor left at Zebid by 1 unum-Shah. The expelled man took refuge in a neighbouring castle, Qawarfr. Khatalba fell sick, recalled the expelled one, and appointed him governor, dying himself soon afterwards. The ruler of 'Aden now went against Zebid a second time, and the governor retired anew to his refuge at Qawarfr. This happened more than once, but Zebid was not taken.

Salahu'd-Di'n now appointed to be Sultan of Yemen another brother of his own, 'el-Mehku'l-'Azi'z Seyfu'l-'Islam Tugh-Tekin.

He reached Zebid with a thousand horsemen from Egypt in the latter part of A.H. 577 (A.D. 1181). The governor went out as far as Kedra' to do him honour. A short time afterwards the governor asked permission to go to Egypt, and went a short distance out of Zebid with his treasures. He then returned to the city to take formal leave, when he was seized, sent prisoner to Ta'izz, and his treasure confiscated. He was secretly put to death at Ta'izz in A.H. 579 (A.D. 1183).

The governor of Ta'ker, Yaqut Ta'izziyy, was confirmed by Sultan Tugh-Tekin, who then went up to Ta'izz, advanced to Jened, and received possession of Ta'ker itself. The governor of 'Aden fled away by sea, and was pursued; some of his treasures were captured, but he himself escaped. Another governor was appointed, and the whole of Yemen submitted to Sultan Tugh-Tekin Melik 'Aziz Seyfu'l-Islam, with a few exceptions. Two sons of Sultan Hatim of the Zuremyy family, Ziyad, in Habb, and 'Aliyy, in Birash, still maintained themselves, though with difficulty.

Sultan Tugh-Tekin went to Mekka in A.H. 581 (A.D. 1185), leaving Habb besieged. On his return he captured the place in A.H. 582 (A.D. 1186), and put to death all those of any standing found there. He then occupied the Jenb country, taking Hezzan and Dhemar.

Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim, being still at Bir'ish, now commanded the demolition of the tower of Ghumdan in San'a', and of the city walls, in A.H. 583 (A.D. 1187). He also burnt there all the stores of corn, and ordered the inhabitants to retire to the Jenb mountains. But a cousin of his made submission to Sultan Tugh-Tekin near Dhemar, and agreed to pay two hundred thousand ducats a year and a hundred stallion blood-horses.

Sultan Tugh-Tekin now returned to Yemen. He appointed to Dhemar the governor of Jubla, but the chiefs of Jenb collected against him, retook Dhemar, and pillaged the town. The garrison held out in the citadel, and sent to the Sultan at Jubla. He returned in haste, and the Jenb tribesmen dispersed with great loss in men and hordes. He then took Yesar, returned to

Yemen, and ordered the siege of the castle of Qaydan, belonging to a branch of the princely house of Sulayhiyy. The siege lasted nine months; and when the place yielded, its lords stipulated to be allowed to join Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim.

Sultan Tugh-Tekm now besieged Dumluwa during the whole year A.H. 584 (A.D. 1188), it being held by the eunuch Jewher Mu'adhdhamiyy for the family of Zurey'iyy. When Jewher saw that the Sultan persevered in the siege he sold him the castle for *ten* thousand ducats, stipulating that it should not be entered until the family of his lords should have passed the seas with all their treasures. Disguised as a woman, he went with them to Abyssinia, leaving his secretary in the castle, and ultimately writing to the Sultan, with an inelasure ordering the secretary to deliver up the place. Hut the secretary now strove to hold it for himself. Sultan Tugh-Tekin renewed the siege, and the secretary at length sold the castle to him for ten thousand ducats and permission to retire in safety to San'a\

The two sons of Ilatim now repaired the castles of Dhemcrmcrc, Kewkeban, Dhafer, 'Arus, Fass, and 'Eshyah, storing them also with munitions. Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim had concluded a truce for two years with Sultan Tugh-Tekin for two hundred thousand ducats and a hundred horses. At the end of the period Sultan Tugh-Tekin advanced towards San'a', and on reaching J eh ran was met by an envoy, who renewed the truce for thirty thousand ducats and thirty horses, giving hostages for his good faith. But Sultan 'Aliyy would not ratify the conditions, and the envoy returned to try and obtain the liberation of the hostages. Sultan Tugh-Tekin set them at liberty, marched, took 'Eshyah, and then returned to Jehran.

He now marched again to San'a' and Dhemermer, then to Pass, and again to the land of Himyer (Mount Hadiir); lastly against 'Arus. This last, however, he chivalrously relinquished in favour of a newborn prince of the place, whom they had named after him. He now went to Dhafer, returned to San'a', advanced and took the Lesser Fass, and then the Greater Fass, in which were the two sons of Sultan Bishr b. Hatim. He gave

them their liberty, and sent them to Dhemermer with their mother in all honour.

He then fought against Dhafer, and laid siege to Kewkebdn, which he battered with ballistas. Its cession was proposed on condition that Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim should be allowed to possess 'Aruseyn as in the past, and this was accepted.

Sultan Tugh-Tekm now laid siege to Dhemermer, and pressed it for four years, as Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim defended it in person. At the end of that period, both parties grew tired of the struggle and the expense. A compact was therefore made, by which Sultan 'Aliyy gave up all his lands and castles in consideration of a yearly pension of five hundred ducats and five hundred measures (of corn).

Sultan Tugh-Tekm, Melik 'Azi'z, Seyfu'l-'Islam, died in A.M. 593 (A.L. 1196), some say poisoned, after a reign of fourteen years. He was hard upon the owners of date-palms, and favoured corn-growing. It is said that he wished to become the sole landed proprietor in Yemen, and to lease out the land for rent, as is the custom in Egypt; but the people of Yemen did not like his idea, and opposed it btrcnuously.

He was succeeded by his eldest son, Melik Mu'azz 'Isma'i'l, whom he had expelled from Yemen for his perversion from the orthodox faith, and who was on his way to Baghdad when his father's death occurred, but returned to Zebfd, thence to Ta'izz, and ultimately to Jubla.

In the same year, A.H. 593 (A.D. 1196), the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah b. Hamza, Hasaniyy, proclaimed himself. He was a very learned man, a writer on various sciences, and possessed of a vast fund of erudition in Arabian poetry.

In A.H. 594 (A.D. 1197) Melik Mu'azz visited San'a', and put to death a slave whom his father had appointed viceroy there. He then made a pact with Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim, with the condition that the latter should yield obedience to him, and should possess San'a'. His brothers Bishr and 'Amr, sons of Hatim, went down to Yemen, where Melik Mu'azz put them in confinement. He then went up to Haql, on his way towards

Kcwkeban, and by chance met the 'Imam, whom he defeated, and then entered San'a'.

He now publicly made a parade of his detestable religious perversion, withheld their pay from his troops, and squandered his means on poets and buffoons. He built in Zebid the College of the Two Obelisks, and in Ta'izz that called Seyfiyya, in which his father was buried. He then proclaimed himself caliph, pretending to be descended from the house of 'Umeyya, whereas the family of 'Eyyub in Egypt claimed descent from Qays-'Aylan of the race of Mudar. The 'Imam and Sultan 'Aliyy b. Hatim now became allies ; but when the former took San'a' he drove out the partizans of Sultan 'Aliyy, who then shut himself up in Dhemermer, and died there in A.II. 599 (A.D. 1202).

The bulk of the retainers of Melik Mu'azz were Kurds, and they resolved to kill him. He used to dress like the caliphs, in two shirts with very long and full sleeves, which were hung down to the ground from an upper window where he would be seated, and which were kissed by those who addressed him, as though they were kissing his hand. He one day lude out from Zebid in the direction of Qawz, on a she-mule, and with his long sleeves descending below his hands, his led war-horse following. The Kurds attacked him, and he defended himself for a time with his mace. He then drew his sword ; but his long sleeves were in the way, and he was killed in the year A.H. 598 (A.D. 1201), being interred in a mausoleum near at hand, south of Zebid. His tomb was known as 'The Caliph's Cupola.' He had reigned about five years.

The 'AtA-Bek Seyfu'd-Din Sunqur had fled from him to a castle in Hajja. But when Mu'azz was killed Sunqur returned to the brother of Mu'azz, an infant, whom Sunqur undertook to protect and educate as sovereign, by the title of Melik Nasir b. Tugh-Teki'n. Hence Sunqur's title of 'Ala-Bek. Melik Nasir was at Ta'izz, and he restored the public Friday prayer (Khutba) for the 'AbbaMyy caliph of Baghdad. He pardoned the Kurds, and appointed their two chiefs as governors,

the one of San'a', the other of the whole west seaboard country (Tihama), excepting Zebid and Kedra'.

The people of San'a' rose against the new governor and seized all the Kurds in the city, but the governor laid siege to it. The 'Ata-Bek came to Jubla in A.H. 599 (A.D. 1202), engaging the governor of San'a' to join him against the Kurds who kept possession of Zebid. These came out to Qurtub to meet them. They were defeated, and the 'Ata-Bek became master of the whole seaboard country, with Zebid.

In A.H. 600 (A.D. 1203) a shower of white ashes fell at Zebid for twenty-four hours, followed by black ashes so dense that all was dark as night.

In A.H. 605 (A.D. 1208) the 'Ata-Bek made an attack on Beraqish, and several severe battles took place between the 'Imam and the governor of San'a'. They made peace at last on conditions onerous to the 'Imam. The governor, whose name was Werdsluir, died at length at Semdan in A.H. 610 (A.D. 1213), the 'Ata-Bek Sunqur having predeceased him in A.H. 608 (A.D. 1211). He had built the Mu'a/ziyya mosque in Ta'izz, as also the 'A.simiyya and the Rahmaniyya mosques in Zcbi'd. He built, moreover, a mosque in Hanfer, and greatly added to that of Jened. He founded a college at Dhu Reym, near Ta'izz, in the precincts of which he was buried. The Sunquriyy corn-measure of Zebid was so named after him.

Melik Nasir b. Tugh-Tcki'n now appointed as his wezfr a certain Bedru'd-I)m b. Jebril, who engaged him *in* an expedition against the 'Imam 'Abdullah b. Hamza; and on his arrival at San'a', poisoned him there, sent his corpse to Ta'i/z, and had it interred in the mausoleum to the south of the parade-ground of the city. He now aimed at making himself king, and left San'a' to go towards Ta'izz. On his arrival at Sahul, the Arabian mountaineers surrounded his retinue and plundered his equipage. On his reaching 'Ibb, the mother of Nasir, who was in Habb, incited her slaves to attack him. This they did in 'Ibb, killed him, carried his head to Habb, and buried his headless corpse. Melik Nasir was killed in A.H. 611

(A.D. 1214). Sultan Hatim b. 'Ahmed then seized the castles of Beyt-Na'm, Qidda, Dhafer, Fass, and Masna'a; while the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah b. Hamza entered San'a', the Kurds quitting it for Birash, and Suleymdn b. Musd issued from Dhemar and seized Lahj.

Then it was that Melik Mu'adhdham Suleyman b. Taqivyid-Din 'Umer b. Shahinshah b. 'Kyyiib, known as the Sufivy, came as a pilgrim to Mekka, and the mother of the murdered Nasir, who had come to Ta'i/z, sent and invited him to Yemen to protect her from the Arabian tribesmen, whom she dreaded. He accepted her offer, came to Ta'izz, and assumed the sovereignty in that same year, A.II. 611 (A.D. 1214). But he gave himself up to pleasuic, and the 'Imdm seized Dhemar, as also Kewkebdn.

The Sultan of Kgypt, Melik 'Add 'Ebu Bckr b. 'Eyyub, being informed of the murder of both the sons of Sultan Tugh-Tekm in Yemen, now despatched his own grandson, Melik Mcs'ud Salahu'd-D/n b. Kamil b. 'Add b. 'Eyyub, with a numerous army and abundant treasure to rule over the country, he being then adolescent. The Sultan further appointed the eunuch Jemalu'd-Dm Fuleyt to be the young prince's 'Ata-Bek and general minister. They reached Zebi'd in A II. 612 (A.D. 1215), and the details of his reign of about seventeen years are related in Khazrejiyy's history, not requiring repetition here. The same may be said of the reigns of the first seven Resuliyy sovereigns, the last of whom died in A.M. 803 (A.D. 1400), and was succeeded by his eldest son, Sultan Melik Nasir, 'Ahmed b. 'Isma'il, the eighth sovereign of the dynasty.

Previously to his own accession to the throne, Melik Nasir had frequently represented his father Melik 'Eshrcf on state occasions. He reigned till A.II. 827 (A.D. 1424). During his rule a certain Shcykh Mu'awwada b. Taji'd-D/n, ancestor of the succeeding dynasty of Sultans in Yemen, the Benu-Tahir, died in A.II. 813 (A.D. 1410), and his son, Tahir b. Mu'awwad.i, paid a visit to Sultan Melik Nasir in A.H. 818 (A.D. 1415). He was graciously received by the sovereign.

Two years later, A.M. 820 (A.D. 1417), the 'Imam, lord of

San'a', made an attack on Tahir b. Mu'awwada, but the Sultan went to the assistance of his friend and vassal, and the 'Imam was defeated.

In A.D. 822 (A.D. 1419) the Sultan's brother Hasan b. 'Isma'fl rose in rebellion, but was taken and put in prison. Being pardoned, he again rebelled, was a second time made prisoner, and his eyes put out

The year following Melik Nasir built a new seaside residence at the old village of Faza on the coast of Zebid. He died in A.n. 827 (A.D. 1424), and was succeeded by his son Melik Mansur, 'Abdu'llah b. 'Ahmed, who reigned but three years.

His place was taken in A.D. 830 (A.D. 1427) by his younger brother, Melik 'Eshref 3 'Isma'fl b. 'Ahmed, under whom the grandees ruled and quarrelled. He reigned little more than a year, and was succeeded by his uncle Melik Dhahir b. Yahya b. 'Isma'il in A.D. 831 (A.D. 1427).

Melik DMhir reigned nine years, dying in A.H. 842 (A.D. 1438). In his time a dreadful famine overspread Yemen and the opposite coast of Africa, while volcanoes repeatedly broke out in the islands lying between Kemeran and Dehleke, being seen in Surdud and heard at Luhayya.

His son, Melik 'Isma'i'l, succeeded, but died in A.D. 845 (A.D. 1441), and was the last real king of the Rcsuliyy dynasty, being nominally succeeded by Melik Mudjiaffer, Yunus b. Mansur. The slave guards rebelled, and set up a prince 'ftsedu'd-Din Muhammed b. 'Ismai'l b. 'Afdal, whom they styled Melik Mufaddal. They then chose another, 'Ahmed Nasir, a great-grandson of Sultan Melik Mujahid, 'Aliyy b. Dawud. Lastly, in A.H. 847 (A.D. 1443) Melik Mes'ud was placed on the throne when only 13 years old, the Benu Tahir having already become rulers of Lahj. In A.H. 849 (A.D. 1445) they occupied Ta'izz ; but in A.H. 854 (A.D. 1450) Melik Mes'ud retook it.

In A.D. 858 (A.D. 1453) two of the Benu Tahir, 'Aliyy and 'Amir, sons of Tahir b. Mu'awwada b. Taji'd-Din, of the tribe of Qureysh and house of 'Umcyya, descendants of the Caliph

of Damascus, 'Umer b. 'Abdi'l-'Azi'z, took 'Aden, and Melik Mes'iid retired for good to Mckka, so ending the very name of the Resuliyy dynasty in Yemen. 'Aliyy assumed the title of Melik Mujahid Shemsu'd-Din, and 'Amir that of Melik Dhafir Salahu'd-Din.

In A.D. 859 (A.D. 1454) the chief people of Zebi'd invited 'Aliyy to go there. He raised a force in his own country, Jubcn (lat. $13^{\circ} 55'$ N., long. $45^{\circ} 20'$ K.), went to Ta'izz, and thence to Zebid, in A.TI. 861 (A.D. 1456), without opposition.

In that same year, A.H. 861, Melik IMiafir Salahu'd-Din 'Amir captured San'a', of which he left a governor in charge, and returned to Ta'izz. The 'Imam found an opportunity to reoccupy San'a', but then acted in so tyrannical a manner towards the inhabitants that they put themselves in communication with Melik Dhafir, and he set out for that city. The 'Imam's governor of the place, Muhammed b. Nasir, rallied out to meet the enemy, and fought .1 hotly contested battle, in which Melik Dhafir was killed, A.TI. 870 (A.D. 1464).

In A.II. 872 (A.D. 1467) volcanoes again broke out in the islands of the Red Sea, and destructive fires oecuned *in* Zebid. In A.D. S72 (AD. 1472) Melik Mujahid 'Aliyy b. Tahir abdicated *in* favour of his nephew 'Abdu'l-Wehhab b. Dawud b. Tahir, who took the title of Melik Mansur Taju'd-D/n. In A.D. 8S2 (A.D. 1477) ^{ne} Sherif of Mekka, Muhammed b. Iteiekat, took the seaport town of Jazan (lat. $16^{\circ} 50'$ N., long. $42^{\circ} 40'$ K.) ; and in the year following Melik Mujahid died at his native place, Jubcn.

In A.H. 886 (A.D. 1481) the great mosque at Medina was burnt to the ground by lightning, and was rebuilt by the Memluk Sultan, Qayt-Bay, of Egypt. In A.D. 887 (A.D. 1482) a great flood invaded the Ka'ba at Mekka, the water rising up to the padlock on its door.

In A.D. 894 (A.D. 1488) Melik Dhafir Salahu'd-Din 'Amir b. 'Abdi'l-Wehhab b. Dawud b. Tahir came to Zebid, and his father, 'Abdu'l-Wehhab, died at Jubcn. In A.H. 895 (A.D. 1489) Melik Dhafir took Dhemar. In A.H. 900 (A.D. 1494) Taju'd-Din

'Abdu'l-Melik was born ; and in A.II. 902 (A.D. 1496) Qayt-Bay, Sultan of Egypt, died.

Now begins the story of European intercourse with the East by the way of the Cape of Good Hope. In A.H. 910 (A.D. 1504) a Portuguese ship made its way to the Red Sea from the east, and two years later Albuquerque took the Curia Muria Islands, Muscat, and some other adjacent places ; while in A.H. 916 (A.D. 1510) the Sultan of Egypt, Qan-Su Ghuriyy, Melik 'Eshref Seyfu'd-Dm, seized Zeyla', and laid the Arabian trade, as also that of Abyssinia, under direct contribution. In A.IT. 919 (A.D. 1513) Albuquerque was repulsed in an attempt to capture 'Aden by ships. He then went to the Red Sea, tried his strength, and failed against Mocha, but wintered at the island of Kemeran, and returned to India the year following.

In A.H. 922 (A.D. 1516), Albuquerque being dead, his successor, Lope Soarez, prepared an expedition for the Red Sea, where Qan-Su Ghuru'yy had assembled a fleet under Selmdn *Re is*, a Turk of Mitylene. Sehnan failed also in an attack on 'Aden, but took most of the Red Sea ports of Yemen. The Shcrif of Mekka, Berekat b. Muhammed b. Bcrekat, paid a visit to Egypt, was appointed by the Memliik Sultan his governor of San'a', and proceeded thither to prepare an army for co-operation with the fleet. The ruler of 'Aden now tendered his submission to Soarez ; but the latter proceeded to the Red Sea, effected next to nothing, lost ships in a storm, and returned to India.

In A.H. 923 (A.D. 1517) the Ottoman emperor, Sultan Selim I, overthrew the power of Egypt. Qan-Su Ghuriyy died after the battle he lost near Aleppo. Damascus was taken and Cairo fell, where a Sultan, Tuman-Bay, had been set up, the last of Egypt's Mamluk rulers. He was hanged after an attempt at revolt. Sultan Selim I returned to Constantinople, and died there the next year. He took with him from Cairo the caliph who had been supported in Egypt as a descendant and successor to a scion of the Baghdad house of 'Abbas, supposed to have escaped the hordes of Chingiz and thrown himself on the loyalty of the Memliik Sultan of that time. This caliph abdicated *in*

favour of Sultan Selim and his Ottoman posterity, who have ever since been universally accepted as the sole legitimate orthodox caliphs of the whole world of 'Islam. In the west, Morocco ; and in the east, Persia ; with a certain number of small Shiyy princes in Arabia and India, with Zanzibar, alone reject the claim.

In A.D. 945 (A.D. 1538) an Ottoman fleet in the Red Sea, under Suleyman the Eunuch, Pasha of Egypt for the Sultan-Caliph, sailed from Suez for Yemen, took possession of 'Aden, and proceeded to Cambay in India; but, meeting with strenuous resistance from the Portuguese, returned to Yemen, and obtained possession of the whole seaboard country, Zebid, etc. ; then, by degrees, the Ottoman forces conquered the mountainous region also, with San'a', etc. The Sherif of Mekka made submission, and was confirmed.

In A.H. 947 (A.D. 1540) the Portuguese advanced up the Red Sea to Suez, but were repulsed by the Ottomans. They captured 'Aden, however, but again lost it when Phi Pasha, Ottoman Admiral of the Red Sea, attacked the place. In A.H. 1008 (A.D. 1599) Hasan Pasha, Ottoman Governor General of Yemen, succeeded in reducing or conciliating the whole province.

In A.D. 1018 (A.D. 1609) the first visit of an English ship to Yemen took place. A Captain Sharpcy then anchored at 'Aden, and went afterwards to Mocha. The year after, A.H. 1019 (A.D. 1610), Admiral Middle-ton visited both places, and after a time was commissioned to go to San'a'. There he was kept waiting more than a month, was allowed to return to Mocha, went on board, and ultimately left.

In A.D. 1021 (A.D. 1612) three other English ships arrived at Mocha under Captain Saris.

In A.H. 1023 (A.D. 1614) a Dutch fleet under Van den Broeck came to the Red Sea, visited 'Aden, and established a factory at Shahr. In A.D. 1025 (A.D. 1616) he proceeded to Mocha, and founded a factory there also. He visited San'a', but could not obtain permission to trade permanently. He therefore removed his factories and sailed to India.

In A.H. 1028 (A.D. 1618) Captain Shilling visited Mocha by desire of Sir Thomas Roe, Ambassador to the 'Great Mogul,' and founded a factory. But in A.H. 1040 (A.D. 1630) the Ottomans saw fit to evacuate Yemen, as being too distant, troublesome, and expensive to hold.

The country then fell into the hands of the family of 'Ebu Bcrekdt, the former Sherif of Mckka. Odsim the Great assumed the title of Scyyid ; but his son 'Isma'il, on succeeding, took that of 'Imam Mutcwekkil 'ala'llah. As has already been seen, 'Imam is the title assumed by Shf'iyy sovereigns or princes who claim a spiritual supremacy over their little world of 'Islam, as that of Khalifa is taken by the orthodox Sunniyy successor or substitute to the great lawgiver.

The 'Imam Mutcwekkil, 'Isma'il b. Qasim, reigned thirty-three years, residing chiefly, and being buried, at Durdn. He was succeeded by a cousin in A.H. 1087 (A.D. 1673); and then, for a time, great confusion prevailed through rival, contending 'Imams, until the French first visited Yemen. They touched at 'Aden, and arrived at Mocha in January, A.D. 1709 (A.H. 1121), where a treaty was concluded with the Governor, in the name of the 'Imam Mehdiyy, Muhammd b. 'Ahmed.

In A.D. 1712 (A.H. 1124) another French expedition reached Mocha. The 'Imam Mehdiyy, being very old and in failing health, invited a surgeon to visit him at his capital, Mewdhib ('Moat' of maps, lat. $14^{\circ} 40'$ N., long. $44^{\circ} 30'$ E.). The party traversed Mevvza', Jubla, Yerm, and Dhemdr, arriving at Mewdhib, where they remained three weeks.

A series of rival 'Imams now again distracted the country, following one another in rapid succession. In A.D. 1738 (A.H. 1151) a dispute arose with the French at Mocha. They besieged the town, and by means of the first shell fired in those parts cowed the Governor and obtained their object.

Again intestine troubles broke out, and rival 'Imams, or rebels, contested for supremacy. The principality of 'Ebu 'Arish secured its independence, as Niebuhr found it in A.D. 1763 (A.H. 1177). He visited the 'Imam Mehdiyy 'Abbs at San'a'

in that year. This 'Imam died in A.D. 1774 (AH- 1188), and was succeeded by his son Mansur 'Aliyy.

When the French under Bonaparte invaded Egypt in A.D. 1799 (A.H. 1214), a fleet was sent by England to cruise in the Red Sea. The rock of Perim was occupied for a time, but abandoned as useless and untenable through a want of fresh water. The English trade in Arabian coffee had then become almost extinct; but the coffee of Yemen was still exported by sea to Egypt, and by caravan overland throughout Syria and Asia Minor to Constantinople and Europe. When General Baird landed at Qusayr (Cosseir), on the Red Sea coast of Egypt, Commodore Sir Home Topham was ordered to do all he could to revive the trade; and in A.D. 1802 (A.T. 1217) was commissioned as Ambassador to the States of Arabia. He did not succeed in accomplishing this object, and returned to India.

In A.D. 1804. (A.D. 1219) the Wehhabiyy schismatics from Nejd in Central Arabia occupied Mekka and Medina; and a chieftain of the Benu 'Asir, nicknamed 'Ebu Nuqta (Father Spot), through his having lost one eye, joined the Wehhabiyy invaders, and possessed himself of the whole Red Sea coast of Yemen, up to the gates of Mocha. Loid Valentia visited Yemen in A.D. 1805 (A.H. 1220), and found the Tmam 'Aliyy, Manstir, near his dotage.

In A.D. 1809 (A.H. 1224) the Sheri'f of 'Ebu 'Arish, Sheri'f Ilamiid, induced the eldest son, Seyyid 'Ahmed, of the old 'Imam, to take the government into his own hands ; and on the death of the father somewhat later in the year, the Seyyid assumed the title of 'Imam Mutewekkil.

The power of the schismatic Wehhabiyy fanatics lasted until Muhammcd 'Aliyy, Ottoman Governor-General of Egypt since the final expulsion of the French, was commissioned by the Sultan-Caliph to drive them from the Hijaz. In A.D. 1813 (A.H. 1229) he attacked the invaders, and took steps to restore all Yemen definitively to the dependency on Egypt from which it had become emancipated under the Rcsuliyy dynasty and

some of their successors, In A.D. 1817 (A.H. 1233) the 'Imdin Mehdiyy 'Abdullah succeeded his father Mutewckkil 'Ahmed ; and in A.D. 1819 (A.H. 1235) the Pasha of Egypt at length took possession of Ounfudha, 'Ebu 'Arfsh, Luhayya, Hudeyda, and other coast towns of Yemen ; but he restoiied them all again to the 'Imam in consideration of a yearly tribute of a hundred thousand dollars. Later in that year a quarrel broke out between England and the 'Imam, but in A.D. 1821 (A.H. 1237) a new treaty was concluded.

In A.D. 1832 (A.H. 1248) the Pasha of Egypt became a rebel, and invaded Syiia, with part of Asia Minor. One of his officers in the I.Ijaz, who was known by the nickname of Turkja-Bilmaz ('who knows not Turkish'), hud been ordeied to Yemen ; but the lebel Pasha sent a certain general, 'Ahmed Pasha, to seize that province. Turkja-Bilmaz carried all his troops to Yemen and gained possession of the whole sea-coast. But 'Ahmed Pasha combined with the 'Imam against him, and having lost his aimy he was forced to fly, ultimately, ftom Mocha to Bombay. 'Ahmed Pasha occupied the sea coast towns, and also the small inland of Musawwa' (' Massowah' of maps) on the coast of Abyssinia.

in A.D. 1834 (A.H. 1250) the 'imam Mehdiyy 'Abdullah, having¹ died, was succeeded by his son Mansiir 'Aliyy. In A.D. 1837 (A.H. 1253) Mansiir and an uncle having disagreed, the lattei sold Ta'izz, his ¹-cat of residence, to the Egyptians. A domestic feud soon afterwards occasioned the dethronement of the 'Imam Mansur 'Aliyy, and he was succeeded by the 'Imam Nasir 'Abdullah. In that same year the rebel Pasha of Egypt offered to buy San'a' from the 'Imam Nasir, but the proposal was declined. In A.D. 1839 (A.H. 1255) 'Aden was taken possession of by England, as hereafter detailed.

In A.D. 1840 (A.H. 1256) 'Imam Nasir was in turn killed by his servants, when 'Aliyy Mansiir was released from confinement, but placed in retreat. An uncle was made Tm&m, with the name and title Muhamrned Hadi. In that year the Egyptian forces were suddenly recalled from Yemen, probably in

consequence of the alliance of England, Austria, Prussia, and Italy with the Sultan-Caliph, which forced them to evacuate Syria also after the capture of St. Jean d'Acre, though it made the rebel Pasha hereditary governor of Egypt, and though its consequences have brought about, eventually, all the Egyptian and Sudanese entanglements of the last twenty years.

Yemen was offered by the Egyptians to the Shen'f of Mckka, but the Sherff of 'Ebu 'Arish, Huseyn b. 'Aliyy, opposed the design and took possession, engaging to pay a tribute to Egypt. He appears to have been confirmed by the Sultan - Caliph. A steam frigate was sent from 'Aden to Mocha to protect British subjects. But Sherff Huseyn not only insulted the officer in charge, he furthermore cut down the consul's flagstaff, and wrote to Bombay demanding the restitution of 'Aden. A pacific understanding was come to at Constantinople on the point, and the Ottoman sovereignty over Yemen was admitted. A Turkish commissioner was sent to that country, and Sherff Huseyn acknowledged his dependence on the Sultan - Caliph, and offered to reinstate the flagstaff. In A.D. 1843 (A.H. 1259) he was created Huseyn Pasha by his sovereign as governor of the sea-coast country of Yemen, he paying a yearly tribute of seventy thousand dollars to the imperial treasury.

In A I) 1844 (A.H. 1260) the 'Imam Hadi died, and the deposed Mansur 'Ahyy was reinstated at San'a'. He made an effort to recover the lost provinces of Yemen, and marched against Qa'taba (lat. 14" 0' N., long 44" -30 E.), whence he issued mandates for all the chieftains of that region to come in and do homage. Among others the Sheykh, or so styled Sultan, of Lahj, neglected to do so. The 'Imam sent to 'Aden to enquire if there would be any objection to his occupation of Lahj and the country around. But intrigues at San'a' recalled him thither, and Sherff Huseyn Pasha marched from Mocha and occupied Ta'izz, next taking Jubla and 'Ibb also. Fearing an Ottoman expedition from the Hijaz, he levied what contributions he could from his conquests, and retired to 'Ebu 'Arish.

A new claimant now appeared, again deposed the 'Imam Mansur 'Aliyy, and himself took the title of 'Imam Mutewekkil. In A.D. 1848 (A.n. 1265) he defeated Shen'f Huseyn Pasha, and made him prisoner. Mocha, Zebi'd, and other places were surrendered to the victorious 'Imam, besides twenty thousand dollars in cash for Iluseyn's release. He recovered the whole in a short time, and the 'Imam, through treachery and desertion, was reduced to impotence at San'a'.

The Ottoman Government now resolved to vindicate its ancient title to the whole of Yemen, and in A.D. 1849 (A.H. 1266) an army appeared before I.ludeyda. Shen'f Huseyn Pasha gave up all his other possessions, retiring to 'Ebii 'Arfsh. He died in A.D. 1851 (A.H. 1268) on a journey to Constantinople.

In that same year, 1849 (A.H. 1266), the Ottoman commander-in-chief, Tevfiq Pasha, received the 'Imam Mutewekkil at I.ludeyda, where the 'Imam swore the fealty of a vassal to the Sultan-Caliph. The two then went to San'a', with a few Ottoman troops, to inaugurate the new arrangement and proclaim Sultan 'Abdu'l-Mejid as universal orthodox Caliph of 'Islam. The people of San'a', chiefly of the Zeydiyya sect of Shf'iyy schismatics, flew to arms, killed all the Ottoman soldiers they could seize, wounded the Pasha, and obliged him to withdraw to Hudeyda with the remnant of his force. They then deposed the 'Imam Mutewekkil, and a second time reinstated the 'Imam Mansur 'Aliyy.

But in A.D. 1850 (A.H. 1267) a son of the 'Imam Mutewekkil possessed himself of San'a', again deposed Mansur 'Aliyy, and gave him his liberty. He took for himself the title of 'Imam Hadi, and went to live at Rawda, a few miles north from San'a', with merely nominal power, as the city people refused their allegiance to him, and this capital became a scene of anarchy.

This same year, A.D. 1850, the Ottomans were unsuccessful in supposed attempts to establish themselves at Shahr and other places east of 'Aden. Several Pashas were appointed and died in succession. In A.D. 1856 (A.H. 1273) the Shen'f of Mekka,

'Abdu'l-Muttalib, was sent prisoner to Constantinople, and another, Muhammed b. 'Awn, installed in his stead ; so that an edict of the Ottoman Government against the public sale and importation of slaves became a duly recognized fact in the Hijaz.

In A.D. 1869 (A.H. 1286) the Suez Canal was opened, whereby ships of commerce, as well as transports and men-of-war, can pass quickly between the Red Sea and the Mediterranean. In consequence Ottoman military and naval forces left Constantinople in A.D. 1871 (A.H. 1287), with the purpose of proceeding to Arabia under the command of Re'uf Pasha, with a battery of breechloading seven - pounder steel Whitworth cannon ; and other troops followed in quick succession.

Arriving at Jidda, it was decided in a council of war to attack the 'Asir country in the first instance, and a sufficient force was landed at the port of Qunfudha. The Sheykh of Haly tendered his services, and provided camels for transport in the precipitous mountains. The strongly fortified town of Sewgha' was made the object of attack, about a hundred and sixty miles from Qunfudha in a south-cast direction, and in the latitude of Haly, at an elevation above the sea of about six to ten thousand feet. Sewgha' was soon reached and taken. Other strong posts were one by one captured, and the refractory chief of the 'Asir tribes, Muhammed b. 'A'id, with many of his family, was made prisoner. The expedition occupied only seventy days, and the 'Asi'r country was then portioned out into nine administrative districts—Maha'il, 'Ebha, Reyda, Rijal-'Elma', Taniima, Sabya, Shaqi'q, I.Ialy, and Qunfudha.

Re'iif Pasha, becoming altogether sick and lame through his zealous and self-sacrificing exposure on the bare mountain-tops during the whole campaign, was obliged to transfer the command to 'Ahmed Mukhtar Pasha, and returned to Constantinople. The new commander was confirmed by his sovereign, and appointed Governor-General of all Yemen.

In February of the following year, A.D. 1872 (A.H. 1288), after quelling several attempts at rebellion in the 'Asi'r

mountains, Mukhtar Pasha sailed from Haly for Hudeyda, a part of his forces proceeding by land and another remaining as garrison in the chief towns of the conquered region. By the end of April, San'a' was entered peaceably, though some slight opposition had been encountered at one point of the road, 'Atara, on Mount Haraz.

Some of the tribes around San'a' showed disaffection and were chastised. Dhemermcr was taken and razed. Kewkeban was blockaded.

In June, Mount Reyma and the village of Jeby were occupied. In July, Taw/la, Thula, and Mahwft were taken possession of. In September a foice was sent to Mocha, and thence advanced to Ta'izz, both being occupied without resistance. The siege of Kewkeban was brought to a close in November, the stronghold being taken.

The Yam and Hashid tribes to the north of San'a' threatening to give trouble, they were attacked and routed in the neighbourhood of Reyda, when their chiefs, assembled at Khamir, still further north in a difficult country, broke up in despair. The Hashid tribes tendered their submission, while the Yam people dispersed to their homes at some distance away northwards. By the middle of January, A.D. 1873 (A.H. 1289), the important castles of Kehlan and Meswer were occupied by the Ottoman forces. The tribes of Nehm were engaged as irregulars, and sent to serve in the districts of 'Ans, Jchran, 'Utma, and the two Wasab regions, between San'a', Ta'izz, and Zebi'd.

An expedition was then organized for the occupation of the region lying between SaiVa' and Zebi'd, with the outlying districts of Mount Reyma and Beytu'l-Faqfh. This was gradually accomplished, refractory chieftains removed, and the finances of the whole put in order. The central and chief parts of Yemen having been thus brought, in a few months, under the firm and equitable government of his Imperial Majesty the Sultan - Caliph, further attempts at rebellion or lawlessness could possess no basis of endurance,

and the province has, on the whole, since the period in question, been as submissive and peaceable as most other parts of this great and important empire.

To trace the history of the occupation of 'Aden by England, we must go back to the year A.D. 1728 (A.H. 1141), when the chief of the tribe 'Abdu'l-'Aliyy, by name Fudayl b. 'Aliyy, declared himself independent of the 'Imam of the period at San'd, the 'Imam Mansiir, Iluscyn b. Qasim, who died in A.D. 1740 (A.D. 1153).

This chieftain, Sheykh Fudayl b. 'Aliyy, allied himself with the Sheykh of the Yaf? tribe, his neighbour, and seized on 'Aden. He soon expelled his ally, but was himself killed in A.D. 1742 (A.H. 1155) by the Yafi' tribe. He had styled himself Sultan of Lahj, and his son 'Abu'l-Kcri'm succeeded him, during whose rule 'Aden was governed by a trusted slave, probably a eunuch. In A.D. 1753 (A.H. 1167) this so-styled Sultan was blockaded in 'Aden for five months by the powerful chieftain of Hujriyya at that time, named 'Abdu'r-Rabb, who received a sum of money to raise the siege and retire. This Sultan died the same year, and his son 'Abdu'l-Hadi succeeded, who died in A.D. 1776 (A.H. 1190). His brother Fudayl succeeded, and died in A.D. 1792 (A.H. 1207); after whom, another brother, 'Ahmed, became ruler. He governed prosperously for thirty-six years, dying in A.D. 1827 (A.H. 1243). He was visited by Mr. Salt in 1809, and by Capt. Haines in 1820. *lie* it was who, in 1799, when Ferim was evacuated by Colonel Murray, voluntarily received and most hospitably entertained him and his troops at 'Aden until they could proceed to Bombay. *lie* also made a treaty of friendship and commerce with Sir Home Popham in 1802. Again, in 1804 he repelled a fleet of Wehhabiyy pirates, who attempted to attack, at 'Aden, a ship from India.

'Ahmed was succeeded by his nephew Muhsin b. Fudayl, who was deceitful, inhospitable, and avaricious. Capt. Haines again visited 'Aden in A.D. 1835 (A-H 1251), being then on surveying service. Some of his officers visited the 'Sultan'

at Lahj. In AD. 1836 (A.H. 1252) 'Aden was sacked by the Fudayliyy tribe.

A Madras ship under British colours, with a valuable cargo, and with Indian pilgrims for Mekka on board, went on shore in the bay of 'Gubbet Seylan,' north-east from 'Aden. She was plundered by crowds of Arabs, and her passengers were stripped. On this plea the Government of Bombay determined to obtain possession of 'Aden by purchase, if possible. Captain Haines was sent to demand redress, and to negotiate the purchase. The former was obtained, and a writing was received from the 'Sultan' with the promise to give over the peninsula of 'Aden in March, 1838, against a yearly allowance of 8,700 dollars.

But in October, 1838, the 'Sultan' refused to ratify his promise, and unpleasantness arose. 'Aden was blockaded, and skirmishes occurred. In January, 1839, two royal men-of-war arrived; and as the 'Sultan' still held out, the place was taken by assault, and the 'Sultan' escaped to Lahj. It was the first conquest in the reign of Her Majesty Queen Victoria.

In February, 1839, the 'Sultan' and the chiefs of various neighbouring tribes signed a treaty of peace. In June he received his first monthly stipend of 541 dollars. But in November, on his attempting to retake the place, he was defeated, and his pension stopped. In May, 1840 (A.H. 1256), he made a fresh attack, with a like result. In July, 1841, a third attempt was equally fruitless. The Arabs constructed a fort at a short distance, and cut off the communications of 'Aden with the interior. But they were easily overcome; peace was again made; the 'Sultan' visited 'Aden; and in February, 1844 (A.H. 1260), his stipend was restored, with back pay for one whole year. In November the 'Sultan' died at Lahj, and was succeeded by his son 'Ahmed b. Muhsin, who died of smallpox in January, 1849. His brother 'Aliyy b. Muhsin became ruler, and was the chief when Playfair wrote in 1859.

He was very unfriendly to the English. Unpleasant circumstances arose; murders were committed; and disturbances were

continual till the end of 1856, when peace was at length restored, and the officials of 'Aden visited Lahj as friends. In 1857, however, 'Sultan' 'Aliyy again began his intrigues, and early in 1858 hostilities broke out. The 'Sultan's' forces were routed, and he made his submission in March. With this incident the history of Playfair is brought to a close; but the opening of the Suez Canal has given an importance to 'Aden that cannot yet be estimated ; and it is not improbable that its forts and harbour will make it another Gibraltar, though the stream of commerce between eastern Asia and western Europe may never again make of it the centre and entrepot it was from the days of the Pharaohs to the times of the Resiiliyy princes.

THE PEARL-STRINGS.

NARRATIVES OF THE RESULIYY DYNASTY OF YEMEN.

TRANSLATION: PART L

CHAPTERS 1-5.

THE PEARL-STRINGS.

NARRATIVES OF THE RESULIYY DYNASTY.

CHAPTER I.

Lineage of the Princes of the Residiyy Dynasty ; hoiv the occasion arose for their entry into Yemen, and for their becoming independent Sovereigns there,

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite¹:

The most noted princes of Yemen² as sovereigns in the time of paganism and of 'Islam³ were the Himycrite⁴ and the Ghassanitic⁵ princes. For this reason it is said : " The Himycrites were the Lords of the Arabians, and the Ghassanites Lords of the Princes."

And this happened because, when Seba⁶ the Greater was at the point of death he sent for his two sons Himyer and Kehlan. I.Iimyer was the elder, and Seba' made him sit down on his right, while he seated Kehlan to his left. He then called for all his other sons, the sons of his uncle, and the chiefs of his people, and he said to them :

" Know ye that these are my two sons, the one to my right (motioning towards Himyer), the other to my left (indicating Kehlan); and give ye to Himyer, of my realm, that which befits the right hand ; giving unto Kehldn, of my realm, what is suitable for the left hand."

Then they said: " The sword befits the right hand ; also the whip, and the pen ; the rein befits the left hand ; also the shield,

and the bow." And they gave judgment that the possession of the sword, whip, and pen can be naught but a commander and forbiddler, an annuller or confirmer, the qualities of the supreme Prince ; while the holder of the rein is the guider of the fleet horses in repelling from the State ; that with the shield men are driven back in an encounter ; and with the bow are obtained things desired and articles of food, even at a distance; these are suitable only for the guardian of the State, who stands up to do its battles and close all gaps in its frontiers.

So Himyer took upon his neck the sovereignty, which departed not from his children and his children's children ; the same descending among them to the successor from a predecessor,
r until there arose Harith the R'ish.⁷

And Kehlan, with his children, undertook the guardianship of the territories, to repel attacks therefrom, and to keep closed its weak frontiers ; the same descending among them to the eldest from the eldest, until the days of 'Amir son of Haritha the 'Ezdite, surnamed Ma'u's-Sema'i ('water of the sky'). He in the age of Harith the Ra'ish stood up for the protection of the territory and for the closing up of its exposed frontiers after the manners of his forefathers of (the line of) Kehlan.

Now Harith the Ra'ish was a soothsayer, who foretold the coming events of time, giving notice of what would happen before the occurrence thereof; and the matter would come about to the verification of his prediction. There are a number of poems of his on this subject; among them is one beginning as follows :—

f-3' *"Jam the crowned Prince, the giver of gifts; I have imported horses from the homes of the north.*

I ivill go forth against the obstinate who ignore my station; of the sons of Ydfith \faphet\ and of the race of Hdm⁸ [Ham].

The sons of Qahtdn;⁹ who then sought for kindness, conformed, and performed the pilgrimage to the House¹⁰ in the sacred city.

With God's permission did they perform the pilgrimage, for
it is a House successively inherited by the monarch from
the monarch}¹
And be ye like unto Mildhddh son of ¹Amr, and Dhii-Ins,
the worthy nobles}²
And we are the most overpowering when we charge; and we
are they wlio are in fear of every shameful thing.
And verily\ on the day when we are wroth or contend for
superiority, it wants but little for the earth to quake
on men.
And if we are content, it keeps at rest with those upon it;
and its face brightens after the gloom.
And among us is the sovereignty and the possession, by right;
and we are the most noble sons of noble ones}³
Our forefather was Ya'rub,¹⁴ and Seba ¹⁵ was our ancestor;
and we overcome, in just vaunting, whomsoever contends
in vaunting, or in claiming superiority.
And if I perish, well, I have already established a kingdom for
you, that will endure to the time of the Tihdmic.¹⁶
And after us, from among us, princes will have the dominion ;
sous of most eminent ones, like the highest pinnacles of the
clouds.
And after them, from among us,princes will succeed who will
judge God's servants without failing.
And after this the blacks⁷ will spread abroad, the eagles of
God, among the people, mankind.
And after them, from among us, will princes reign,¹⁸ weak of
command, heavy of purpose.
And after them a prodigious man will have the rule, a prophet,¹⁹
who will not be tolerant of what is unlawful.
He will quit his people;²⁰ and he will have a scripture?¹ the
text of which will agree with reiterated sayings.
He will be named 'Ahmed'?¹ Oh, would that I could be postponed f. 3^b
to one year after his forthcoming !
And after him righteous Khalifas will rule, and the children
of 'Amir²³ will possess dominion after them.

- And his divinely-assisted banner will appear among them according to the numeral letters for 630 [A.H.].*
- 0 *And after will reign a man of high parentage,²⁴ unto whose forefathers be the most vivid gratulations"*

And sometimes it is more than what has been recorded above.

Now verily he hath foretold in this poem who should possess Yemen after himself of the line of ilimyer and its sons by his words: " And if I perish, well, I have already established a kingdom for you that will endure to the time of the Tihamite." And it happened as he had foretold ; the princes of the house of Qahtan ceased not successively to inherit the realm of Yemen until there arose the empire of 'Islam. By his expression "the Tihamite" he intimated the Prophet (upon whom may God pour out His salutations and greetings).

And his words : " And after us, from among us princes will have the dominion ; sons of most eminent ones, like the highest pinnacles of the clouds"; and it was as he had said, i.e., the princes who possessed Yemen after Harith the Ra'ish and before the appearance of the Alys^inians.

And again his words : " And after this the blacks will spread abroad, the eagles of God, among the people, mankind " ; and it was as announced, through the spread of the Abyssinians into Yemen and their domination therein. This domination of the Abyssinians in Yemen, according to what is related, lasted .seventy-two yeuis. Four men from among them successively held it; and these were (1) 'Eryat, (2) 'Ebreha, (3) Yeksum son of'Ebreha, (4) and lastly Mesruq son of'Ebreha.

- And his words : " And after them, from among us, will princes leign, weak of command, heavy of purpose" ; and it happened as he had spoken. These are the princes who ruled in Yemen
- f. 4 after the empire of the Abyssinians ; they are not like those who preceded them of the princes of Himyer in the former age.

And his saying : " And after them a prodigious man will have the rule, a prophet, who will not be ,toleiant of what is unlawful. He will quit his people ; and he will have a scripture,

the text of which will agree with reiterated sayings. He will be named 'Ahmed. Oh, that I could be let live for one year after his forthcoming!" And it was as he spake, through the manifestation of the Prophet (on whom may God vouchsafe salutations and greetings), and his going forth from Mekka to Medina, so forsaking his people, and taking up his abode in Medina among 'the supporters,' ²⁵until overtaken by death (on him may God bestow salutations and greetings). And his expression, "and he will have a scripture, the text of which will agree with reiterated sayings " ; that is, a scripture will be sent down to him in the Arabic language, and written in the Arabian script; namely, the cherished Qur'an. God (who be exalted) hath spoken : " Verily We have sent it down as an Arabic reading" ; and God (who be exalted) hath said, " in a plain Arabian idiom."

And his words : " And after him righteous Khalifas will rule " ; v and so it was as he said, by the uprising of the (four first) rightly-judging Khalifas after the Apostle of God (on whom may God bestow salutation and greeting), and by the rise of the Khahfas of the sons of Umeyya and of the bous of Abbas, and their possession of Yemen after the Apostle of God (on whom may God bestow salutation and greeting).

Next he gave notice of the appearance of the princes of (the line of) Ghassan²⁶ in Yemen, and of their dominion over it; so he said : "and the children of 'Amir will possess dominion after them," moaning 'Amir (son of Ilurithn, the 'Kzdite), but cur-tailing the name through the necessity of the metre and rhyme, i.e. 'Amir son of Haritha son of 'Imru'u'l - Qays son of Tha'leba son of Me'rib son of 'Ezd son of Ghawth. lie has indicated him alone, to the exclusion of all but him, of those who preceded or succeeded, because he was his contemporary, since it was he, of the posterity of Kehlan, who stood up with him for the protection of the borders and closing up the gaps in the frontiers, as well as the collection of the revenues ; there-fore he particularly indicated him.

He then lays a stress upon this, and explains it clearly by his f. t

words : " And his divinely-assisted banner will appear among them according as they enunciate (the numeral letters for) 630 (A.H.)." And it happened as he foretold, through the appearance of 'el - Mcliku'l - Mansiir, and his independent sovereignty in Yemen, together with the succession of his issue after him until this day of ours ; he being 'Umer son of 'Aliyy, son of Resul.

His independent sovereignty in Yemen happened in the year 630 of the era of the Hijra (A.l). 1232). This is the signification of his expression " according as they enunciate (the letters) ^ (600) and J (30)," for verily the letter ~, as a numeral, stands for 600, and J for 30.

The reign of Harith the Ra'ish was before the appearance of the Prophet (upon whom may God bestow salutation and greeting) something like six hundred years,²⁷ as is said ; but God knows best.

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite (whom may God pass over in forgiveness) : I have commented this poem, indited by Harith the Rd'ish, in an exquisite monograph which I have entitled "The Net Result; on the Lineage of the House of Resul " ; and I did so by reason of what I discerned as to the veracity of their genealogy. Few indeed are the arguments in proof of the veracity of anyone's lineage so good as those which confirm this genealogy.

A.—SPECIAL SECTION.

Now when 'Amir died—the son of Haritha the 'Ezdite—who was surnamed " Water of the Sky" by reason of his munificence and generosity, his son 'Amr son of 'Amir undertook to direct affairs after him; taking on himself all that his father had undertaken, in the matter of the protection of the territory, stopping up the frontier gaps, extracting revenue from whom due, etc. And he it was who was surnamed Muzeyqiya' ('the little tatterer'); respecting whom, and his son, one of the 'supporters' has sung:

*/ am the son of Museyqiyl of 'Amr ; and my grandfather was his father\ 'Amir, the Water of the Sky.'*¹

Verily, 'Amir son of H&ritha was surnamed " Water of the Sky " because he maintained his people a year, when the sky was morose, and the earth consequently unfruitful through extreme barrenness. So he ceased not to supply his people until they were rained upon and were in plenty. Thus they named him the "Water of the Sky" from this cause; for he was a substitute for the water of the sky and provisioned them a whole year.

And in like manner 'Amr son of 'Amir was surnamed the " Little Talterer " because he used to put on every day two suits of clothing, and then rend them in tatters at the close of the day; because he disdained to use them again, and disliked that any other but himself should wear them. He lived a very long life ; it is said that he attained to the age of e'ght hundred years ; but God knows best.

In his days came about the ruin of the Dam. The first to found the Dam was Scba' the Greater, whose name was 'Amir, though some say 'Abdu'sh-Shems ('servant of the sun '), son of Yeshjub son of Ya'rub son of Qahtdn. He who next built it was Himyer son of Seba', after the death of his father. Then, he who completed it afterwards was the Himyerite Two-Horned One (Dhu'l - Qarneyni'l - Himyeriyy), who was Sa'b son of 'Ebu-Merathid.²⁸

And the Dam was from Mount Me'rib to Mount 'Eblaq, which are two mounts of great height upon towering mountains stretched out between the Dam and the north thereof. And there flowed towards the Dam from the higher region of Yemen seventy watercourses, besides what came to it from minor channels. And what was above the Dam, from six months off, flowed into this Dam ; while the water of the Dam irrigated (a district) two months (long) by two months (broad).²⁹

That (region) which adjoined Me'rib on the north of the Dam belonged to the Benu Kehlan (tribe of Kehlan); and what

was conterminous with Mount 'Eblaq south of the Dam belonged to the children of Himyer.

The water thereof was constant from year to year, according to the extent of the country and its perpetual hligation.

And the Dam had three outlets ; and below the Dam there was a pool of very large extent. When they required inigation, they would open the upper sluice, the water would flow into the pool, and they would water with it.

When the water fell below the upper sluice they would open the middle one, the water would again run into the pool, and therewith watering would proceed. If the water became too shallow for the middle outlet, they could open the lowest sluice and let it run into the pool as before.

U And Bilqis^{3U} had made twelve springs in the pool; so they irrigated their gardens and their seed-crops, and they wanted for nothing, whatever they might desire, and to spare. And a servant would walk among the trees with a large basket on his head. The basket would fill with fruits without his picking any with his hand, and without gathering any from the ground. The sun could never reach anyone who walked beneath the trees of these gardens, by reason of their interlacing. And they used to supply one another mutually with fires for an extent of country two months' journey long by two broad. It is even said a journey of six months each way. But God knows best.

On this subject God hath spoken and said (who be blessed and extolled): "There had been for Seba' *in* their dwelling-place a sign—two gardens, on the right and left. Eat ye of the piovihion of your Lord, and give ye thanks unto Him. A goodly country, and a forgiving Lord."³¹

They have said : "And a man used to travel from his own country to another, take his siesta there, and anive at a third in the evening, of those towns on which God had granted His blessing, these being the towns of the holy temple." And they used to say : " O our Lord God, do Thou make our journeyings far between." So when they had thus blasphemed the good things of God, the Lord sent unto them His apostles, as it is

spoken: "Verily God sent unto them twelve prophets" ; or, as some have said, "thirteen prophets." And they called the apostles of God liars, and turned away from obedience unto God. So God sent upon them "the inundation of 'Arim,"³² this 'Arim being a heavy rain, as is affirmed by the author of "The Crowns." ³³ After that God ruined the Dam. \r

SECTION.

ACCOUNT OF THE RUIN OF THE DAM.

Thus saith the author of "The Crowns" ('et-T/jdn) :—At what time Tarifa daughter of Jebr the Hajwerite,³⁴ wife of 'Amr son of 'Amir, the Little Tatterer, was asleep by the side of 'Amr on a certain night among others, behold, she saw as it were a black cloud that enveloped the land of Yemen. It lightened, thundered, and shot forth thunderbolts. It passed over nothing that it did not bum up. So she was terrified by her dream, and arose *in* fear, and troubled with extreme terror. Then 'Amr quieted her alarm, and asked what had happened to her. So she spake: "By the light and the dark, by the sky and the earth, Shahr³⁵ will be destroyed, and Yemen will perish ; the countries will be devastated, and God's people will be scattered." And he said : " And how shall this happen ? " Said she : " There will be seven hard years, that will bring about earthquakes and disasters ; therein will the son abandon the father." 'Amr said to her : " Thou hast spoken sincerely and truly ; what, then, is thy opinion ? " And she spake : " Go thou to the Dam ; and when thou shalt have seen lightning and thunder, when the malign star³⁶ (Mars or Saturn) shall have arisen and the auspicious (Venus or Jupiter) shall have disappeared, then, upon this, the rat! the rat! ³⁷ When thou shalt have seen it multiply digging, and the overturning of enormous stones with its two fore-feet, verily, the event will have drawn nigh. Then will endurance be incumbent on thee, and not a bemoaning over fortune." f. 6' \r

Said he to her: "And when opinest thou that this will happen?" She said unto him: "I know not, save that it is an event that will have come down from God, and a decree from Him that has preceded in past eternity; it will not be turned aside from plain or from mountain; wherever He hath willed, it will come to pass; therefore, from thee be there caution and dread."

So 'Amr set out to the Dam; and he ceased not to keep watch over it, until he saw one day a water-rat digging into the Dam with its two fore-feet and its two hind-feet; it had also overturned a rock that less than forty men could not overset. And the beast was blind.

So, when he had seen this, he went back to Tarifa, and said to her: "I have seen the verification of thy saying, O Tarifa" Said she to him: "O 'Amr, cause thou to hasten the journeyings, house to house, neighbour to neighbour, when the divine decrees shall come down, and while the night and the day tread in each other's footmarks."

Said he: "And when shall this be?" She said: "In seven years shall the event happen of a surety, through a disuniting of the two hands, while rancour shall multiply." Now some have maintained that these were the "seven grievous years" which the Potentate of Egypt³⁸ saw in a vision that Joseph³⁹ interpreted to him—the Truthful One, on whom be greeting,

f. 6^b Then 'Amr did that which Tan'fa commanded him, and kept the matter secret. And he, resolved to emigrate with his children and family; but this he kept to himself lest the people should oppose a refusal exgainst him.

Later on, he one day commanded a banquet to be prepared. So he slaughtered a hundred camels and slew a great number of sheep and goats. Then he had it proclaimed among the Arabians, saying: "Come ye to the country of the Little Tatterer." So the people flocked to his bounty from all quarters, neither noble or simple holding back. Then he commanded his eldest son, who was Tha'leba the 'Anqa',⁴⁰ the ancestor of 'Ews and Khazrcj, father of their father

Haritha son of Tha'leba the 'Anqa', and said unto him: "When I command thee to do an act, then do not thou weigh the matter with thyself; for I shall strike thee with my boar-spear here, and when I strike thee do thou smite me on the face." Then said Thaieba to him: "By God, O my father, I shall not be able to impel my hand towards thy face, neither will my spirit submit to me therein." He rejoined: "My dear son, if I have any claim upon thee, then oppose not thou thy father; for verily herein there is what will advantage me and thee." Then Tha'leba said unto him: "To hear is to obey."

10

So when the people had had their meal, and had finished, the nobles of the Arabians having gathered together, then the prince commanded his son Tha'leba to do a thing, and he disobeyed him. So he struck him with his boar-spear, and Tha'leba sprang upon him and buffeted him. Then said the prince: "Alas! the ignominy! he buffets me in the day of my bounty!" So his other sons and his cousins sprang on Thaieba to kill him. Then he said: "Do not so; for verily pity hath occurred in my heart for him before wrath; and with haste comes remorse; but I will chastise him in a way that will do me justice by him. I will sell my cattle and my estates, and I will leave nothing for him to betake himself to; and I will take my departure from Me'rib to another place."

Then said the people of the region: "Take ye advantage of the anger of 'Amr, and buy ye of him all his properties." So when he had obtained the values of his possessions, he took his departure in the midst of his children and children's children, together with all his family and house.⁴¹

Subsequently God destroyed the Dam after this, and tore up the rocks, the pavilions, the trees, and the canals, casting the sands over them. And when they who were below the Dam saw its destruction, and that they could do nothing to f. 7 it, they fled to the tops of the hill with their families and cattle.

And the water surged over the Dam through an abundance

of rain ; and the water issued from the interstices burrowed by the rats; as has been said by 'el-'A'sha as follows :—

*" And herein is an example for him who profits thereby, as also
Me'rib, over which the inundation swept ;
Marbles that Himyer built up for them. When its plantain-
dealer came, he gathered not the gleanings ;
And he irrigated the seed-crops and the grapes thereof, according
to the abundance of their water when distributed.
And they became dispersed on all hands, they found not thereof
wherewith to give drink to a newly ivened infant."*

And they became as God hath said, who be exalted and blessed : " And We substituted unto them for their two gardens, two gardens with austere edibles and tamarisks and a little somewhat of zizyphus lotus. Thus did we punish them for that which they ungratefully denied ; and do We punish unless the ungrateful denier ? " ⁿ

And it is related that the torrent of the inundation occurred about four hundred years before 'Islam ; this was said by Hamza son of Hasan the 'Isfahanite; but in a narrative other than his it was more than that ; and this latter is the more accurate ; but God knows best.⁴³

SECTION.

And when the Dam was ruined, and 'Amr son of 'Amir, the Little Tatterer, set out with his chikhen, his children's children, and a number of the clans of his people, from Me'rib with their faces turned towards the regions, they sought a land that would sustain them or a district that would defend them. So they alighted in the regions of 'Akk⁴⁴ as they went along.

The head of 'Akk in that day was Shemlaqa son of Jubab. So they begged them to permit them to stay with them until they should command some one to seek out an alighting-place in which they could alight.

And 'Amr son of 'Amir sent out three of his sons, who were Harith son of 'Amr son of 'Amir, and Malik son of 'Amr, and Haritha son of 'Amr son of 'Amir, and he is the father of Khuza'a.⁴⁵

Saith the son of Quteyba:⁴⁶ "And 'Amr son of 'Amir died in the land of 'Akk before any one of those came back whom he had sent out prospecting. Then his son Tha'leba the 'Anqa' was made to succeed in his stead, who was the ancestor of 'Ews f. and Khazrej,⁴⁷ the two sons of Haritha son of Tha'leba the 'Anqa' son of 'Amr son of 'Amir. And he took upon himself that which his fathers had undertaken as to the conservancy of the territory and closing up of weak frontier places."

And when 'Amr son of 'Amir died, as we have narrated, the pestilence fell among his people after him, and matters became very grievous upon them. So they sent to 'Akk and said to them: "The site in which you have let us alight is unsuited to us, and therein has the pestilence already come upon us to the extent inflicted on us. Do ye therefore put us in the locality where you are, as our abiding-place with you; and we JA will soon journey away from you."

But 'Akk disliked this. So warfare broke out between them, and they mutually fought a vehement battle, and the slaughter waxed hot against 'Akk, and Shemlaqa son of Jubrib was slain by treachery. And he who managed their warfare and their battle was Jedha' son of Sinan, who was valiant, bold, and decided. He was one-eyed, deaf, fertile in wiles, great in stratagem, a crafty one among the crafty ones of the Arabians.

And Tha'leba the 'Anqa' was disgusted with this deed of his, and he swore that he would not remain there. So they ceased not journeying until they became near to Mekka. And the dwellers in Mekka at that time were Jurhum.⁴⁸ So Tha'leba the 'Anqa' sent messengers to Jurhum and begged that they would permit him to stay with them. But they returned him a refusal. So they fought mutually, and 'Ezd⁴⁹ prevailed over them and drove them out of Mekka. So

Khuzd'a⁵⁰ took charge of the temple for a long space of time about three hundred years.

Thus has said the son of Quteyba: " So Tha'leba the 'Anqa' died at Mekka, and his brother Jefna son of 'Amr son of 'Amir became his successor over his people. And Jefna took on himself whatever his forefathers had undertaken as to the conservancy of the territory and the repulsion of attacks upon it. And he ceased not to dwell in Mekka,⁵¹ he and his people of 'Ezd, until Mekka became too confined for them and they resolved to arise and quit it.

^{8a} And there was among them a woman who foretold coming events, even Tan'fa the wife of 'Amr son of 'Amir, the Little Tatterer. So when they determined on an exodus from Mekka their inspired woman said to them: " Whosoever is possessed of a far-reaching ambition, unflinching endurance, and untiring power let him set out for stuccoed 'Urnan."⁵² So there journeyed thitherward the sons of Nadr son of 'Ezd. They are the 'Ezd of 'Uman; and they alighted in 'Uman and Bahrein,⁵³ dominating over whatever was there; so it is their dwelling-place unto this day.

Next she said: " And whosoever of you is possessed of boldness, determination, decision, valour, and longsuffering under the vicissitudes of fortune, let him betake him to the valley of Mcrr."⁵⁴ So Khuza'a alighted there, and it is where have been their abodes in the days of ignorance and in 'Islam.

Then she said: " And whoso desires immovable mountains in a morass, and fertile lands in a barren desert, let him hie to Yethrib,⁵⁵ the land of date-palms." So Haritha son of Tha'leba the 'Anqa', with his children through 'Ews and Khazrej,⁵⁶ journeyed thither, and in it are their habitations, both in paganism and in 'Islam.

And when they resolved upon issuing forth unto Yethrib, she said to them: "O people of tranquil countenances, of defiant souls, of eminent deeds, alight ye in Yethrib, the far distant, before the downcome of the divine decree and the

prolongation of the event; so that ye may know after ignorance, and perceive the possessor of the Apostleship."⁵⁷

Again she spake: "And whosoever desireth fine raiment, noble horses, treasures, and aliments, let him turn his steps towards the highways of 'Iraq."⁵⁸ So Malik son of Fehm the 'Ezdite,⁵⁹ with clans of his race, went thither, and prevailed against it, becoming princes therein. And they were the Princes of Hira⁶⁰ before the Princes of Lakhm.⁶¹

She said furthermore: "And whoso may have wished for wine and pastry, brocade and silk, bondage and nails, let him attain unto Bostra,⁶² ITafi'r,⁶³ and the choice spots of Damascus⁶⁴ of Syria, that he may possess them years after years, and that noble youths may see them." So Jefna son of 'Amr son of 'Amir journeyed thither with his children and his children's children. And he had the most children of them all ; for it is related that he had a hundred wedded wives. And there f. § journeyed with him a number of the clans of Ghassan.

They have said that he was named Jefna⁶⁵ simply because he inherited the platter of his father in which he used to give food to the people. It was an immense platter, around which a n hundred horsemen could circle, and from which the sitting, standing, and mounted men could cat. It was in subdivisions ; and when a festival came round it was brought forth, put together, and pitched on the outside, just as a ship is pitched. Then, when the festival was over, it was taken to pieces and put away in its place.

Thus has said the son of Quteyba : " So Jedha' son of Sinan, the slayer of Shemlaqa son of Jubab, journeyed among those who went towards Syria ; and he was a noble of the nobles of Ghassan.⁶⁶ And when they had settled down in Syria the tax-collector of Qaysar⁶⁷ came to them to demand the tax receivable for the fisc. Then said unto him Jedha' son of Sinan: 'We are a famished people, and we have not with us anything we can send to the King ; but take thou this sword as a pledge unto thee until there come unto us what we may send to the King.' Then the collector said : 'Put

thou it into so-and-so of thy mother'; at which those present laughed.

"Now Jedha' son of Sinan was deaf; and when he saw the assembly laugh he understood what the collector had said. So he unsheathed the sword, and struck through the neck of the collector, while one of those present said : 'Take thou from Jedha' that which he hath given thee'; and it spread abroad as a proverb.

" Then the scribe of the collector went away to Qaysar and informed him of what had happened with Ghassan, and of their slaughter of the collector. So Qaysar despatched against them a dense army to combat them and to expel them from the regions ; Ghassan, however, routed them and took away their weapons. Then he sent against them another army, but not one of them could stand against Ghassan ; so they routed them, and they slew of them a part.

" And when Qaysar saw this, he made them his lieutenants over the Arabians of Syria, taking away the domination of *Selih*⁶⁸ from over them. Now Seh'h had been the princes over the Arabians of Syria before Ghassan ; and Ghassan ceased not to be princes there until there arose the empire of 'Islam." And God knows best.

SECTION.

A MENTION OF THE GLIASSAN PRINCES OF SYRIA IN THE DAYS OF PAGANISM.

Thus .saith 'Aliyy bun of Hajari, the Khazrejite, with whom may God deal graciously : The first who ruled in Syria, of Ghassan, after Jefna son of 'Amr son of 'Amir, was Harith⁶⁹ son of 'Amr son of Jefna, who was Harith the Greater. His family name was 'Ebii Shcmir (Father of Shemir), and he was called "The Burner," because he was the first who punished by fire; and his posterity are known as "The House of the Burner" ('Alu Muharriq). Said Tbnu (the son of) Khumurtash⁷⁰ in his short-vowel-ending poem :

*" And the proud ones among the proud of the sons of the Burner,
who covered the land with cohorts of pismires."*

Such is the story told by the 'Esh'arite ('el-'Esh'ariyy).⁷¹

Again he saith: Then after him reigned his son Harith the Halting son of Harith the Greater. His mother was " Mariya of the two Earrings,"⁷² from whom people say proverbially: "Even for the two earrings of Mariya." She was Mariya daughter of 'Erqam son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna; though it has been said: Mariya daughter of Dhalim son of Wehb son of Harith son of Mu'awiya son of Thewr, who was Kind a.⁷³ And unto her is the pedigree traced of the princes of Ghassan. Says Hassan son of Th.'ibit,⁷⁴ one of the aiders (supporters), praising the princes, the sons of Jefna :

*" The children of jefna, around the grave of their forefather,
the grave of the son of Mariya, the munificent, the extolled ;
They cover over, so that their dogs may not hoivl; they ask
no questions about the coming distant dark figure;
They arc radiant of countenance; noble are their fair; dis-
dainful of nose ; of the pristine pattern."*

He was the best of their princes, the most auspicious of them *in* bird-augury, the most distant of them *in* raiding, and the most powerful of them in stratagems. He it was who warred against Khayber⁷⁵ and made captive its people, setting them free again after reaching Syria. Mundhir the Lakhmite, son of Ma'us-Sema' (the Water of the Sky),⁷⁰ marched against him with a hundred thousand of his people and the men of his country. To meet them Harith the Halting despatched f. one hundred men of Ghassan, pretending that he had sent them to treat of peace. And among them was the poet Lebi'd son of Yezfd the Ghassanite, who was then a youth. They surrounded the pavilion of Mundhir, son of the Water of the Sky, and a party of them rushed upon him, slew him, and

killed a multitude of his people and of such of his family as were with him. They then jumped upon their horses' backs, some of them escaping and some being slain.

This being achieved, the Ghassanite cavalry charged upon the masses of Mundhir, routed them, slew a portion and captured another. This battle was named "The Day"⁷⁷ of Halima," from the circumstance that Halima daughter of Harith the Halting perfumed those hundred men with a perfume of the perfumes of princes, after which they donned their winding-sheets, and over these their coats of mail. Then they went to encounter Mundhir ; and for this reason is the day named the " Day of Halima."

Next after him did his son, Harith the Less son of Harith the Halting son of Harith the Greater,⁷⁸ become the ruler; and after him his brother, Nu'man⁷⁹ son of Harith the Halting son of Harith the Greater. He it was of whom Nabigha⁸⁰ the Dhubyenite has sung:

*" This is a youth whose face is handsome; he is a presage of
luck, and swift of accomplishment,
For Harith the Lesser and Har ith the Halter, and the Greater^
the best of mankind:
Then for Hind, and for Hind; and already hath a leader
hastened from him in good works.
Five ancestors of them. What are they? They are the most
munificent of those who drink the downpour of the clouds'.*

'And Nabigha also sings of him:⁸¹

*" Then if Nu'man laments, we rejoice and exult; and its good
and its spring become ready:
And there returns unto Kehldn a sovereignty and a principedom ;
and this is the thing desired, if only we be capable of it"*

And the son of Quteyba hath said:⁸² And there were three sons of Nu'man son of Harith: Hujr son of Nu'mdn, from

whom his father was surnamed ; and 'Amr son of Nu'man ; and Nu'man son of Nu'man. And all of them became princes, and of them sings Hassan son of Thabit, the "Aider," " Supporter " :

" Who will foolishly have faith in fortune or place confidence in it, of any tribe after 'Amr and Hujr?

Two Princes, from the Mountain of Snow⁸³ to the two coasts of 'Eyla⁸¹ in the neighbourhood of Wej'r"⁸⁵ i

And after him his brother 'Amr son of Harith the Halting ruled ; and it is he to whom Nabigha the Dhubyante alludes when he separated from Nu'man son of Mundhir, thus speaking of him⁸⁶:—

" Kindness after kindness is to my debit and the credit of 'Amr and his father, which did not hide scorpions in them."

The son of Quteyba also has said : " ' Amr son of Harith was further surnamed 'Ebu-Shemir the Lesser."

Mcs'udiyy again has as follows :⁸⁷ " When Harith the Greater had ruled, the first prince after him was Harith son of Thaieba son of 'Amr." He also says: " And his mother was Mariya of the two Earrings." And again : " Then after him ruled Nu'mdn son of Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son of Thaieba son of Jefna. And after him ruled 'Awf son of 'Ebu Shemir,⁸⁸ and he was sovereign when the Prophet was sent, on whom may God bestow salutation and greeting."

And one of the collectors of traditions⁸⁹ has related that Hassan son of Thabit came as envoy to Harith son of 'Ebu Shemir in Syria. And Nu'man son of Mundhir was Prince of Hira, and vied with him. So Harith son of 'Ebu Shemir said to Hassan son of Thabit : " O thou son of Furey'a,⁹⁰ it has reached me that thoili extollest Nu'man above me." Then / Hassan said unto hiiriV " And how could I extol him above/ thee, or represent him als thy peer? For, by God, verily the f. , fv

back of thy head is more comely than his face; and verily thy mother was more noble than his father; and verily thy left hand is more bounteous than his right hand; and indeed thy little is more than his much; and verily thy draining from a scooped water-hole is more plenteous than his pond; and indeed thy footstool is wider than his throne; and verily thy irrigation-channels are more abundant than his canals; and indeed thy day is longer than his months; and forsooth thou art of Ghassan, while indeed he is of Lakhm. How then can I extol him above thee, or equal him with thee?" And he said: "O son of Furey'a, verily this is not heard, saving in poetry." So he said:

*"Thou hast been told that the father of Mundhir compares himself to thee in respect of Hdrith the Lesser;
Thy occiput is more comely than his countenance; and thy mother better than Mundhir;
And the left one of thy two hands unto any other than it, is like the right one of his two hands on the gaming arrov"*

And of them is Harith son of 'Ebu Jebela son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna, who is mentioned by the son of Jewn. He has said: "And his reign was of three years." He said also: "And of them was 'Eyhem son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Jebela son of Haihh son of Tha'leba son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna. And of them was Jebela son of 'Eyhem son of Jebela son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna." And he was the last-
TA their princes. And God knows best.⁹¹

And the number of their princes, was thirty-two sovereigns. It has been said thirty-two sovereigns, jhd even thirty-six sovereigns.⁹² And the period of their rv, Ale was oio years.⁹³ But in some history, that the duration V., of their rule was one thousand six hundred years.

SECTION.

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite, with whom may God deal in His grace: And the author of "The Crowns"⁹¹ has given a section, in which he mentions the names of the princes of Ghassdn. And he has related that the first of the f. u» princes of Ghassan was Mazin son of 'Ezd. Says he : " And he was the Gatherer together of Ghassan,⁹⁵ and was called the Slayer of Famine.⁹⁶ Next, his son Tha'leba son of Mazin, who was called the Provision of Travel.⁹⁷ Next, his son 'Imru'u'l-Qays son of Tha'leba, surnamed Buhlul ;⁹⁸ then, his son Jlaritha son of 'Imru'u'l-Qays, who was called Ghitrif." Next, his son 'Amir son of Jlaritha ; and he it was who was designated Water of the Sky;¹⁰⁰ or, as is said, Water of the Rain-Cloud. Next, n his son 'Imran son of 'Amir, who was a diviner. Then his brother 'Amr son of 'Amir, who was surnamed the Little Tattcrer.¹⁰¹ Next, his son Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of 'Amir ; and he was called the 'Anqa,' and he was the grandfather of 'Ews and Khazrej. Then, his brother Jefna son of 'Amr son of 'Amir ; his name was 'Ulba¹⁰² son of 'Amr. Next, his son 'Amr son of Jefna ; then his son Harith son of 'Amr son of Jefna, who was Harith the Greater. Next his son Harith son of Harith, who was Harith the Halter; then his son Harith son of Harith, who was Harith the Lesser.¹⁰³ Next, his brother Nu'man son of Harith the Halter; then the children of Nu'man, who were three—'Amr son of Nu'man, and I.Iujr son of Nu'man, and Nu'man son of Nu'man son of Harith.¹⁰⁴ And of the children of Harith the Haller was there also Mundhir son of Harith the Halter, and 'Eyhem son of Harith the Halter, and his son Jebela son of 'Eyhem, and 'Ebu Jebela son of 'Amr, who slew the Jews at Medina."¹⁰⁵ He has further said: "And of them was Jebela son of Jefna, and Tha'leba son of 'Amr, and 'Amr son of 'Amr, and Mundhir son of Harith son of Jebela." 106 And he has also said : " The 'Eyhems were four ;¹⁰⁷ they were : 'Eyhem son of Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Jebela son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna ;

f- 11^b and 'Eyhem son of 'Eyhem son of HARith son of 'Ebu Jebela ; and 'Eyhem son of 'Eyhem son of Jebela son of Harith son of Ebu Jebela." Said he : " And the son of Jewn¹⁰⁸ has related this in his commentary on the poem by Khumurtash, taking it from the son of the Kelbite Tbnu'l-Kelbiyy,¹⁰³ who said : 'And Harith son of Jebela had four children—Nu'man son of Harith, Jebela son of Harith, Mundhir son of Harith, and again Mundhir son of Harith.'" ¹¹⁰ And again he said: "And all of them became sovereigns." Such is the narrative of the author of " The Crowns " ; and God knoweth best.

, Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite, with whom may God deal in His grace: "The jurist 'Ebu'l-Hasan Hamza son of Hasan the 'Isfahanite has inscribed in his book known as 'The Hook of the Annals of the Nations' (Kitabu TewnVikhi'l-'Umam) thirty-two princes of the princes of Ghassan, the one after the other, as also the number of the years that each one of them ruled individually. He has also mentioned that the total thereof was 601 years. And I have related that which he narrates in the section following this present one. Unto God belongeth the granting of success."

SECTION.

Said 'Ebu'l-Hasan Hamza son of Hasan the Tsfahanite, to whom may God show loving mercy : "The descendants of Jefna were the tax-collectors of the Caesars¹¹¹ over the Arabians of Syria, as were the descendants of Nasr¹¹² the tax-collectors of the Chosroes ('Ekasira)¹¹³ over the Arabians of 'Iraq."¹¹⁴ He also said : "And the origin of the sons of Jefna was from Yemen, from the stock of 'Ezd. And this, inasmuch as 'Ezd, while yet at Me'iib, having a presentiment of the disintegration of the Dam, and fearing the inundation of the outburst of its waters, emigrated from Me'rib. So a party went northwards and alighted at a water called Ghassan; thus they were named , Ghassan, from the water on which they had alighted; and it is a water at the Dam of Me'rib, though it has been said to be a water at Mushellel near Juhfa,¹¹⁵ and further said to

be a water between the Zebi'd¹¹⁶ and the Rima',¹¹⁷ which are two valley-streams belonging to the 'Esh'aritics¹¹⁸ in Yemen." He has also stated : " Later on, Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of 'Amir, he who was called the 'Anqa, caused them to settle in the wilderness of Syria.¹¹⁹ The princes thereof on the part of f. 12^a the Qaysars at that time were of the Seli'h son of Hulwan son of 'Imran son of 'Ilhan son of Quda'a. So when Ghassdn rr alighted in the vicinity of Seli'h, these imposed upon them the payment of a tax. He who was charged with its collection was Subeyt son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of 'Awf son of Duj'am son of Hamata. So Subeyt went to see Tha'leba son of 'Amr, and demanded of him the tax. Then Tha'leba begged of him a delay; but Subeyt said, 'Indeed, thou shalt pay down at once, or verily I will seize thy family.' Now Tha'leba was forbearing; so he said to Subeyt, 'Ilast thou a desire for someone to lend this tax-money at interest?' And he said ; ' Yes.' Said he : ' There is Jed ha' son of Sinan for thee.' Now Jedha' son of Sinan was a man of decision, as we have narrated. Then Subeyt came to him and said to him what he had said to Tha'leba son of 'Amr. So Jedha' came forth to him, having with him a sword enriched with gold. And he said unto him : 'Art thou willing to take this sword in lieu of thy claim until I can gather together for thee the tax ? ' He said : 'Yes.' He said : 'Take it.' So Subeyt grasped the sheath of the sword, while its hilt was in the hand of Jedha', who drew it from the sheath and smote therewith Subeyt in such manner that he fell down dead. Then it was said to him : 'Take thou from Jedha' that which he hath given thee'; and this passed into a proverb. Then war occurred between Schh and Ghassan, so that Ghassan drove Seli'h out of Syria, and became princes there. And the first prince from out of rr Ghassan in the land of Syria was Jefna son of 'Amr the Little Tatterer son of 'Amir the Water of the Sky son of Haritha the Ghitrff son of 'Imru'u'1-Qays the Bitriq son of Tha'leba the Buhlul son of Mazin the Provision of Travel otherwise the Slayer of Famine son of 'Ezd son of Ghawth."

Me has also said : " And it is asserted by 'Ezd that 'Amr son of 'Amir was called the Little Tatterer merely by reason that he used to tatter every day of the days of his rule two suits of f. 12^b raiment which it was distasteful to him to return to again, and which it would have touched his pride that any other than himself should have put on."¹²⁰ Therefore he was called the Little Tatterer. But it has been said : " For the reason that 'Ezd was rent into rags in his days and became scattered at what time they took flight from the inundation of the outburst. And the Arabians took up as a proverb the dispersion of 'Ezd from Mc'rib through the inundation of the outburst, and they said : ' The sons of So-and-So became as the detachments, or, as the many detachments, of Seba.'" But God knows best

And he who made Jcfna prince over Syiia was a prince from among the princes of the Romans called by the name of Nesturus.¹²¹ Then, when Jefna son of 'Amr became possessor of Syria after the Selihian princes of Quda'a, then did Ouda'a submit to him, as also others of the people of Syria and others. H⁸ And he built Jilli^q,¹²² Qarya,¹²³ and a number of water-tanks. Afterwards he died, his rule having been for forty-five years and three months.

Then there ruled after him his son 'Amr son of Jefna for five years. And he built the three monasteries¹²¹—Deyr Mali, Deyr 'Eyyub, and Deyr Hennada.

And there governed after him his son Tha'leba¹²⁵ son of 'Amr bon of Jefua. Me it was that built Merju'l-Ghadir¹²⁶ on the outskiits of Hawran¹²⁷ that adjoin the Belqa'.¹²⁸ And the duration of his rule was seventeen years.

Then there reigned after him his son Marith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna. Me built nothing; and his reign was twenty years.

Then ruled after him his son Jebela son of Marith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna.

Next after him reigned his son Marith son of Jebela son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna ; whose mother was Mariya of the Two Earrings,¹²⁹ daughter of 'Erqam son of

'Amr son of Jefna ; whose dwelling was at Belqa'. He built there Hafir,¹³⁰ and the water-tank of the well of 'Ujaf,¹³¹ also the castle of 'Ubeyriq.¹³² His rule was ten years.

Then there governed after him his eldest son Mundhir son of Harith son of Mariya. And he built Je'tha¹³³ and Zerqa¹³⁴ near to the Two Horns.¹³⁵ And his reign was three years.

Next ruled after him his brother Nu'man son of Harith son of Mariya; and his reign was fifteen years and six months.

Then succeeded to him his brother Nu'man the Younger, who was 'Ebu Shemir son of Haiith son of Mariya; and his reign was thirteen years.

Next after him ruled his brother Jebela son of Harith son of Mariya; his residence was at Kharib.¹³⁶ Then he built the castle of Kharib, and Makharib, and Memna'a. His reign was of thirty-four years.

Then next after him governed his brother 'Eyhem son of Harith son of Mariya; who built the monasteries of Dakhm Abbey (Deyr Dakhm),¹³⁷ and of the Abbey of the Prophetship (Deyru'n-Nubuwwa). And his reign was of three years.

Then followed next after him as prince his brother 'Amr son of Harith son of Mariya. He alighted at Sudeyr¹³⁸ and built the Castle of 'Afar and the Castle of Menar; his rule being twenty-six years.

Next reigned after him the son¹³⁹ of his brother, Jcfna the Greater son of Nu'man the Greater son of Harith son of Mariya. He is known as the Burner, since it was he who burnt Hira. From him are named the Children of the Burner ('Alu Muharriq); and it is of him that sings 'Adiyy son of Zeyd, in an address to Nu'man son of Mundhir, where he says :

" *The sky of emptiness; and it set in a blaze its two sides; and the towers and the neighbourhood amused thee.*

The clamorous females were young lasses near the home ; then thy servants entered on the morning dawn, and lo, the lasses were grey-haired!"

And its covering works were its ruin. Then he died ; and his reign was three years.

Next reigned after him Nu'man son of the younger Mundhir son of the elder Mundhir son of Harith son of Mariya. His rule was of one year, and he built nothing.

Then after him governed the son of his brother, Nu'man son of 'Amr son of the younger Mundhir son of the elder Mundhir son of Harith son of Mariya. He built the Castle f. 13^b of Suweyda¹⁴⁰ and the Castle of Kharib. His father, 'Amr, did not rule, but he used to go forth on warlike expeditions with the armies; and he it was in whose praise Ndbigha^{H1} sang when he said :

" Kindness after kindness is to my debit and to the credit of 'Anir and his father, which did not hide scorpions in them"

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrcjite, with whom may God deal in His grace: "What is manifest unto me is that Nabigha did not attain to the epoch of this said King; for the author, on whom be God's mercy, has mentioned Nabigha towards the end of the section, and has said that he sang in praise of 'Eyhem son of Jebela. Now, between 'Eyhem son of Jebela and 'Amr son of Mundhir the Younger, rv according to what he has laid down in his History, there is what exceeds three hundred years. It is also known that Nabigha was nearly contemporary with the empire of 'IsMm ; for Hassan son of Thabit was contemporaneous with him, and they went as ambassadors at the same time to Nu'mdn son of Mundhir the Lakhmite."

Thus says Hamza son of Hasan the 'Isfahanite : And the reign of Nu'man son of 'Amr was seven and twenty years; and there governed after him his son Jebela son of Nu'man son of 'Amr son of Mundhir the Younger. And his dwelling was in Siffin,¹⁴² and he was the lord of 'Aynu 'Ubagh,¹⁴³ and also the slayer of Nu'man¹⁴⁴ son of the Water of the Sky. His reign was sixteen years.

Then after him ruled Nu'man son of 'Eyhem son of Harith son of Mariya, who produced nothing new, and whose reign was twenty-one years five months.

After him governed Nu'man son of Harith son of 'Eyhem, who repaired the subterranean cisterns of Rusdfa,¹¹⁵ which one of the princes of Lakhm had laid waste. And his reign was eighteen years.

Then there ruled after him his brother Mundhir son of Nu'man son of Harith son of 'Eyhem, who originated nothing, and whose reign was nineteen years.

He was succeeded by his brother 'Amr son of Nu'man, who originated nothing, and whose reign was thirty-three years four months. f. 14*

Then governed after him his brother Hujr son of Nu'man son of Harith son of 'Eyhem son of Harith son of Mariya. His reign was twenty-six years.

Next there ruled after him his son Harith son of Hujr son of Nu'man son of Harith, whose reign was twelve years.

Then there reigned after him his son Jebela son of Harith son of Hujr son of Nu'man, whose sovereignty was nineteen years and a month.

Next ruled after him his son Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son of Hujr, who was also called Harith son of 'Ebu Shemir. He it was who fought with the sons of Kinana.¹¹⁰ He inhabited Jabiya.¹⁴⁷ His reign was twenty-one years five months.

After him governed his son Nu'man son of Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son of Hujr. His surname was 'Ebu Kurz,¹¹⁸ and he built what overlooks the left-hand basin-hollow.¹⁴⁹ And Ndbigha has wept over him in his verse :

" *Khawlan* ¹⁵⁰ *has wept for Harith from its loss of its lord; and Hawran, on account of him, is downcast and abject*"

His reign was thirty-seven years three months.

And after him governed 'Eyhem ¹⁵¹ son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Shemir, who was the lord of Tedmur ¹⁵²

H and of the Castle of Tur'a.¹⁵³ He fought against the sons of 'Anber¹⁵⁴ sons of Hashr ard their tax-collector. Nabigha¹⁵⁵ thus sings of him :

" Their sober senses strayed azvay from them, and there misled them the talent of the little man of Met add pasturing and tending cattle at a distance from home"

Then there ruled after him his brother Mundhir son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Shcmir, whose reign was one year.

Then there governed after him his brother 'Amr son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Shemir, whose reign was ten yeais and two months.

f. H'' Next ruled after him the son of his brother, Jebela son of Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son of 'Ebu Shcmir, whose reign was four years.

Then succeeded after him Jebela son of 'Eyhem son of Jebela son of 'Eyhem son of Harith son of Mdriya of the Two Earrings, who was Harith son of Jebela son of Harith son o(Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna. And the name of Jefna was Tha'leba¹⁵⁶ son of 'Amr the "Little Tattercr" son of 'Amir the "Water of the Sky" son of Haritha the Ghitrif son of 'Imru'u'l-Qays the Bitriq son of Thaieba the Buhlul son of Mdzin the "Provision of Tiavcl" called also the "Slayer of Famine" son of 'Ezd son of Ghawth. And the reign of Jebela son of 'Eyhem was three years; he being the last of the princes of Ghasbdn in the land of Syria.

But God knows best. Thus endeth that which Hamza son of Hasan the Tsfahdnitc has narrated in his book known as the "Annals of the Nations." But God knows best.

Historians all agree that Jebela son of 'Eyhem was the last of the princes of Ghassan in the times of Ignorance. His height was twelve spans,¹⁵⁷ and when he rode his foot touched **the** earth. He attained to the rise of 'Islam, and became a Muslim in the days of 'Umer, with whom may God be satisfied. Later on he became a Nazarene¹⁵⁸ and betook him to the Romans.¹⁵⁹

The cause of his becoming a Nazarene¹⁶⁰ was that a man trod on the border of his upper garment, as he was circum-ambulating the Temple ('el-Beyt), on which he turned round towards that man, and struck him a blow on the face that crushed his nose, and broke his tooth, and discoloured his eye. So this man laid his plaint before 'Umer son of Khattab, with whom may God be satisfied. Then said 'Umer to him : "Satisfy thou him; or otherwise, I shali adjust him." Then he said : "Verily, I am a prince and he is a man of the market?" So 'Umer said to him : "Verily, 'Islam has made equal the relation between you both." Then he said : "Grant thou me a delay until to-morrow." And he granted him the delay.

And when the night spread its mantle, he went forth with his retainers and his slaves, and whoever obeyed him of his people ; and he joined the Romans, and turned Nazarene. Later on, he was struck with remorse, according to what proceeded from him. For he it was who sang :

*" The princes have become Nasarenes by reason of a buffet, in f. 15
which there was no harm had I had patience under it.
There encompassed me therein contentiousness and pride; and
I became like him who sells a sound eye for a blind one.
Oh would that my mother had not borne me ! And would that
I had turned to the saying that ' Umer spake. !
And would that I should pasture pregnant camels in a wilder-
ness, and were a stranger among Rebi'ra or Mudar !¹⁶¹
And oh for me that I were in Syria with the poorest subsistence,
taking refuge with my own people, with my sight and
hearing gone.
That I should profess that religion of the divine law which they
profess ! For the overloaded aged camel hath put up with
its saddle-gall"*

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite : " And of the children of Jebela son of 'Eyhem are the sons of Rest'il, the

princes of Yemen in the time of Islam ; and I shall mention them in the section which I shall narrate after this, if God so wills, who be extolled. And with God is the guidance to success."

SECTION.

ON THE GENEALOGY OF THE SONS OF RESUL, PRINCES OF YEMEN IN ISLAM.

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite, with whom may God deal in His goodness.

The name of Resul¹⁶² was Muhammed son of Hanin son of 'Ebu'l-Feth son of Yuha son of Rustem, who was of the progeny of Jebela son of Eyhern son of Jebela son of 'Eyhem son of ITirith son of Jebela son of Harith son of Tha'leba son of 'Amr son of Jefna son of 'Amr the Little Tatterer son of 'Amir the Water of the Sky son of Haritha the Ghitnf son of Tmru'u'l-Qays the Bitriq son of Tha'leba the Buhlul son of Mazin
M the Provision of Travel called also the Slayer of Famine son of 'Ezd son of Ghawth son of Nebt son of Malik son of Zeyd son of Kehlan son of Seba' son of Yeshjub son of Ya'rub son of Oahtan.

15^h And it was of the decree of God, and of His preordainment in His foreknowledge, that when Jebela turned Nazarene, the son of 'Eyhem, as we have already narrated, and betook himself to the Romans on that day, he remained there until he died, some said, in his syntheism,¹⁶³ and some said in 'Islam, inasmuch as his said verses, in the beginning of which he sings "*The nobles have become Nazarenes by reason of a buffet*" bear witness to his inclination towards 'Isldm and to his remorse for his having quitted it. But God knows best his inmost thoughts.

And when he died there, his children remained there after him, as long as God willed, in the territories of the Romans. After that, his children, and whoever joined them of their people, emigrated to the territory of the Turkuman¹⁶⁴ and resided there with a tribe, out of the tribes of the Turkuman, called Menjik,¹⁶⁵

the most noble of the tribes of the Turkuman. So they sojourned among them, and spoke in their language, and became far removed from the Arabians, and all tidings of them ceased with many of the people; so that many of the people formed the idea that they were of the Turkuman, whereas they had continued true to their genealogies.

And when the members of this house went forth to 'Iraq, IT they who knew them traced their pedigree to Ghassan, while those who knew them not traced them to the Turkuman. And they were the very house of valour and of leadership.

Now Muhammed son of Haiun was very highly considered among them; so the 'Abbasiyy Khalifa¹⁶⁶ drew him nigh to himself and was familiar with him, and specially charged him with his missions to Syria and to Egypt, doing away with all impediment to communication between him and himself. Thus was applied to him the title of Resul, by which he became known, so that his real name was abandoned until it became unknown, being known to but a few among the people. Later on he emigrated from 'Iraq to Syria, and from Syria to Egypt, together with such of his children as accompanied him.

Thus has spoken the author of the "Mudhafferian Memoirs"¹⁶⁷: "Now when the sovereignty became secured to the sons of 'Eyyub¹⁰⁸ in Egypt, there ceased not to be with them a party of the sons of Resul, inasmuch as they were aware of the precedency of their office in the state, of the sublimity of their aspiration:?, the firmness of their courage, and the correctness of f. 16¹ their views."

So the sons of 'Eyyub became unanimous as to delivering over to them Yemen. But certain of their counsellors remarked: "In that case they will strive to make themselves powerful against you there, and will contend with you in Syria." So they agreed in opinion as to sending them to Yemen in the suite of Melik Mu'adhdham Turdnshah son of 'Eyyub.¹⁰⁹

Thus they went forth with him, after that his brother Mclik Nasir Yusuf son of 'Eyyub¹⁷⁰ had appointed them his successors,¹⁷¹ and had enjoined on them to bear him good company,

to deal sincerely with him in their daily intercourse with him, and in their service towards him.

Now they possessed in the Egyptian lands greatness and eminence, favour and celebrity. And they were five men¹⁷² who served on horseback, all of one family: (i) Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Resul; (2) Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul; (3) Niiru'd-Dfn 'Umcr son of 'Aliyy son of Resul; (4) Fakhru'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of 'Aliyy son of Resul; (5) Sherefu'd-Di'n Miisa son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. And they were unsurpassed in bravery, persistence, and good measures in warfare; more especially the father of the party, Shemsu'd-Din. And his son the 'Emir Bedru'd-Dm Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul could not be withstood by any number in battle, however numerous. Nuru'd-Din had a penetrating intellect and a sure judgment. Fakhru'd-Din was generous and munificent; and Shercfu'd-Dm was a horseman, a poet, and eloquent. He it was who sang on this subject:

" We are its protectors, and we repel from it; while a vile people
consume its superabundance.
po (Seek ye) the refuge of God! Until we brandish it, flashes in
the dust-cloud, which have a gleaming!"

And a certain one of the Egyptians overheard him as he said :
" Yemen is gone from the hands of the sons of 'Eyyub."

[6b] Now the entry of Melik Mu'adhdham into Yemen took place in the year 569 A.D. (A., D. I 173). He remained there the year A.D. 570 (A.D. 1174), and returned to Egypt in A.D. 571 (A.D. 1175). He left in Yemen lieutenants of his own, to bring him each year its revenue, until he died in A.ir. 576 (A., D. 1180).

When his lieutenant? received tidings of his decease they differed among themselves, and each one of them seized by force whatever was under his command. And when Melik Nasir was informed of their discord and of their seizure of the territories, he sent his brother Melik 'Aziz Tugh-Tekfn son of 'Eyyub,¹⁷³ with a detachment of the troops. And his entry

into Yemen was on Saturday, 13th Shewwal, A.IT. 579 (about 28th January, 1184), where he remained until he died, the 26th Shewwal, 593 (about nth September, 1197).

After him succeeded to the principality his son Mu'azz Tsma'il son of Tugh-Tekin son of 'Eyyub,¹⁷¹ who ceased not to rule there until he died slain by the hands of the Kurds on Sunday, 18th Rejeb, 598 (about 7th April, 1202).

The government was assumed after him by his brother Nasir 'Eyyiib son of Tugh-Tekfn son of 'Eyyub,¹⁷⁵ who ceased not in it until he died poisoned in the night of Friday, 12th Muharrem, 610 (about 24th May, 1213), or, according to Jenediyy, 611 (1214), which, in my opinion, is the more correct.

The ruler of Egypt, Melik Nasir,¹⁷⁶ was already dead, and his brother, Melik 'Adil 'Ebu Bckr son of 'Eyyub,¹⁷⁷ had succeeded to the government. So, when information reached him of what had occurred in Yemen, as to the murder of Mu'azz and the poisoning of his brother Nasir, both of whom were sons of his own brother 'Aziz, he fitted out his son's son, Melik Mes'ud Saldhu'd-Din Yiisuf son of Melik Kamil Muhammed son of Melik 'Adil 'Ebu Bckr son of 'Eyyub, who was then at the age of puberty,¹⁷⁸ with a dense army to Yemen, with much money and great state. He also wrote to the 'Emir Shcmsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Rcsul, and to the other Egyptian 'Emus in Yemen, commanding them to give him their faithful support, and to be diligent in what was befitting their service to him.

The entry of Melik Mes'ud into Zeb/d took place on Saturday, 2nd Muharrem, 612 (2nd May, 1215). But there had arrived before him Suleyman son of Taqiyyu'd-Din 'Umer son of Shihihshah yon of 'Eyyub,¹⁷⁰ known as the Sufiyy; and with him a party in the garb of the Sufiyy.¹⁸⁰ His arrival was subsequent to the death of Nasir 'Eyyub son of Tugh-Tekin, the mother of the said Nasir having called him, by reason of what she knew of him. And he was then in the fortress of Ta'izz.¹⁸¹ And she had said to him: "Verily we fear that the Arabians will be moved by covetousness in respect of us, we being women

in whom is no resource. And God hath impelled thee towards us. Do thou then stand up for the government of the son of thy paternal uncle." Then he complied with this. So they allowed him to go up into the fortress, and they seated him on the seat of government. And the troops swore fealty to him.

But he was weak of intellect, with no capacity for government. So he busied himself with drinking and amusement, until the state was shaken, and the 'Imam Mansiir 'Abdu'llah son of Ilamza¹⁸² seized upon San'a¹⁸³ and Dhemar,¹⁸⁴ the whole borders becoming disordered.

Then when Melik Mes'ud entered Zcb/d at the date given above, and had installed himself in the Government House in Zebi'd, his troops being weak and his beasts knocked up with
P* fatigue, he sent to Suleyman son of Taqiyyu'd-Dm, who was then in the fortress of Ta'izz, one who should treat with him for peace on the conditions that the highlands should belong to Suleyman and the lowlands to Mes'iid.

But as soon as the 'Emir Bcdru'd-Dm¹⁸⁵ Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul heard of this, he went down to Melik Mes'ud and urged him to go up to Ta'izz. So he went up, and pitched against the fortress of Ta'izz. And the whole military forces of Yemen, to the last man, confronted him. Then said to him the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din: "I am of opinion that thou
f. 17^b write a letter to the servants who are in the fortress of Ta'izz, in which thou shouldst say: 'I swear by God, who be extolled, that unless ye lay hold of Suleymdn son of Taqiyyu'd-Din, ye shall not obtain health from me.'" And he did so.

And when his letter reached the forces, they arose all together, went to Suleyman son of Taqiyyu'd-Din, fastened the door of the sitting-room, and despatched to Melik Mes'ud a messenger to inform him of this. And when he knew of it he sent his lieutenant, who went up, laid hold of Suleyman, and bound him.

Then Melik Mcs'iid went up into the fortress of Ta'izz, his ascent being on Sunday, 10th Safer, A.H. 612 (10th June, 1215). And he took possession of the whole of Yemen from that
f1 date. And he sent Suleyman son of Taqiyyu'd-Dfn to Egypt

bound. And the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din¹⁸⁶ 'Aliyy son of Resul, as also his children, ceased not to dwell in Yemen with the sons of 'Eyyub in the very best intelligence, the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din being wise, perfect, religious, pious, possessed of judgment, leadership, insight, and management. And he held with Seyfu'l-'Islam¹⁸⁷ the highest place and the most exalted degree; so much so that the women of Seyfu'l-'Islam used not to veil themselves from him, by reason of his uprightness, his good morals, and the hope for his blessing.

And when Melik Dhahir Beybars.¹⁸⁸ lord of the territories of Egypt, wrote to Melik MudharTer,¹⁸⁹ on whom may God have grace, a letter in which he menaced him and threatened him, then Melik Mudhaffer, on whom may God have grace, answered him concerning it with what had the signification of: "We are under the protection of the blessing of our ancestor, and we fear no evil, thanks be to God and to the blessing of our ancestor, on whom may God have grace."

And the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din, on whom be God's grace, used to dwell in the canton of Jubla,¹⁹⁰ and one of his monuments there is the castle of 'Uman¹⁹¹ and many of his descendants dwell there unto this our day. He used to love the learned and the righteous, who used to love him for his good morals and the soundness of his innermost thoughts. f- 18

And he used often to visit the cantons of Ilays.¹⁹² And he c frequented the righteous jurist Hasan son of 'Ebu Bekr, the Sheybanite.¹⁹³ Now the jurist Hasan the Sheybanite was one of the greatest of the righteous; and he used to guide him to good works and to gentleness towards the working-classes. And he never opposed him. And Sheybaniyy was often invited by him, and occasionally he would felicitate him on the devolution of the sovereignty to his descendants. And his death took place, may God's grace be on him, in the month of Safer, A.H. 614 (May, A.D. 1217), his children having already become chiefs, their reputation spread abroad, their fame heard to a distance; and there having been manifested, as to their valour and their pre-eminence, what never enters the surmise of any one of

mankind ; they became celebrated in the regions, while the dwellers in towns and in the deserts knew of them.

Now the 'Ata-Bek ¹⁹⁴ of Melik Mes'ud at the time of his entrance into Yemen was Jemalu'd-Din Fuleyt, whom he sent to San'd' to war with the 'Imdm Mansur 'Abdu'lldh son of Hamza in the month of the first Jumadd,¹⁹⁵ 612 (September, 1215). And the war ceased not between them until the 'Imdm 'Abdu'lldh son of I.Iamza died, his death occurring on Thursday, ^{o1} 12th Muharrem,¹⁹⁸ 614 (about 20th April, 1217). Subsequently, the 'Atd-Bek died also on Thursday, 30th Rebi' the First,¹⁹⁷ of the same year (about 10th July, 1217), at the well-named Khawldniyy,¹⁹⁸ being buried in San'd' on Friday, 10th Rebi' the Second (about 18th July, 1217).

When Melik Mes'ud heard of the death of the 'Atd-Bek Fuleyt¹⁹⁹ he went forth to San'a',²⁰⁰ which he entered on Saturday, 8th Jumadd the First (about 15th August, 1217), taking possession of the fortress of Kewkebdn²⁰¹ on Thursday, 5th Jumada the Second (about 15th September, 1217). About this date also was peace concluded between Melik Mes'ud as Sultan, and the 'Eshrdf;²⁰² Melik Mes'ud returning from San'a' . 1S' to Yemen²⁰³ in the month of Rejeb²⁰¹ of the same year (October, 1217), and dwelling with the sons of Resul, in whom he placed confidence, whom he associated with familiarly, and whom he set over the more important provinces as governors, He admired what he witnessed in them as to loyalty and firmness of valour.

So he set over San'a' the 'Emir Bedru'd-Di'n, giving it to him as a fief. He also set the 'Emir Nuru'd-Din over the forts of the Wasdb²⁰⁵ country, where he resided a certain space. He then appointed him to the governorship of Mekka the Honoured,²⁰⁶ where also he resided a space. It was in the time of his governorship there that the birth took place there of his son Melik Mudhaffer Yusuf son of 'Umer,²⁰⁷ who was surnamed or thence the Mekkite. He was born in the year A.n. 619 (A.D. 1222).

When he removed him from the government of Mekka, he

made him his 'Ata-Bek and Controller of the affairs of his soldiery, as also of the whole of his administration. So, when matters became established, and all wars and seditions were appeased, Melik Mes'ud undertook a journey to Egypt, setting out from Zcbi'd on the middle day of the month of Ramadan,²⁰⁸ in the year A.D. 620 (about 10th October, 1223), and leaving in Yemen Nuru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul as his lieutenant, with general powers of vicegerency. He also left Bedru'd-Din, brother of Nuru'd-Din, specially governor in San'd'. And the troops in garrison remained behind for the two. So he departed on the date above-mentioned.

Now there arose Ycz'urn the Sufiyy in IJaql,²⁰⁹ in the countries of Zebi'd, and in the mountain of the Ben 11 Muslim, named Sahammer,²¹⁰ calling the people to himself and telling them that he was an inviter for a true Antistes.²¹¹ So there joined themselves to him a large assemblage of the rabble and scum of the people. Then Nuru'd-Din²¹² set out against him, having with him Rashid son of Mudhaffer son of Ilcrish.

Then said Yez'um the Sufiyy to those who were with him :
 " If they attack us to-morrow we will defeat them, and we will slay Rashid son of Mudhaffer." Then the fight took place, and of a chance there happened what he had predicted. Upon which the people's love for him augmented, and their belief in him. This battle of Ycz'urn the Sufiyy took place in the year f. 19^a
 A.H. 622 (A.D. 1225); after which his affairs became involved in perplexity, many of his lies and the unsoundness of his tenets became manifest to the people, and he set out a fugitive from one country to another.

After that the battle of 'Usr²¹³ occurred, between the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul and the Shenf Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of the 'Imam Mansur 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza. For the Shenf Izzu'd-Din collected his musters of horse and foot; his horse being of seven hundred cavaliers, and his foot of two thousand infantry. Their object was San'a', after the departure therefrom to Dherwan²¹⁴ of the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din in aid of his brother Nuru'd-Din subsequently to his defeat.

This departure of the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din from San'a' to Dherwan took place on Sunday, 16th Rejeb, 623 (about 10th July, 1226). He reached Dherwan on Monday, 17th Rejeb. But, when he received intelligence of the departure of the Shcrif 'Izzu'd-Dm towards San'a', he returned to San'a', his brother Nuru'd-Din returning with him in all speed.

They arrived ; but there had also come the 'Emir Srilim son of 'Aliyy son of ITatim, and the 'Emir 'Ulwdn son of Bishr ap son of Hatim, to San'a', with horse and foot from Dhemermer²¹⁵ and 'Arus,²¹⁶ so protecting the city. The 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din had already pitched in 'Usr and laid himself out to do battle, going down with the intent of attacking San'a'. Then the garrison went forth, and those of Ilemdan²¹⁷ who were with them. So mutual skirmishing took place between them in the early morning of Wednesday, 26th Rejeb, 623 (about 20th July, 1226), the fight continuing till the sun was risen.

And while they were thus doing battle the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din arrived, with his brother Nuru'd-Din and those who accompanied them. The people continued to fight, and some deaths occurred on either side, each party holding out in defence of its own warriors.

v The two 'Emirs went into the castle, and their people breakfasted at their table. Then said the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din :
i. 19¹ " Let us first repose ourselves ; then, if God will, we will enter the bath, and then go forth." So they remained a short time in the castle, and then entered the bath. When they came forth from it the winds sprang up, and the troops collected who had arrived with them, to the number of about a hundred horsemen, not many more, nor many less.

And when they issued from the gate, the 'Emir Nuru'd-Din halted with a few of the horsemen, as a support and reserve to which the people might rally, in case they were routed. The
co 'Emir Bedru'd-Din advanced with the others, the people being still engaged in the battle. Then he airanged his companions, exhorting them to fight with a heart. He turned his face towards them right and left, shouting: "*Heyy ! Heyy!*" They responded:

" Heyy! Ileyy!" This was his battle-cry among his troops. Then he charged into the mass, and resolutely cut his way into them. The rest of his companions charged also, and persistently cut their way in with him. So God favoured them with help and success; the forces of the 'Eshraf becoming broken, so that not one of them could stand firm, and all turned their backs in retreat.

And he effected a widespread slaughter among them; so much so that it is said he broke three spears, and that the sword in his hand was used up, while he made the handle of his mace fly in splinters. He turned not back from the affray, save with his stinup-strap in his hand, and the stirrup therewith. And it is related that he killed on that day one horseman with another, knocking down the one with the other. So slaughter and captivity ceased not from among them until the night came on and the darkness enveloped them.

There was killed the Sheykh Mukhlisu'd-Din Jabir son of Muqbil, alter he had done good service. And of the chiefs of the Arabians there was slain a multitude. There befell the Sherif Tzzu'd-Din a wound from an arrow in his eye, after he had done battle himself and such of his brothers as were with him. And they passed the whole night travelling in the direction of Thula,²¹⁸ and they alighted not from the backs of their horses until they had reached Thula.

Their host had already dispersed ; and there remained not any with them, save forty horsemen, who were the Sherifs and their slaves. Respecting this event the 'ImAditc²¹⁰ of ShiYaz^{2*0} has sung, who was the poet of Melik Mes'ud, on whom be God's grace :

" *Is it not thus that unto the kingdom the steps are mounted, and f. 20*
degrees of fame rise high to the confusion of enemies ?*

*Conquests thai have spread in the earth until its eastern and
its western limits became impregnated with the sweet odour
thereof*

By the szvord of the generous one, the son of Resi'd, were the

bases of a kingdom firmly established whose lord was absent therefrom.

They retreated; and from the thrus/s of the spears in their backs wei'e there eyeballs, and from the szuord-cuts eyebrows."

And the Sultan ^m 'Ulwdn son of Bishr son of Hatim, the Namite, wrote to the Sherif 'Izzu'd-Dfn Muhammed son of the 'Imam Mansur 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza son of Suleyman son of Hamza :

" O nobles of mankind of every tribe, and most eminent in high qualities of them who vaunt;

And most firm of them in might at a time of turmoil, and most protective of them zwhen protectors are lacking ;

I congratulate you on the advent of the festival, as a bounden duty from me ; and may you see a festival each year !

And I present unto you my most distinct grat illation, to the led among you, and to the leader ;

Cv *And I let you hear: Is it true zwhat ivc have heard? For there satisfies not save the ti ue discourse ;*

That your levies flew apart as rays, not dreading, verily, a future of reproach ;

And turned back, not mquing eulogium, in flight, without a charge and without mutual protection ;

Save ten ; and may God preserve alive the ten tvho mutually protected one another of the sons of Shem (Sam) and PI am (Ham) ;

And there ivas none present of the 'Emirs, save Shihdbu'd-D/n, of laudable standing;

And Nurud~Din and Bedr the one wished for—lions of battle in the day of collision ;

And their horsemen, up to a hundred and ten ; they being partly spearmen and in part archers ;

f. 20^b *What, then, will ye do when there shall conjoin the cohorts of the King in Yemen and in the North,*

And there shall glisten the banner of Mcs'ud among them as a gleaming meteor over the clouds of the ocean ?

There shall ye repent; and there will be no asylum, when the divine decree draws near at the time of death.

Now, if the advice be accepted of one who feels friendship—for verily, sincere advice is one of the customs of the generous ; Ye will come, submissive, unto a King, noble of soul, whose favours are effective ;

A youth, whose shout of admiration the sons of 'Eyyiib have quavered; a keen sword, by the passage of which the sharp sivor-d-point becomes notched;

And the affairs were made a 7iecklace 7into him when he shoived himself one morning 7ieitJier a dullard nor void of penetration ;

Saying on that occasion a unique saying, witty, poetical, beautiful in arrangement :

Give thou, then, the boiv to its shapcr, and leave it; for thou 6\ hast already deposited it in the hand of an archer ;

Who, zvith his judgment and sword, has npelted assault from them, and has stood tip in their kingdom zvith a 7iwst sufficient upstanding."

Then the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Muhammd son of 'Imam Mairnir 'Abdu'Uah son of Hamza son of Suleyman son of Hamza answered him, saying:

" Hast thou been rendered sleepless by the lightning that gleamed without 7ain, and thus hast not tasted the savour of sleep, To think of a meeting zvith or the parting from slender-zvaisted damsels, zv hose faces illumine the shade of the darkness?

May God guard the regions a)id their inhabitants ; and may the doivnpour of the clouds satiate their pastures !

And be not thou surprised at my remembrance ; for verily I have called to mind the alighting-places of the tribe of the nobles ;

But be surprised at the mention of the arrival of Hind; a letter which has come to us from an illustrious prince,

Their crowned descendant, zvhom the milch-camels of glory f. 21 suckled before the weaning,*

*And he consigned to it a gratulation, so that we lacked not
finger-tips that whispered a most glowing salutation ;
And he tells of the mutual attack of the horsemen in true words
that he speaks in his saying :*

*Namely, that our levies flew apart as rays, and turned back
without charging and without mutual protection,*

*Save ten, who raided without intelligence and then returned by
night like arrows ;*

*Although the eminent 'Emir was among them, 'Imddi/d-Din,
whose rank was praiseworthy.*

W *Verily, there have visited our house terrible parties, armed with
every Indian blade, keen and trenchant.*

*But still the merciful God kept him from us by an obstacle,
so that he became not present when the day of terror was
sultry.*

*But how dost thou account this saying sincere friendship, when
solid rocks have split through it ?*

*And then, O for the wonder ! Thou repel lest from our sanctuary,
but thou attributest us to the act of the vile I*

*But there is none, save us, to butt their rock, we sons of Hasan.
Then, withhold thou thy speech.*

*And, by the life of thy father, were they lions, they would frolic
youthfully to one of encounters in warfare."*

And the Sultan Mudrik son of Hatim son of Bishr son of Hatim sang, as from the mouths of the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, and of Nuru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, who together sent it to Egypt:

" Ask ye both, of her with the string of pearls and the aquiline nose at Usur, about the most trusty sword-cuts and spear-thrusts.

*And her who witnessed San'd\ Had it not been for its trial,
she would not have gone away in fright, or stayed in safety.*

f. 2i^h

*And already had the fair-skinned modest ones, out of dread of
captivity by our enemies, raised our worst suspicions.*

So when the two hosts mutually neared in the evening, the owls
 went forth therein from them, and the gazelles from us.
 And we went to the castle of Qulleysp² to grasp the goblets and
 to take supper with the boon companions -who were of us.
 And then the horsemen who offered us to sip the spear-heads,
 after that they had struck at us from this side and that.
 They flogged towards us with their whips in ignorance, but whoi i*
 we mutually knew each other, they flogged with them away
 from us.
 And then our custom. Do the swords miss us when they fall
 short ? By the time the enemies perish, ive come to an end.
 And when we wish, we trample dozen our foes ; and we harbour
 not buried enmity, nor spite.
 And may news from you never cease to gladden us, as your
 informant from us has rejoiced you in Egypt."

And when a knowledge of this event reached Melik Mes'ud
 and the sons of 'Eyyub in the countries of Egypt, Melik
 Mes'ud returned speedily to Yemen ; but no repose for him
 there became permanent. His entry into the fortress of Ta'izz
 took place on Monday, 27th Safer, 624 (about 20th February,
 1227). Me remained there the rest of Safer, the two months
 Rabi', the two months Jumada, and some days of Rejeb. He
 then proceeded to Jened.²²³ And when the 15th of Rejeb
 was come, Melik Mcs'ud fell suddenly upon the sons of Resul,
 seized Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy, Fakhru'd-Dfn 'Ebu-
 Bekr son of 'Aliyy, and Sherefu'd-Dm Musa son of 'Aliyy,
 whom he bound and cast into prison.

Thus saith the author of the 'Iqd :²²⁴ " And the fear of the
 sons of 'Eyyub for the principality of Yemen through the sons <||
 of Resul became vehement. And they dreaded no one of the
 Arabians, nor of the Ghuzz,²²⁵ with a dread like unto their 1, 22^a
 fear of them. And this, because of what they witnessed in
 them of valour, persistence, loftiness of aim, far-reaching fame,
 good administration, perfection of all noble qualities, possession
 of command over men, a building up of honour, and the gam

of eulogy. And for this reason there was completed by them against them that which set broken bones and made the adversary vanquished ; so the command of God was a fore-ordained providence."

It is even said that he seized Nuru'd-Dfn also, but that when they were all in chains he set him free the same day, giving him his liberty. For he had already made him very intimate, and for this cause had appointed him his lieutenant on the occasion of his former journey, as on that of the second, and had made him the 'Ata-Bek of his troops.

lie sent his brothers, hound, to 'Aden,^{22,5} despatching them subsequently by sea to the territories of Egypt under guard and in fetters.

Now Nuru'd-Dm possessed in an extreme degree intelligence, craft, munificence, kindness, elevation of character, good administration, and perfection of leadership. So Mes'ud placed on his neck the whole of his affairs. He then went up to Haqlu Yahsib²²⁷ and took possession of the country of the Bcnu Seyl^{22R} in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja, 624 (November, 1227).

ir He remained at the Haql about three months, and then returned to the fortress of Ta'izz, where he stayed a certain period, and afterwards resolved on a return to the territories of E^ypt. He made his preparations for this, and went down to the city of Zeb/d. He next set out thence *in* the direction of Syria *in* the first Rebf, 626 (February, 1229), according to Hatimiyy,²²⁹ but according to Jenediyy,²³⁰ 625 (1228).

22^b The cause of his return to the countries of Egypt was that his paternal uncle, Melik Mu'adhdham 'Isa²³¹ son of Melik 'Ad il 'Ebu Bekr son of 'Eyyub, had departed to the mercy of God, who be extolled, he being then sovereign of Damascus. So his son, the Sultan Melik Kamil,²³² wrote to him bidding him come to him, that he might give him Damascus. And he rejoiced with vehement joy ; so much so, that he set out on the journey, although sickness had already set in with him.

And he called for his 'Ata-Bek, Nuru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resiil, and said to him : " I have already decided

on the journey, and I have appointed thee my lieutenant in Yemen. Now, should I die, thou art more worthy of the principality of Yemen than my brothers ; for thou hast served me, and I have recognized in thee loyalty and devotion. And if I live, thou art as thou hast been ; beware, then, that thou leave not any one of my kin to enter Yemen, even though my son, Mclik Kdmil,²³³ should come unto thec folded up in a letter. And if he should be urgent towards thec, do thou inform me, that I and my paternal uncle 'Eshref²³⁴ may unite against him, to war with him and occupy him." if

Then said unto him Nuru'd-Din : " I fear that my brothers will oppose me." ²³¹ Hut Melik Mes'ud answered : " I will be answerable towards thec for the matter of them." So he bound them then ; though it has been said that he did not bind them until he commanded the troops to mount; for he feared the outbreak of something on their part, through the bias of the greater part of the soldiery to them.

'Ebu Mudhafifer Sibti son of Jewziyy²³⁶ has narrated in his book, "The Mirror of the Time" (Mir'atu'z-Zaman), that Melik Mes'ud prepared for his journey in very great state, such that no prince had ever given him a precedent for. Among the rest were 1,000 eunuchs, 500 cases of gorgeous stuffs and clothing, 300 loads of aloes wood yet fresh and of the finest ambergris, 400 slave-girls, of gems, pearls, and precious stones an untold store, 70,000 pieces of Chinese brocade wrought with gold, and of works of art what cannot be limited as to number. So much so that, as was said, the ships that were insufficient for the whole were seventy in number.

This so happened because he had it proclaimed in the seaports: " Whoever wishes to travel to the lands of Egypt, let him travel with Melik Mes'ud," some time before his departure. Then the merchants came forward from all quarters f. 23 with every kind of merchandise and commodities. And he came to them in the frontier city of 'Aden. There he said to them : " Sell ye unto me the commodities ye have with you, so that ye may be freed from the tithes." So they sold unto

him, and he received them from them, and wrote in their favour to Yemen for the values thereof, giving them drafts upon every district. So they cried out: "Alas! Ruin!" But he took no notice of them, and the greater part of them never realized one tittle therefrom.

The son of Jewziyy has given the numbers of the different sorts with which he journeyed, and has magnified them until the hearer can scarcely give credit thereto. For this reason I have omitted mention of them. Says he : " He was a tyrant, vehement in injustice ; his conduct towards the subjects was bad, and he was a great shedder of blood; so much so that it was said of him that he had put to death in Yemen 800 Sherifs, descendants of Hasan and Huseyn ('Ewladu'l-Hasaneyn)." Such is his narrative in "The Mirror of the Time"; and on him lies the onus of proof.²³⁷

Thus says 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrcjite : " This is a thing which man's mind will not admit, and which is not confirmed by report. Furthermore, there are not to be found in all Yemen 100 males of the notables of the Sherifs ; and no one learned in history in Yemen has related this, or anything resembling it. But God knows best."

1°

Now when Melik Mes'ud journeyed from Yemen, as we have related, he arrived at Mekka the Venerated, his sickness having become serious. So he remained in Mekka a certain number of days until he expired there on Monday, 14th Jumad al i, 626 (about 15th April, 1228). Jenediyy has said: "He died poisoned in Mekka²³⁸ in Rjcb, or, as has been asserted, in Sha'ban, 625 (June or July, 1227)." The son of 'Abdu'l-Mejfd²³⁹ has stated : " Melik Mes'ud died in the first Rebi, 626 (February, 1228)"; and so affirms the Sherif 'Idris.²⁴⁰ Hatimiyy relates: "And he gave it as his testament that his horses should not have their manes and tails plucked out, or their saddles reversed for him ; also, that he should be buried at Mekka among the strangers." He further relates : "And it is reported that he begged the gift of two pieces of stuff from one of the people to be used as his grave-clothes/"

And his age on the day he died was 27 years. But God knows best.

And he carried *off* with him the whole of the produce of the principality of Yemen, both its silver and its gold, its rare jewels, its curiosities, its young male and female slaves. So his slave, the 'Emir Husamu'd-Din Lu'lu', went on, with the children of his lord, his dependents, his property, his suite, and the whole of his retinue to Egypt. And he had appointed in San'a' the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zckeni, n and made his lieutenant in the whole of Yemen the 'Em/r Nuru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resiil, for its level parts and its steeps, for its land and its sea. And this was what God, who be extolled, had willed and preordained by the manifestation of the word of the Resuliyy kingdom,²¹¹ by the making possible its expansion, by the spreading of the wing of its justice, by the furtherance of its might, by the curtailment of the shadow of the 'Eyyubite²¹² domination, and by the disappearance of its rule.

f.24^a

CHAPTER II.

On the Rise of the Mansuriyy ²⁴³ *Sovereignty, and its causes.*

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejitc: We have already narrated in the preceding chapter what had been the decree and preordination of God as to the selection by Mclik Mes'iid of our Lord and Master Melik Mansur (Nuru'd-Din) 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul as his lieutenant over the whole of Yemen, its levels and its steepes, its land and its sea, as also his isolating him in the command to the exclusion of all the other Egyptian 'Emirs,²⁴⁴ his having cleared Yemen of the remainder of the sons of his mother,²⁴⁵ and also what God had made innate in him as to uprightness of outward act and straightforwardness of inward propensity, as to the love of the people towards him, and as to their submission to his command, willingly or by constraint.

i^y And together with all this, he was prudent, enterprising,
f. 24^b quick in action, an able administrator, penetrating in judgment, wise, placid. And there took place in Yemen, as to his approaching assumption of sovereignty, certain presages and portents.²⁴⁶ Among these is what is related of him, that he said: "On a certain night I had become anxious on account of an occurrence that had happened to me; and when *I had taken my place on my couch, and something like a watch of the night had elapsed, I heard a buzzing sound in the air, and I lifted up my head, when lo! an 'Ifrt,²⁴⁷ fleeing from the flame until he cast himself down by my side, panting; and, from his bulk, he was as it were an oil-press. So I arose from my couch, and I took the utensil of water and poured

it into his mouth. And when he had become tranquil, and his terror had left him, he said :

" Do thou, O 'Ebu'l-Khattab,²⁴⁸ mediate and give direction to the sovereignty from 'Aden to 'Aydhab.²¹⁹

" And then he went away from me."

And it is related that three groups of righteous men came to him; and the first said : " Peace be upon thee, O 'Ata-Bek."

And he answered them: " He is my brother; and peace be upon you, and the mercy of God." Then the second spoke : 'Thou art the 'Ata-Bek and more than that." To which he replied : " And what besides that?" Then the third said : " Sultan of Yemen ; and princes thereof will be of thy progeny 1 unto the end of time."²⁵⁰

The author of the Siretu'l-Mudhafferiyya²⁵¹ has said : The righteous Shcykh Suleyman son of Mansiir son of Jureyba informed me, saying : " When Melik Mes'ud came from the countries of Egypt, and was passing along the road of the vale of Oahriyya,²⁵² there were on the upper border of the roadway two Sheykhs of the holy elders, one of whom was Mughith and the other Hedes Then said the one to the other : ' Seest thou what I see?' And his companion asked: 'What seest thou?' So he answered : ' I see a person, such that, when he goes on, all the soldiery go on with him ; and when he stops, all the soldiery stop also.' Then said his companion : ' Maybe it is Melik Mes'ud.' But the other rejoined : ' Nay ; rather it is Melik Mansiir 'Umcir son of 'Aliyy son of Resul ; and the sovereignty will be with his posterity to the end of time.'" f. 25³
The author of the Siret adds : " I heard this narrative verbatim from my grandfather, on whom be God's mercy."

It is also related that a man was upon Mount Mcwsim, which is a small isolated mountain in the vale of 'Islīqiyya, one of the borders of the Siham district;²⁵³ and he was hoeing a cotton-plant which belonged to him there, it being during the night; when lo! Melik Mes'ud came on his way in company of his n soldiery and his military music. So the man heard the uproar of the music and the soldiery, upon which he sat down

astonished. Then he heard a speaker say from a spot near to the mountain : " Go thou forward, like the arrow impelled by the bowstring ; there is naught for him of his kingdom, save to travel; alas! in the days there are other turns."

Then he said : " So I went towards the site of the voice, but I saw nothing and found no one ; so I knew it came from the genii,²⁵⁴ and I also knew that the sovereignty of Melik Mes'iid was for someone else."

It is also recounted that the righteous Sheykh Muhammed son of 'Ebii Kehr, the Hakemite, lord of 'Awaja,²⁵⁵ saw the banner of Melik Mes'iid on the clay of his arrival from Egypt; on which he said : "This is the last banner that will come from Egypt to Yemen."

SECTION.

And when Melik Mes'iid died on the date above specified, and information of his decease reached Yemen, Sultan Nuru'd-Din took universal steps, and conceived in his secret thoughts independent sovereignty, though he outwardly showed himself the lieutenant of Melik Mes'iid, making no alteration in the coinage or in the public prayer for the sovereign.²⁰⁶ He set himself to appoint over the forts and towns those with whom
v he felt satisfied and in whom he had confidence, removing those from whom he feared opposition. From whomsoever disobedience or opposition was openly displayed, he took steps to put him to death or to take him prisoner.

Now Sultan Nuru'd-Din was a man of decision and prudence, munificent, kind, quick in action. He was also fond of fighting,
f. 25^b not wearying of battle. And furthermore, he was possessed of sense and cunning. He was then residing in Zebid, acting as governor of the Low Countries.²³⁷ He established his bases, and then journeyed towards Ta'izz in Shewwal, 626 (August, 1229).

He pitched against the fortress of Ta'izz. He blockaded it straitly, and pinched the inhabitants until he had reduced them to extremities; so much so, that it is said they had to pay for wheat alone thirty thousand royal ducats.

In the year A.TI. 62J (A.D. 1229-30) he received possession of the fort of Ta'ker,²⁵⁸ the fort of Khadcd,^{2TM} the city of San'a' and its dependencies. This he gave as a fief to his nephew 'Escdu'd-Dfn Muhammed son of the 'Emir Bcdru'd-Dm Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. Upon which the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zekera went up to the fort of Birash^{2co} out of fear of Melik Mansur.

In the year A.D. 628 (A.D. 1230-1) he received possession of the fort of Ilabb and of Bcyt-Tzz.²⁶¹ He also pitched against the fuilrcsh of IVizz a second time, capturing it by a peaceful vi surrender at the handb of the judge Melon. And he married Bintu Hawza,²⁶² whose governor was the eunuch Nidhamu'd-Din Mukhtass,,²⁶³ and he was a man of intelligence, wise, and perfect in his service to those of the sovereign family.

He then went up to San'a', and pitched against Birash, in which was the 'Emir Nejmu'd Din 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zekera, in Ramadan, 628 (July, 1231). At about this time there came to him the Shen'fs to the fortress of Dhemermer. These were the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din Yahya son of Hamza, with his children, the 'Emir Shcmsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the Tmam, with all his bretlnen, and Wehhas son of 'Ebu Oasim. So they mutually made oaths of amity and reciprocal support, making between them a general peace. And they said to him: "O our lord Nuru'd-Din, do thou assume the .sovereignty in Yemen, and we will serve thee; we will make an oath of fealty to thee to the effect that the sons of 'Eyyiib shall not enter Yemen." ²⁶⁴ So they took the oath of fealty to that effect; and they recom- f. 25a mended to the Sultan the repair of the fort of Bhky¹⁵ while Nuru'd-Dm recommended to them the repair of the forlress of Mida'²⁶⁶ Thus was peace concluded between them in the most fiiendly manner, and no hostilities occurred between them until the days of the Tmam 'Ahmed son of Iluscyn in the year A.D. 646 (A.D. 1248), save once only, the cause of which I shall relate in its proper place in the book.

And when the conclusion of peace was arranged, the Sultan vr Nuru'd-Din gratified them with considerable sums of money

and with sumptuous robes of honour, confirming them in their several countries, And when they dispersed in consequence of the peace and friendly relations, the position of the 'Emir Nejmu'd Din 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zekera became embarrassed, and he knew that his power of resistance had failed. So he wrote to the Sultan Nuru'd-Din in the sense of a pacification. Then the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Dm went down from the fort to present himself to the Sultan ; and he walked on foot in his presence, bearing on his shoulder the horse-cloth. So the Sultan presented him with a magnificent dress of honour, made him large gifts, contracted his own daughter to him in marriage, and went down to Yemen in his company. The 'Emir 'Escdu'd Din Muhammed son of I.Iasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul went down also in his company. And when the Sultan was settled down in the house of his kingdom, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din returned to San'a'.

In the year A.D. 629 (A.D. 1230-1) the Sultan Nuru'd-Din went up to San'a' a second time and received possession of the forts of Bukur,²⁶⁷ Kewkeban, and Birash. He then sent to Mekka the Ilonouicd an 'Emir named 'Ibnu 'Aydan, together with the Shcrif Rajih son of Qatada; and in their company he forwaidd a large amount of treasure. This was the first military force that he fitted out and despatched to Hijaz.²⁶⁸ They pitched their camp in the wide watercourse 'Ebtah,⁸⁶⁹ and besieged the 'Emir who was in Mekka on the part of Melik Kamil.²⁷⁰ His name was Tugh-Tekfn,²⁷¹ and he had with him 200 horsemen. And Tugh-Tekfn distributed among the people of Mekka a considerable sum of money, got them to swear fealty, and put his trust in them. But the Shcrif Rajih²⁷² entered into correspondence with them, calling to their minds the kindness of the Sultan Nuru'd-Din in the days when he was 'Emir over Mekka on the part of Melik Mcs'ud, this government of the Sultan Nuru'd-Din in Mekka having been in the year A.H 617 (A.D. 1220-1), at which time the birth of the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer occurred at Mekka the Honoured.

So when the Sherif cnteied into correspondence with them,

as has been mentioned, their chief men inclined to the military force of the heaven-assisted Sultan. Tugh-Tekin perceived this, took the alarm for his own safety, and went forth in flight to Yenbu'²⁷³ together with his suite. Now there was in Yenbu' a garrison for Melik Kamil, and an armoury, and stores. So they remained there, and sent a messenger to Melik Kamil in Egypt, giving him information of the arrival of the troops of the lord of Yemen, and of what had taken place on the part of the inhabitants of Mekka.

Then Melik Kamil equipped a large force, and placed in v,^a command over them the 'Emir Eakhru'd-Din son of the Sheykh of Sheykh. And he sent to the Sherif Sinja, 'Emir of Medina,²⁷⁴ and to the ShrriT 'Ebu Sa'd,²⁷⁵ a message that they should be t- *7^b with him. And they were in the service of Melik Kamil. So they arrived at Mekka, and they besieged 'Ibnu 'Aydan with the Sherif Rajih. They fought with them; 'Ibnu 'Aydan was killed, the people of Mekka were routed, and a great number of them slain.

Now Tugh-Tekin manifested his hate towards them, and for three days gave up Mekka to pillage, thus inspiring an extreme dread among its inhabitants. When Melik Kamil received intelligence of what he had thus done, he was wroth with him, dismissed him from his office, recalled him to Egypt, and sent to Mekka a governor other than he, who was named Tbnu Mahalliyy,²⁷⁶ and who arrived at Mekka in the year A.H. 630 (A.D. 1232-3).

And in this same year A.H. 630 did the Sultan Nuru'd-Din command money to be coined in his name, and he also ordered the preachers to offer public prayer for him in every region of Yemen.²⁷⁷ Unto this it was that Harith the Ra'ish had alluded in his saying, as aforementioned, where he has it:

" And his divinely-assisted banner ivill appear among tJiem according to the numeral letters for 630 (J ^ A.H.)."

And this we have already narrated in the first chapter. And (f. 28^a) in God is success. (f. 28^b)

Then in the year A.H. 631 (A.D. 1233-4) Sultan NuriVd-Din sent a large treasure to the Sherif Rajih son of Qatdda, together with an imposing military force. So the Sherif Rajih moved forward with the Mansurian forces, and they expelled the Egyptian troops from Mekka.²⁷⁸ In that year, too, Sultan Nuru'd-Din despatched a considerable offering to the Khalifa at Baghdad, the Khalifa at that time being Mustansir son of Dhahir²⁷⁹ the 'Abbasidc, who was the father of Musta'sim bi-'Ildh. He requested from him the diploma of sovereignty, his appointment being that of a lieutenant, as is the ordinary practice of princes. The answer came back saying: "The diploma will reach thee by the eve of the day of sacrifices." So he set out from Yemen in the intention of performing the pilgrimage of Mekka; and he accomplished the pilgrimage upon blood-camels, a commodious pilgrimage. But the Sherif Rajih son of Qatada fled from him, and did not perform the pilgrimage in his company. So he was grieved at heart. But when he had completed the rite and returned to Yemen, the Sherif went back to Mekka.²⁸⁰

Now the Khalifa had sent the diploma and the commission to him in charge of the pilgrim-caravan from 'Iraq. The pilgrim-caravan of 'Iraq reached the half of the journey, when the Arabians barred their onward passage and filled in all the watering-places. So the pilgrims were detained on the road until the time of the pilgrimage was gone by; they therefore returned to Baghdad, and not one of them joined the pilgrimage that year.²⁸¹

In the year A.II. 632 (A.D. 1234-5) the curtain of the Cubical House²⁸² came from Baghdad, and with it a messenger from the Khalifa Mustansir to the Sultan Nuru'd-Din. So he suspended the curtain²⁸³ and entered Yemen to the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, to whom he conveyed the information that the diploma and the commission²⁸⁴ would reach him by sea through the road of Basra. And accordingly the diploma and the commission of lieutenantancy reached him that year. The envoy of the Khalifa to the Sultan Nuru'd-Din with the diploma and the commission

was a personage named Ma'ali ; and the Sultan Nuru'd-Din was at that time in Jened. So the envoy mounted the pulpit²⁸⁵ and said ; " O Nuru'd-Din, verily the mighty one pronounces a greeting unto thee, and says : 'I have bestowed Yemen upon thee as an alms, and I have set thee over it.'" He then clothed him with the sacred Khah'fian robe of honour on the pulpit. f. 30*

And in this same year A.H. 632 Sultan Nuru'd-Dm sent to Mekka the Honoured lamps of gold and of silver²⁸⁶ for the venerated Cubical House. He also sent a large treasure by the hand of 'Ibnu'l-Basriyy to the Sherif Rajih son of Qatada,²⁸⁷ and gave orders for raising a force of cavalry and infantry, conveying also notice that troops were on their way to Mekka from Egypt. v*

Then, when 'Ibnu'l-Basriyy reached Mekka and had hung up the lamp.s, those Egyptian forces arrived at Mekka also before the Shenf had enlisted a single man. So the Sherif Rajih with 'Ibnu'l-Basriyy set out for Yemen. The Egyptian force was of 500 horsemen under several commanders, the first bearing the name of 'The solitary wild beast' (Wahdu's-Scbu') ; the second, *The Crossbow-man' ('el-Bunduqiyy); the third, 'Ibnu 'Ebi Zekera ; the fourth, Tbnu Bertas ; and the fifth, the Commander-in-Chief, an'Emfr who was named Gabriel (Jebre'il). So they entered Mekka and remained there.

In the year A.D. 633 (A D. 1235-6) the Sultan Niiru'd-Dm equipped a force from Yemen, setting over them the 'Emfr Shihabu'd-Dm son of 'Aydan. He sent also an amount of treasure to the Shenf Rajih son of Qatada, commanding him to enrol troops, which he did. So when they had come near to Mekka, the Egyptian force sallied forth against them. And they joined battle in a locality named Kharifeyn,²⁸⁸ situated between Mekka and Sirreyn.²⁸⁹ The Arabians were routed, and the 'Emir Shihabu'd-Din son of 'Aydan was taken prisoner, He was put in bonds by the 'Emir Gabriel, and sent to Egypt. VA (f. 30^b)

In the year A.D. 634 (A.D. 1236-7) the Saltan Nuru'd-Din received possession of the castles of Hajja and Mikhlafa,²⁹⁰ f. 31*
f. 31b

together with their districts. The cause thereof was that the 'Emir Taju'd-Din Muhammed son of the 'Emfr 'Imadu'd-Dfn Yahya son of Hamza son of Suleyman son of Hamza son of 'Aliyy son of Hamza went down to the Sultan Nuru'd-Dm, who received him with honour and kindness, giving him the Mikhla²⁹¹ as a fief, so that he went up to his country rejoiced. Hut the lust of the flesh within him suggested to him to seize the fortress of Kewkeban²⁹² So he dealt deceitfully in the matter ; partzans of his entered the fortress, and there wanted f. 32¹ but little for him to take it. But there was a fair garrison in the place, of horse and foot. And it was their practice in Kewkeban that they should for ever leave, without ceasing, ten horsemen in full panoply and fifty footmen under arms So when the partizans of the Shen'f went up to the fortress, the garrison, horsemen, as well as what footmen were with them, sallied forth against them and slew of them a goodly number. But the greater part cast themselves helter-skelter down the declivity.

Now the 'Emir Yahya son of Hamza had built the fort of Menabir;²⁹³ and it was in the territory of the Sultan adjoining ^{v^} the lowlands and overlooking Mahahb²⁹¹ and Mehjem.^{29n>} So when the Sultan was informed of what the Shen'f had done, as also his son Muhammed (son of Yahya) son of Hamza, lie was wroth thereat, with great indignation.

There was with the Sultan at that time the 'Emir Muhammed son of Hatim the 'Abbaside, lord of the castle of 'Azzdn²⁹⁶ of the Masani'.⁸⁸⁷ He was much respected and honoured by the Sultan. And when he perceived the preoccupation of the Sultan for gaining possession of the fort of Menabir, he said to the Sultan : " I will give thee the castle of 'Azzan, and T know that the Shen'f Yahya son of Hamza desires to possess it, and would deliver up Menabir." Then the Sultan replied : " And I will add ten thousand ducats."

So the Sultan sent his wezir, who was the Sheykh Naji son of 'Es'ad, to the Shen'f Yahya son of Hamza, and made him that offer, which he did not accept. He made the remark :

" I have already become joint owner of Mehjem with you." So the wezfr returned without arranging anything. Upon this the anger of the Sultan was increased, and he wrote to the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam Mansiir 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza, quoting the proverbial distich of the poet of old ^{2y8}:

" *When there is naught else to ride upon save the iron heads of spears, there is no choice for him who is constrained, save to ride tJiereon*"

Now the 'Emir Shcmsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam was vexed in mind at his paternal uncle the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din Yahya son of Hamza for hLs infringement of the engagements and violation of the peace that had been undertaken at Dhemermer ; but it was not in his power to quit his paternal uncle.

A*

f- 3^{2b}

So the Sultan went forth from the city of Zebi'd, and there advanced to meet him the 'Emfr Nejmu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zekra ; there also met him the Shcykhs, sons of Batm, and others. Then the Sultan enrolled troops and expended treasures, sacrificing riches. And the money-bags were poured out in his presence with an effusion similar to the emptying out of sacks of corn. Then he journeyed towards I.Iajja and Mikhkifa with sixty thousand footmen, and overran both Hajj.i and Mikhlafa in a single day, by a fortunite chance that had never occurred to anyone before him, and has never happened since. The result of these actions upon Yahya son of Hamza was the capture of the fort of Menabi'r and of some castles, the whole of which had but little value.

The Sultan Nuru'd-Din subsequently captured the whole of that part of the upper country that he had recognized as theirs by the treaty. And these arc: liewn,^{29y} 'Esndd, Hash, Hand, and Matira.³⁰⁰

And when the Sultan returned from his expedition, successful and victorious, there came to him the 'Emir Ja'fer son of 'Ebu Hashim, and the Sheykh Husamu'd-Din Hatim son of 'Aliyy the Jenedite, on the part of the Sherifs, who made peace with

him against the countries he had already conquered, without any contesting his right to them. So he returned to the low country.

The Sultan Nuru'd-Dm, on starting for his expedition against Hajja and Mikhlaifa, had commanded the 'Emfr 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan to set out to prevent the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Abdu'llah son of Ilamza, if he should attempt to assist his paternal uncle. So the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din set out and pitched in Jenab.^{TM1} And the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din was in Tarf.³⁰² So there was fought the battle of Qarin,³⁰³ which is one of those great days that have become celebrated.

And when the Sultan Nuru'd-Din had returned from his campaign to Mikhlaifa, the learned Jemalu'd-Dm Muhammed son of Himyer sang :

f. 33^a " *Thou wast congratulated ivith victory whcti thou earnest in an uproar, shaded over zvith Rudcyniyya^m and other spcar-shafts ;*

And with welcome^ although the bright stars A returns and Spica Virginis were hidden, and Orion was 7iot hidden.

Thou raidedst Mubyin³⁰⁵ zvhen its faucial bags protruded, and zvhen in Ruleyniyy^m there were tangled masses of A rabians.

But to-day in Qilhdh³⁰⁷ there brays not a male camel; and the wolf if the sheep butt him, springs not."

But it is a long poem.

^Ar After that, verily the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din Yahya son of Ilamza and his children acknowledged their mistake and offered their excuses to our lord the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, who restored to them Hajja and Mikhlaifa, with their castles ; such being the habits of princes, who take possession by force and restore in forgiveness.

And in the year A.H. 635 (A.D. 1237-8) the Sultan set out in person in the intention of going to Mekka the Honoured with

a thousand horsemen. And he made a general promise for every military man who should come over to him of the Egyptians resident in Mekka of a thousand ducats, a charger, and a dress. So many of the military inclined to him. He then gave orders to the Shcrif Rajih son of Qatada, who, in consequence, met him on the road ; upon whom he conferred the kettledrums³⁰⁸ and the big-drums, and from among whose followers he took into his service 300 horsemen. And he accompanied him in his march by the sea-coast. Then he advanced towards Mekka.

So when the 'Emir Gabriel ascertained the arrival of Melik Mansiir in person, and his spies brought him intelligence of the truth of this, while the Shcrif Rajih had approached near to him, he burnt all that was in his possession of the stores, of the upholstery, and of the baggage, so setting out towards the territories of Egypt. The Sultan was then at Sirrcyn, and knew not of these events until there reached him a courier from the Sherif, who said . " Good news, O thou whom the 'Emir Gabriel and his associates may not defeat." The Sultan said unto him: "From whence art thou?" lie answered: "From Mekka." Said he: "And when didst thou set out?" And he said: "Yesterday afternoon." The Sultan thought this unlikely, and therefore said : "What is the token thereof?" Then he said : " This letter from the Shcrif Rajih." And the Sultan marvelled exceedingly at his journey, and ordeied the 'Emirs and slave-guards to cast upon the coutier of glad tidings whatever they had upon them. So they cast upon him thereof what weighed him down.³⁰⁹ Then the Sultan journeyed immediately to Mekka and entered it as on the lesser pilgrimage³¹⁰ in Rejeb, 635 (February, 1238).

A
f. 33^h

The author of the 'Iqd has said :

"One in whom I place confidence has informed me that our lord the Sultan Nuru'd-Dm entered Mekka on the lesser pilgrimage in the course of eight different years, every occasion being at a season other than the days of the great pilgrimage."

Now when the 'Emir Gabriel reached Medina, the city of

the Apostle,³¹¹ on whom be the salutation of God and His greeting, news reached him of the death of the Sultan Melik K&mil Muhammed son of 'Ebu Bekr son of 'Eyyub,³¹⁸ lord of the Egyptian territories. So he felt a regret with all the troops that were with him that they had not gone over to the side of Melik Mansur. The 'Emir Gabriel was the bravest of the 'Emirs of Egypt.

And when the Sultan Nuru'd-Din entered Mekka he distributed to the troops and expended in alms large sums of money. And he placed as a garrison in Mekka 150 horsemen, over whom he set 'Ibnu't-Wel/diyy and 'Ibnu't-Ta'izziyy, who thercote abode in Mekka. And on this event the erudite Jemalu'd-Din Muhammed son of Himyer has sung, on whom be God's mercy :

" *The neighbours of Nejd^{zi%} had not suffered loss by being far
azvay, if they had met, instead of me, with what I have
encomitcred ;*

*And whoever declared my blood lawfully sliedable by the people
of the double rancours, no bloodwit is suable from them for
it, nor the lex talionis applicable!*"

And thereon he has also sung :

" *Say thou to the sleek she-camels: ⁱ Haste ye, and amble ye, and
enter ye, like noble she-camels, on to the barren waste on
which I enter:*

*Relate ye the tale about Mansur, about what his levies did, and
about tlie people who ivcre envious!*

*I met them with cohorts beyond numbering, they likewise being
cohorts ivithout number.*

*Then fear made their hands tremble, and their feet, until the sky
seemed to them other than they were used to.*

*They turned their backs ; for he who met them was a lion,—
this lion was used to dominate in a waste.*

*Who will blame an 'Emir who flees from a Prince ? That is
not as is this, and the little finger is not like the upper
arm!*"

And in the year A.TI. 636 (A.D. 1238-9) the Sultan Niiru'd-Din returned from Mekka to Yemen. 'Ibnu'l-Welidiyy and 'Ibnu't-Ta'izziyy remained at Mekka, as we have mentioned, until the said year came to an end. But God knows best. A0
f. 34^b

And in the year A.IT. 637 (A.D. 1239-40) the 'Emir Sinja, lord of Medina, came to Mekka the Honoured with a thousand horsemen. So the troops of Sultan Nuru'd-Din went forth from Mekka, evacuating it for him/⁵¹⁴

And in this same year the Sultan Nuru'd-Din received possession of the castle of Kemi'm³¹⁵; and he went up to San'a' a second time, where there came to him the tidings of the violent death of the 'Emir Ncjmu'd-Dm 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu Zekera, and also news of the discomfiture of the troops at Mekka.

The author of the "String of Tears of Great Price"³¹⁶ has said : " On one whom I rely, and an eye-witness of the circumstance, told me, ' I never saw anyone firmer of heart or more composed in countenance than the Sultan Nuru'd-Din when there came before him the two discomfited, defeated bodies of soldiery. He neither hurried nor delayed in informing himself of their rout, and in re-adjusting their equipment with horses, arms, clothing, and gifts of money, until he had restored them to a better condition than they were in before, and more complete in outer integuments.'" f. 35^a

Then the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, on whom be God's mercy, AI despatched 'Ibnu'l-Basriyy and the Sherif Rajih to Mekka with an imposing array. So when the Sherif Sinja and his associates heard of them, they went forth from Mekka in flight, Sinja going on to Egypt, the Sultan of which at that time was Melik Salih Nejmu'd-Dfn 'Eyyiib son of Mclik Kamil³¹⁷ He equipped with him a force of soldiery, among whom were 'Alemu'd-Dfn the Greater and 'Alemu'd-Din the Less.

And in the year A.H. 638 (A.D. 1240-1) this Egyptian force reached Mekka the Honoured, which they took possession of, and where they performed the pilgrimage with the people.

And in this year there expired the righteous jurist 'Ebu f 38⁶

'Abdi'llah the Me'ribite, of whom it is related that he performed his worship of the Friday in Dhu Jibla,³¹⁸ after which he went forth from the congregational mosque to go home, his house being in Dhii Bujdan,³¹⁹ localities held in mortmain by the said mosque. So when he was on his way, there met him a man riding on a handsome she-mule, and with him a number of slave attendants. He took him to be the wezfr, or a judge, or one of the grandees in the service of the state. The Sultan Nuru'd-Din was at that time in the castle of 'IJman.³²⁰ So the jurist asked him about the rider on the mule at the time when he met him, and it was told to him : " This is a physician, a Jew, who serves the Sultan in that capacity." On this the jurist darted at him, pulled him off the mule on which he was, threw him down on the ground, took off his shoe, and struck him therewith a severe and painful blow, saying to him : " O thou foe of God and foe of His apostle,³²¹ verily thou hast overstepped thy due manner and hast transgressed that which the law of God has made incumbent; therefore it is necessary to humiliate thee." He then left him, having taken it well out of him. So the Jew got up, and went back to the gate of the Sultan begging for succour; and his turban had been torn. Then it was said to him: "Who is thy adversary?" And he said: "The jurist Muhammed the Me'ribite." So our lord the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, on whom be God's mercy, sent a messenger to enquire into the adventure. And when the messenger was come, the jurist said to him : " Present thou my greeting to our lord the Sultan, and cause thou him to know that it is not lawful for him to let the Jews ride mules with riding-saddles, and that it is not lawful for them to set themselves up as chief men over Muslims; whenever they do so, they have forsworn their right to the amnesty of 'Islam over them." Then the messenger returned with this answer to the Sultan from the juiist, as the reason. And when the Sultan heard that, he said to the Jew: " Go thou with the messenger to the jurist, that he may let thee know that which is incumbent on thee by the divine law, so that thou mayest do it." He then said to the messenger : " Say thou to

AV

f. 36*

AA

the jurist, 'The Sultan greets thee; and it is incumbent that thou cause this Jew to know what is incumbent on him by the divine law, and that when he transgresses this he becomes clear of the amnesty.'" And the jurist said to him : "So-and-so is incumbent on thee; and do thou not any act save that which is so-and-so ; and when thou transgressest, chastisement becomes incumbent towards thee, thy blood becoming lawfully shedable." Then the Jew departed, and the messenger returned to the Sultan, informing him of what had been done in the matter. So he said to him: "See thou to thyself; if thou transgress that which the jurist has ordained unto thee, thou wilt be killed, and no one can advantage thee ; for this, verily, *• 3⁶" is the ordinance of God and the divine law of Mis apostle, on whom be God's salutation and greeting." Then the Jew went away to his home. The jurist, too, ceased not to teach in the above-mentioned mosque until he died on the 8th Ramadan, 638 (about March, 1241).

In the year ATI. 639 (A.D. 1241-2) the Sultan Nuru'd-Din made himself master of the forts of Yumeyn³²² and the Shewahid.³²³ He also put to death 'Ammar son of the Shcybdnite.³²⁴ Now 'Ammar was loyal, but trusted in his castles. And the erudite Muhammed son of Hirnycr, the renowned poet, went on a mission to him, and remained at the gate of his mansion a considerable portion of the day; but he did not permit him to enter. So he wrote unto him on a slip of paper, A? in which he sang :

" *O gate that thou art, may God set thee to rights ! A man of eloquence, xvhom travel, fatigue, and sleeplessness have-jaded,*

Has arrived in the land of Khaivldn™ and has found it like the tragacanth bush, having neither a shade nor fruit."

And when he became aware of his slip of paper, he engrossed on its back a writing, that said :

" *Nay, but rather like the rain-cloud, in which is both shade and fruit r*

He then gave him leave to enter, showed him honour and kindness, so that he stayed with him several days. He then departed from him, when there met him a band of -the slaves of 'Ammar, who despoiled him, taking whatever he had. lie felt suspicious of 'Ammar, and the thought arose in his mind that it was he who had commanded them to do so. He then presented himself before the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, and recited before him at a drinking-party :

" *Pillions and saddles have not rejoiced my heart; nor have mile-stones and footmarks made me sad.*

I do 7iot ask the people of Nejd to go to Nejd, nor do I beg the inhabitants of low-lying districts to go to a Jiollow.

The ivolf howls when a lion is not in his vicinity, and the onager neighs when he meets not the hunter.

I was pleased with Yemen the verdant when it became beaming for the son of Kesul; and thence is there no sadness.

And in it calamities were remedies, and not o?ie individual remained of the sons of the untrimmed woman.

But there was left one single excrescence with zvliich it could be reproached; and fire is easy to be ridden, not shame.

And if I have said, ' There is left no Sultan save 'timerI they have said, ' Nay, for there remains the Sultan 'Awmdr.'

Or if I have said, ' There is no castle save the castle of Dumluwa! ³²⁶ they have replied, ' Birdsh, Yumeyn, are the castle and the mansion.'

*Or did I say, 'How excellent is the tithe of fuwwa Z³²⁷ they retorted, ' And is there no tithe to Dhubhdn ? *³²⁸*

Then accept an oath, and receive not an attempt at a futile excuse ; for the dog, when alone with a bone, is a tyrant.

Two Sultans in otic country have never been in agreement; for, can one keen stvord enter the sheath with another trenchant steel ?

I had scarcely disappeared when he cast his eye on Dumluwa, and began to recite poetry, the goblets going round.

And' IbmCl-Mahailiyy™ is his tittle right haud™ in a figJit ; the two are allies ; each to each, as a big drum and a fife.

O my lord, account him not as mean; for 'Ibnu Muljem³³¹ became tJie assailant of a Hayder^{v>%}; and a traitor is a traitor.

Evil is the tent under the rug ofwJiich is a dwarfwoman ; and the dam is the worst place of ambush when undermined by rats."

And in this year A.H. 639 (A.D. 1241-2) Sultan Nuru'd-Din sent a numerous force to Mekka the Honoured with the Sherif f. 37* 'Aliyy son of Qatada.³³³ And when the troops that were in Mekka of the Egyptians knew of it, they wrote to the lord of Egypt asking" him for reinforcements. So lie sent unto them the 'Emir Mubanzu'd-Dm 'Aliyy bun of TTuseyn son of Beitas, with 'Jbnu'l-Turkumaniyy and 150 horsemen.

And when the Sherif 'Aliyy son of Qatada became aware of ^ 1 thib and of their arrival, he remained at Sirreyn, and sent to Sultan Nuru'd-Din, informing him of the aspect of affairs. So the Sultan Nuru'd-Din made himself ready and set out in person for Mekka with a mighty host and a well-stocked treasury, as also a firm resolve. Then, when the men of Egypt got intelligence of his advance, they turned their backs in flight, laying in ruins the Government House in Mekka, together with all it contained, furniture and arms.

And the Sultan Nuru'd-Din entered Mekka, observing there the rite of the fast in the month of Ramadan³¹⁴ of the said year 639 (May, 1240). Then the 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Huseyn, with a number of his paternal cousins and comrades, came and joined, offering to take service with the Sultan. So the Sultan distributed largesse to the whole of them, with dresses of honour.³³⁵

Then the Sultan Nuru'd-Din sent to the Sherif, lord of Yenbu', and when he came to him, received him with honour, made him gifts, took him into his service, bought the fortress of Yenbu*, and gave orders for its demolition, so that there should exist no stronghold for the Egyptians.³³⁰ The Sultan Nuru'd-Din then abolished in Mekka all customs dues, all land

taxes, and all illegal vexations. He wrote out a broadsheet to this effect, which was placed in front of the Black Stone.⁸⁸⁷ He also stationed in garrison in Mekka proper the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din the Flayer, and 'Ibnu Firuz, placing the Sherif 'Ebu Sa'd over the valley.³³⁸

f. 38^a And in the year A.H. 640 (A.D. 1242-3) the Sultan Nuru'd-Din set out from Mekka to Yemen. In it also there died the Khalifa Mustansir, and after him there succeeded to the Khikifet his son the Khalifa Musta'sim bi-'llah 'Ebu 'Ahmed, 'Emir of the Believers³³⁹ He it is for whom prayer is made on every pulpit until this our present time, the year A.H. 798 (A.D. 1395-6).³⁴⁰

In the same year A.D. 640 (A.D. 1243) the caravan of pilgrims from 'Iraq arrived at Mekka, the arrival of that caravan at Mekka having been interrupted for seven years,³¹¹ in which no one went on the pilgrimage from 'Iraq, from the year A.D. 632 to the year A.H. 640. And when the 'Emir of the pilgrim caravan of 'Irdq arrived at Mekka, he curtained the Cubical House,³⁴² placed gold and silver on that House, and (f. 38^b) distributed alms largely in Mekka.

f. 39^a In the year A.D. 641 (A.D. 1243-4) the Sultan Nuru'd-Din took possession of Mount Hufash,³¹³ one of the most famous strongholds of Yemen in the times of paganism and in the days of 'Islam.

f. 39^b And in the year A.H. 642 (A.D. 1244-5) Sultan Nuru'd-Din possessed himself of the castle of Sumat³¹⁴ in the land of Khawlan; on the subject of which Taj son of the Perfumer (Ibnu'l-'Attar), the Egyptian, sings, who was poet laureate to Melik Mansur, on whom be God's mercy:

" *The sky of the loiver world is not far off for the Son of Aliyy;
how then should the land of Semdwa³⁴⁵ be so ?*

*A prittic whose day is devoted to evident victory over enemies,
and his flight dedicated to recitation from the Qur'dn ! "*

He also acquired dominion over the land of 'Ulwdn³⁴⁶ the

Jahderite, whom he drove out into the country of the northern Khawlan. And he possessed himself of the whole of Upper and Lower Yemen, with the exception of Dhemermer, Beyt Rcdm,³⁴⁷ Thula, Telmus,⁸¹⁸ Dhafar,^{3*9} Kehldn⁸⁵⁰ son of Taju'd- (f. 40^r) Dm, and Tawi'la.³⁵¹

And in the year A.H. 645 (A.O. 1247-8) Sultan Nuru'd-Di'n f. 40^b overran the country of the 'Awadir,³³² capturing their castles. Then there reached his ears intelligence of certain matters not to be approved of and connected with the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, son of his brother. So he summoned him to Juwwa, and he came to him. But when 'Esedu'd-Din was in Juwwa, he conceived a mortal fear of his paternal uncle, and turned back in flight. When he had reached Sahul^{3,w} he found that the order had been forwarded to the 'Emir Naji, lord of Sahul, to prevent 'Esedu'd-Din from going up the torrent-bed. So Naji looked down upon him from the vaulted roof of his house, and said to him: "Return thou to thy paternal uncle; for there is no road f- 41¹ to the torrent-bed open to thee."

Now the said Naji was one of those sincerely devoted to the sovereignty of Mclik Mansiir. So the 'Eini'r 'Esedu'd-Din was bewildered and knew not what to do, fearing severity from his paternal uncle. But the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din used to associate with Word son of Naji. So he sent for him and informed him of the difficulty in which he was placed, and that he was afraid of his paternal uncle. Then Wcid son of Naji threaded with him a path through the wilderness, arriving with him at Dhemar by way of Wasab, his entry into Dhemar being on the first day of the year A.H. 646 (26th April, 1248, O.S.).

And in the year A.H. 646 the 'Imam Ahmed son of Huscyn f- 41^h the Qasimite rose in arms, having been made to rise by the sect of the Zeydiyya³⁵⁴ His rising took place at Thula in the middle of the month of Safer in that year (about 10th June, 1248). And he disseminated the call to arms in every direction, many people responding to his call in the district of Yemen. So he gave orders for a camp to be pitched against the castles of the Mikhlaifa,³⁵⁵ the governor of which at that time was the

Judge Shihdbu'd-Dfn 'Ammadra son of 'Aliyy the 'Isbahdnite, on the part of the Sultan Nuru'd-Dfn. The castles of the Mikhldfa were then in the hands of the Sherifs, children of Yahyd son of Hamza.

So when the 'Imam Ahmed son of Huseyn rose in arms, the 'Emfr 'Esedu'd-Din wrote to him as to his assistance, and as to his rising with him. And he agreed with him thereon. Then he raised sedition against his paternal uncle. Thus the case required that the Sultan Nuru'd-Dfn should go up to do battle with the two and combat them. Now he used not to think war a fatigue ; so he got ready and went up to San'd', but the son of his brother, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, met him at Dhemar, asking for his good graces and offering excuses ; he was gratified, and
 lo marched in his suite to San'a', which he entered the 21st of the first month of Rebi in the said year 646 (about 15th July, 1245), remaining there until Sunday, of the month Jumdda the First, when he went forth from San'a' and pitched beneath the fortress of Kcwkebdn in a spot called "Gently a bit."³⁵⁸ He next went up the hill and pitched in Ruham (Rukham) as far as Khawshdn,³⁵⁷ distributing reinforcements and reliefs to the castles of Mikhldfa. But there interposed to prevent this a great body of the people of the Ma'azib.³⁵⁸ He therefore went back from Ruham to Khawshan.

The 'Imam was then in Thuld, and the battle took place in the passes below the fortress of Thuld. But on some days there was fighting below a certain castle, one of those on Mount Masani¹.³⁵⁹ So there happened between them several great battles ; one in particular famous by the name of the " Day of the Passes," in which there were slain, of the soldiery of the 'Imam, ninety men by arrows. The commander in this battle was Mubdrizu'd-Dfn 'Aliyy son of Huseyn son of Bertas. Afterwards, the 'Emfr 'Esedu'd-Din commanded in chief in the battles, the Sultan having his camp at Khawshdn.

The 'Imdm now detached a force to the country of the Benu Shihdb,³⁶⁰ its commander being the 'Emir 'Abdu'lldh son of
 *i Hasan son of Hamza, who camped in Hadda and Sibd'.³⁶¹ The

Benu Shihab, Benu'r-Ra'i,³⁶² and the people of Hadur³⁶³ put themselves *in* opposition, siding- with him. So the Sultan Nuru'd-Din moved to the country of the Benu'r-Ra'i, who had built in Mount Hadur a place called Hajaru'l-Jerdd.³⁶⁴ This he demolished, and he placed in Mount Hadur a force of foot as a garrison. A portion of the Benu'r-Ra'i came over to his side. This was in Sha'ban of the afore-mentioned year A.D. 646 (November, 1248).

He next marched in the direction of the Benu Shihab and destroyed their sown crops. Many battles occurred there, and the Sultan returned to San'a', which he entered on Friday, 2nd Ramadan of the same year, 646 (27th December, 1248). The Sultan then equipped the son of his brother, 'Esedu'd-Din, to the country of the Hcdhdh³⁶⁵ on the 27th Ramadan (21st January, 1249). He mastered the fortified post of the Benu Khawwal,³⁶⁶ whom he slew in Shewwal (February), slaying also the people of 'Allana³⁶⁷ in Dhu'l-Oa'da (March), and devastated Sitara³⁶⁸ towards the close of that month. The Mansurian forces also sallied forth from San'a' to 'Atman³⁶⁹ in the same month, and slew a number of its inhabitants.

The 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din returned to San'a', where he abode a certain time ; and the Sultan Nuru'd-Din left San'a' for the country of the Benu Shihab on the 29th of Dhu'l-Hijja (14th Sv April, 1249). He pitched in the meadow-land of 'Izza San'a',³⁷⁰ and gave orders to his soldiery, who ravaged the sown crops of Hadda and Siba', where he fought a hard battle

And in this year aforesaid, A.H. 646 (A.D. 1248-9), Sultan Nuru'd-Din dismissed from Mekka and its dependencies the f. 42 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din the Flayer, appointing as governor in his stead 'Ibnu'l-Musebbab, upon his undertaking a certain revenue which he was to pay from Hijaz after maintaining the troops, and on condition that he should send a hundred horses every year. So he set out for Mekka with letters-patent from the Sultan, entering it when the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din the Flayer went forth. And 'Ibnu'l-Musebbab remained governor in Mekka during the year 646 and that which followed. And he undid

in that space of time all **the** good which the Sultan Nuru'd-Din had established, bringing in again the land-taxes and customs-dues, tearing down the broadsheet of the Sultan written and posted over the Zemzem³⁷¹ (well), taking possession also of the alms that used to come from Yemen. He furthermore took from Mejd son of 'Ebu'l-Qasim the money that was in his charge belonging to our lord the Sultan Mclik Mudhaffcr and built a fort in Nakhla³⁷² which is named 'Atshan.³⁷³ He also made Iludheyl³⁷⁴ take an oath of fealty to himself, and held back from the troops their pay, so that they dispersed from him. He devised cunning, and God dealt accordingly with him.

Then when the Sherif 'Ebu Sa'd had ascertained his disobedience against the Sultan, he assailed him, took from him all he had, horses, stores, and slaves, put him in chains, and convoking the chief men of the Sacred Precincts,³⁷⁵ said : " I have not seized him, save that I had ascertained his rebellion against our lord the Sultan, and had become aware that he had the design to abscond with the treasure he had collected to 'Iraq ; whereas I am the slave of our lord the Sultan, and the treasure is in safety with me, as also the horses and stores, until there shall reach me the command of the Sultan with regard thereto." But in a very short time afterwards tidings arrived of the Sultan's decease.

And in the year A.H. 61J (A.D. 1249-50) the Sultan Nuru'd-Din moved from his camp in the meadows to the district of Suda',³⁷⁶ where he devastated the sown crops, and proceeded to Beyt Na'ama, where were assembled the Sherifs, with their troops, the Benu Shihab, the Benu'r-Ka'i, and the men of Hadur, in the village of Da'ir, where the Sultan attacked them, killed a number of them, and destroyed the village ; this occurring in Muharrem of the said year A.D. 647 (April-May, 1249).

And when the 17th day of the said Muharrem was come, the forces of the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn went up to the fortress of Kewkeban in a moment of unpreparedness on the part of its inhabitants. And when they had established themselves on its summit, the garrison in station sallied forth against them,

and put them to a great slaughter. Now the 'Imam had ridden in the early morning on that day to Kewkeban, and stopped f. 44 below the fortress. But when his forces were slaughtered, he went back to the fort of Thula in all haste. Our lord the Sultan-Nuru'd-Din returned also to San'a', where he remained until the 12th Safer (27th May, O.S.). There came to him the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of Yahya son of Hamza, whom he went forth to meet, to whom he showed honour, with whom he re-entered San'a', and on whom he conferred as a grace the castle of Tekn'm.³⁷⁷

After this the Sultan proceeded in the diirection of Yemen, and pitched his camp in Qurretu'l-'Ayn on³⁷⁸ Tuesday, the 3rd of Rebi' the First (18th June, O.S.). He then took his road against Tcn'um,³⁷⁹ to do battle with those who were therein. These were the 'Emir Tzzu'd-Din Muhammd son of the 'Emfr Shcmsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza, and the 'Emir 'Ebu Hashim son of Safiyyu'd-Din. So the heaven-assisted troops did battle with them, and killed a number of their followers. !..

The Sultan next proceeded to Jehran,³⁸⁰ the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dfn Muhammd son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Rcsiil accompanying him a certain distance on his journey. Now there congregated together the men of Bekil,³⁸¹ the men of Ghabeyn,³⁸² the men of Subh,³⁸³ the men of those parts, and the troops of the 'Imam, their captain being the Sherif Diya'. They were about ten thousand footmen and a hundred and fifty horse, and they had the design of preventing the Sultan from taking the direction of Bekil, having their fixed centre in the high land of Niina.³⁸⁴ But the Mansurian forces defeated them, killing many of them and devastating Ghabeyn as also Subh. This happened in the month of the latter Kebf, 647 (July-August, 1249).

In that same month the two 'Emirs, Miisa and Dawiid, sons of 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza, arrived at Dhahr³⁸⁵ with a force of f. 44b horse and foot. And in San'a' as garrison was the Master of the Household of the 'Emir 'Escdu'd-Din, named 'Izzu'd-Dm

the Engineer. He did battle with the two Sherifs and expelled them from Dhahr. Then the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din returned to San'a' from Dhcmr after the descent of Sultan Nuru'd-Dm to -Yemen. But the people of the districts and the forces of the 'Imam seized the pass of Gha'ira,³⁸⁶ and prevented him
 ¶1 from going up to San'a'. So he went up against them with the sword, by force, defeating them and thus getting up to San'a'.

He then went forth again after this to Kemim³⁸⁷ to meet the treasuries, when all the Shcykhs of those distticts drew together, with the forces of the 'Imam, and tried to take possession of the treasuries. They were about four thousand foot and a hundred and fifty horse. He engaged them and routed them utterly. Subsequently to that the districts rebelled against him, and his troops dispersed, both Kurdish (Ghuzz) and Arabian mercenaries, fleeing to the 'Imam. There thus remained none with him save his household slaves. But he cared not for any of these things, and no anxiety entered his mind. But the war between him and the Sherifs was a succession of alternate fortune, by reason of the small number of his troops and the bias of the population towards the 'Imam.

There then occurred the battle of Qarin³⁸⁸ between the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huscyn and the Benu Hamza.³⁸⁹ A number of these latter were killed, others being made prisoners. It was a famous battle, fought on Wednesday, 14th Shewwal, 647 (about 20th January, 1250).

i. 45' And in that year was the Sultan Nuru'd-Di'n crowned with martyrdom in the castle of Jened during the night preceding Saturday, the 9th of Dhu'l-Qa'da (about 15th February, 1250, O.S.); may God's mercy be upon him. A party of his household slave troops fell upon him, and killed him!³⁹⁰ He had greatly increased the number of his household slave troops, so
 r that his maritime slave troops amounted to a thousand horsemen, though it has been said eight hundred. And they used to excel in horsemanship and archery all that the slave troops of Egypt did so well. He had about him nearly the same

number of slave children, besides his bodyguard and the troops of the 'Emirs.

It was said that he who emboldened them to this deed, who was familiar with them, and who made them promises on which their minds relied, was the son of his brother, 'Esedu'd Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. This arose inasmuch as he was feudal lord of San'a' on the part of his paternal uncle Mansur, who afterwards wished to remove him from thence and to give it to the son of Shemsu'd-Di'n Yusuf Mudhaffer.³⁹¹ This was looked upon as very serious by 'Esedu'd-Din, who therefore practised on the slave troops to kill his uncle, which they carried out at the date given above. f. 45^b But 'Esedu'd-Din, after the murder of his uncle, never once saw a happy day. God's decrees take their course in a contrary sense to men's calculations.

It is reported that when the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, on whom be K* God's mercy, returned from the war with the 'Imam and entered the city of Jened, there came to him an envoy from the King of India,³⁹² two or three days before his death. He presented himself at an audience of the Sultan, and acquitted himself of the message of his sender. So the Sultan received him with honour, and made gifts to him. Then, when he came forth, he said to his interpreter: "His end is become near; save that, verily, he is the father of a king, the grandfather of a king, and of his posterity there will be kings." He then spoke words in a non-Arabic idiom, the purport of which is : "There shall take it after him the lord of the mole ;³⁹³ and there shall meet it after him an exciter to war;³⁹¹ and it shall not be separated from his progeny and his children."

The Sultan Nuru'd-Din was a noble, prudent, clement prince, excellent in governing, quick of action on an emergency. He was high-minded, soaring in enterprise, a courageous horseman, persevering and warlike, never tired of battle. Of the many indications of this one is his expulsion of the Egyptian forces from Mekka the Honoured time after time. He was not satisfied with becoming independent in Yemen after being their lieutenant

in it, but he fought with them from Mekka, and drove them out of it and out of Hijdz. He also inclined to himself a number of their military men, among those whom he so gained over, from amidst their 'Emirs, being the 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Huseyn son of Bertas, and the 'Emir Firuz, whose posterity are the 'Emirs, the Benu Firuz, lords of 'Ibb³⁹⁵; though Jenediyy has said : " It has been stated that the 'Emi'rs, the Benu Firuz, managed 'Ibb from of olden time, i.e. from before the days of Melik Mansiir." But God knows best.

And when the Sultan Nuru'd-Din was murdered in the city of Jened, there was not then present any one of his children. On the contrary, Melik Mudhaffer³⁹⁶ was at Mehjem, while his brothers and their mother were at the castle of Ta'izz, on account of the outfitting of the Lady 'Adhiba, daughter of the Sultan Melik Mansur,³⁹⁷ as bride to a Sheriff of the people of Mekka. So he went with them to Dtimluwa.

Then the Benu Firuz³⁹⁹ family collected and bore the Sultan in a camel-litter, going with him to Ta'izz, where they buried him in the College of the 'Atd-Bck at Dim Huzcym,⁴⁰⁰ by reason that he had taken to wife a daughter of the 'Ata-Bek Scfer,⁴⁰¹ she being known as the Daughter of Hawza.⁴⁰² Our lord the Sultan Melik Mudhafifer, on whom be God's mercy, recognized this act of theirs, thanking them for what they had done, and for that reason conferring on them several valuable fiefs. He also gave to Shrefu'd-Dtn a band of military music, and another to his brother Fakhru'd-Din, both of whom were in great favour with him.

And the Sultan Nuru'd-Dm, on whom be God's mercy, had founded many a pious institution. Among these works is the College which is at Mekka the Honoured, and is such that all princes envy him on account thereof. He built in the city of Ta'izz two colleges, of which the one bears the name of Weziriyya, from its professor Weziriyy, and the other the name of Ghurabiyya, from its mu'edhdhin⁴⁰³; a certain pious man whose name was Ghurdb being mu'edhdhin therein. He also built a college at 'Aden; while in Zebid he built three colleges,

together known as the Mansuriyyat⁴⁰⁴ ; one of them the Shafi'iyya college, another the Hanefiyya college, and the third the college of the apostolic traditions. He further built a college in the district of Mensikiyya⁴⁰⁵ in the vale of Siham. In each college he instituted a professor, a tutor, students,⁴⁰⁶ an 'imam,⁴⁰⁷ a mu'edhdhin, a teacher,⁴⁰⁸ and orphans,⁴⁰⁰ to learn the Qur'an, giving to each one also ample estates in mortmain to maintain them and supply the needs of all. Jenediyy says moreover : " He also built a mosque in every village of the lowlands, to which he assigned an ample estate in mortmain." f. 463

Now the district called Nuriyy¹¹⁰ was an extensive waste lying between Hays and Zebid, through which those who passed would perish. So he built therein a mosque, placing therein two imams. And he made it a condition that whoever should settle there with them should be treated considerably in respect of his sown crops. So people settled there with them, until there had sprung up a nice village, from which the people derived a great benefit. Thus says 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejic: " And I imagine that it was named Nuriyy after him ; for he it was who enlivened that locality, his surname being Nuru'd-Din, as we have mentioned. But God knows best." IV**

He also built between those two cities many forts and other works, in which he placed garrisons of foot, and the traces of which exist there to this present time of ours. He furthermore issued his command for the establishment of a post on Birk, a mountain adjoining the sea between Mekka and Yemen; placing therein a strong force as garrison to wage war with the house of 'Eyyub.

He moreover despatched the Sheykh Mu'aybid son of 'Abdu'llah the 'Esh'arite, lord of Rima',⁴¹¹ to the Sheykh Musa son of 'Aliyy the Kinanite, lord of the Haly of the Son of Ya'qub,⁴¹² in order that he should set about making war against the house of 'Eyyiib. This Musa son of 'Aliyy the Kinanite was one of those who have become proverbial for their munificence and generosity. So when Sheykh Mu'aybid reached him with the message of Sultan Nuru'd-Din, he listened and obeyed, saying: " What is the thing that thou bearest unto me *of* the guestship

of this personage?" i.e. of Mu'aybid. So he led forth to him fifty horses ; and Mu'aybid conducted the whole of them to Sultan Nuru'd-Din. And he spoke in praise of him in his presence, saying : " The possessor of this spirit merits that the name of 'Emir be conferred on him." So the title of 'Emirship was conferred on him from that time forth.

f 47^a And Sultan Nuru'd-Din had three male children, who were Mudhaffer, Mufaddal, and Fd'iz ; Mudhaffer being the eldest of them. He came into the world in the days of the governorship of his father in Mekka the Honoured in the year A.D. 619 (A.D. 1222), or, as is also said, A.D. 620 (A.D. 1223). It is he who succeeded to the sovereignty after his father. His father had put him at a distance and promoted his brothers over him, in compliance with their mother, the daughter of Hawza, who had obtained a predominating influence over him ; so much so, that he had made the troops swear fealty to his son Mufaddal, who was younger than Mudhaffer.⁴¹³

1st And his poet-laureate⁴¹⁴ was Taj son of the Perfumer ('Attdr), one of the erudite men of the people of Egypt ; also the talented Muhammed son of Himyer, one of the learned among the people of Yemen. Now the two had met together one day at a drinking party, and the son of the Perfumer said to him : " O my lord, verily I am thy poet-laureate from the lands of Egypt ; but I see that thou preferrest the son of Himyer before me, and givest gifts to him more largely than to me." Then the Sultan said : " Verily he is ready-witted, quick at impromptu ; while you, O men of Egypt, although people of learning and erudition, are yet indeed slow." He then turned to the son of Himyer and said to him : " What sayest thou ?" Upon this the son of Himyer, addressing himself to the son of the Perfumer, spake as follows offhandedly :—

*"A would be poet, with a turban in knots, the which, if stirred tip,
I should take to the open air, crop-sick ;*

*Yet thy fatJicr was a perfumer ; zvhath, then, is the object of Ids
son that he should offer to men as incense the stench of
armpits ? "*

And it was said that he had somewhat of that odour. So Sultan Nuru'd-Din laughed and said : " Answer him." But vexation prevented his utterance.

One day he was present at a drinking party with Sultan Nuru'd-Din, whose brother's son, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din was also there at the time. The 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din had a poet, one of the people of the east country, named 'Aliyy son of 'Ahmed. Now 'Esedu'd-Din set himself to eulogize his said poet. Then said Sultan Nuru'd-Din to the son of Himyer: " What sayest thou ? " And he answered impromptu :

*" / am the ocean, prodigal of all kinds of unusual things ; therein
do I dcik out Alans?/r ivitJi pearls and gems ;
Why, then, should I heed 'Aliyy son of 'Ahmed, or his verse?
May the chin of the son ofAhmed be in musk ! "*

Then said to him the Sultan Nuru'd-Din : " And what hath prevented thee from rhyming thy last word with a letter r ? " To which he answered : " Fear of this son of thy brother."

Now the son of Himyer was a very eloquent poet, facile of conception, beautiful in invention. He it was who spoke in eulogy of Sultan Nuru'd-Din, where he sings :

*" // has been said: ' That thou may est grow rich, do thou dwell
near the sea or a King! Thou art the King, and thou art
the sea, O ⁱ Umcr !
Neither Arabian nor non-Arabia?i hath compassed what thou
hast compassed, neither genie nor man hath strongly built
up what thou hast strongly built up !
When the ancestors arc such that their sons glory in them, or if
the ancestors boast of thee, thou may est feel proud !
Thou art both ; and in thee is the happiness of the whole. They
make thee not glot ious, whether they be absent or present.
They are glorious through thy glory, at their beginning and at
their last; even as in 'Ahmed ⁴¹⁵ does the whole of
Mudar⁴¹⁶ become glorious"*

He also has sung, eulogizing him in another poem :

f. 48' " Say thou to the rhymes: ' Rhyme ye to 'Umer ; take heed that
ye deceive, not, for you will be deceived.
Keep ye about the high place, that ye may be exalted ; and haunt
ye not the low, that ye be not abased.
Whosoever's fire has become extinct, his fires will also extinguish
upon the deserted hearth?

The Sultan Nuru'd-Din was of the Hancfiyy¹¹¹⁷ school of orthodoxy, but later he went over to the school of ShrifWyy.⁴¹⁸

Says Jenediyy in his history: " My teacher 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy the Harazite informed me, basing himself upon what he had been taught by the 'Imam 'Ebu 'Abdi'lkih Muhammed son of 'IbnUiym the 'Aselite, the teacher of the apostolic traditions at Zebid, and one of the instructors of Mansur,¹¹⁹ saying: ' The Sultan Nuru'd-Din Mansur informed me, in the very words, that he was of the Hancfiyy school of orthodoxy, but that he saw the Prophet, on whom be God's salutation and greeting, in his dream,⁴²⁰ who said to him : " O 'Umer, thou hast passed over to the Shafi'iyy school of orthodoxy " ; or whatever he may have said. So he rose in the morning and began to examine Shafi'iyy books, becoming confident in their way of reasoning."

He used to associate with the Sheykh,⁴²¹ and the jurist who were the two lords of 'Avvaja, and who were among those who strengthened him in the sovereignty. He associated also with the jurist Muhammed son of 'Ibrahim, under whom he studied likewise. He was much attached to men of learning and to men of piety. His institutions and his deeds were praiseworthy. May the mercy of God be upon him.

CHAPTER III.

On the events of tJie Mudhaffcriyy Sovereignty⁴²² and its Conquests.

Thus saith 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite : When our lord the Sultan Melik Mansur Niiru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul died at the date above specified (Saturday, 9th Dhii'l-Qa'da, 647 ; about 15th February, 1250, o s.), the whole of the household slave troops^m (Memluk, pi. Memalk ; whence our 'Mamelukes') took their way to the capital city, Zcbi'd, and next from thence to Feshal,⁴²⁴ where was the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Dm 'Ebu Bckr⁴²⁵ son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, as its feudal lord on the part of his paternal uncle, the martyred Sultan Nuru'd-Dm 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. Him did they entitle Melik Mu'adhdham, and to him did they swear fealty, then taking the road to Zebid. Therein was then dwelling the Lady of the Exalted Curtain, Daru'sh-Shemsiyy,⁴²⁰ daughter of our lord the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, with his mother, and the eunuch Taju'd-Dm Bedr, surnamed the Less, who was incarcerated in the prison of Zebi'd. He had been placed in custody by the daughter of Hawza by reason of his love towards Melik Mudhaffer ; but Daru'sh-Shemsiyy took him out of the prison and confided to him a large sum of money, with which he raised a body of men. She then commanded him to shut the gates of the city, to guard it, and to watch over its walls.

He therefore organized combatants on the banquette⁴²⁷ (*derb*) of the ramparts, and fought against the slave troops and the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din, in spite of the 'Emir⁴²⁸ of the city and of its Superintendent.⁴²⁹ Its 'Emfr at that time was a slave trooper, whose name was Qaniman, the Superintendent being a stranger known as Sheref. The Sultan Mudhaffer was then absent

among his feudal estates at Mehjem. He was not in a state of composure towards his father, who had given precedence over him to his two brothers Mufaddal and Fa'iz,⁴³⁰ their mother being the daughter of I.Iawza. She had gained his affection so as to exercise undue influence over him ; she had driven away his son the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, as also his daughter Daru'sh-Shemsiyy, from their father, to such a point that he had made the soldiery take an oath of fealty to his son Mufaddal.

The Sultan Melik Mudhaffer had formed the design in that year to quit Yemen and make his way to the Khalifa Musta'^im in 'Iraq. But when news reached him of the death of his father, it was giievous to him and turned his resolution from quitting Yemen. He was in a state of bewilderment, inasmuch as he felt overpowered by what had overtaken him of great calamities
 f. 40^l and grave matters, such as the loss of his Hither, the defection of the entire body of the slave-guards to the son of his paternal uncle, Fakhru'd-Din, their blockade of Zebfd, the domination of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din over San'a' and its dependencies, the
 H uprise of the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huscyn in the upper country, the spread of his fame, his domination over the greater portion of that upper country and its forts, the domination of his own two brothers Mufaddal and Fa'iz over the castles, the cities, and the treasuries, and that there was naught in his own grasp save the hilt of his sword, excepting that the hearts of the nation were filled with love for him.

Then he arose preparing for action, collected what troops were with him, enrolled both horsemen and footmen of the Arabians, and sallied forth from Mehjem at the bidding of the Shcykh 'Ebu'l-Ghayth son of Jcmil,⁴³¹ taking his road towards Zcbi'd in diligence and with luck, success, and happy augury. One of the *signs*^{TM2} of his good fortune was that when he resolved on marching and gave orders to load his effects and his treasure, as they had begun to load, they brought out a chest filled with gold, which they set down and went back for another. Just then two men of the Arabians happened to pass by, who at once loaded that first chest on their beast. When the

treasurers came out with the other chest they missed the first, and not finding it they stood bewildered. News of this reached the Sultan. He summoned the Sheykh of the Arabians, and ordered them to follow up the footmarks. These, therefore, set out instantly to search out the footmarks; nor did they desist from tracking out the marks until they stood before the mark of the kneeling-place of the male camel on which the chest had been loaded. So they halted, looking about right and left; and they saw a spot the state of which was other than what surrounded it. There they dug, and there they found the chest, with not one of its seals broken. They loaded it on their beast and went back with it. This was one of the greatest *signs* of success and of good fortune. II*

The departure of the Sultan from Mehjem with his heaven-assisted troops⁴³³ took place on the 28th Dhu'l-Qa'da,⁴³⁴ 647 (about 7th March, 1250). The leaguer and investment of Zebi'd was not discontinued until they knew that the Sultan was on his march towards that city; then they broke up their camp. And when the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer went forth from Mehjem towards Zebid, whenever he passed through a clan of the Arabians, he engaged their horsemen and their footmen in his service. So there journeyed in his train, of the chieftains of the Arabians, 'Aliyy son of Tmram the Qarabilite, the Shcykh Muhammed son of Zekcra the Hadcfite, and the Shcykh 'Ahmed son of 'Ebu'l-Qasim, who was the Sheykh of Sheykh of the vale of Surdud.^{4,15} There was also present the jurist Yahya son of 'Amik, who was captain of the archeis.⁴³¹⁵ Shcykh Zekera son of the Qarabilite went forth mounted on a mongrel camel; so that Sheykh 'Aliyy son of 'Ebu Bekr the Sudite who was the wezi'r of our lord the Sultan, said to him: "O Sheykh Zekera, thou art one of the greatest in the anay, and ridest thou on a mongrel camel?" And he replied: "By the truth of the head of our lord the Sultan, I will verily ride the she-mule of Fakhru'd-Din if God grants her to our lord the Sultan." Said he, "God hath already granted her to him"; and he answered, "We shall sec." Now the troops of our lord f. 49*

the Sultan were one hundred and fifty horse, with two thousand footmen, while Fakhru'd-Din had with him six hundred of the slave-guards and one thousand foot.

And while the Sultan was in the course of his journey there met him at Dhu'al⁴³⁷ one who said to him : " This is Fakhru'd-Din with a large muster on the valley side." And he said also : " Forbid thou, then, the soldiery." Now the Sultan was riding a mettlesome charger, chestnut of coat; and he took a spear-shaft in his hand, being a thorough horseman ; so he turned the head of his charger, and said: ^aO Arabians, where will ye fly to from us? Is it that ye will not make our souls satisfied with yourselves?" He then set to, calling out: " I am Yusuf! I am Yusuf!" Then he said: "Verily, I have thus seen thee with a force who vie with each other to outdo one another in advancing, even as the ocean vies in increasing its tide."

- f. 50 So when the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din and those of the slave-guards who were with him became informed of the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer's march towards them, they were convulsed with violent agitation, and Fakhru'd-Din decided to ascend the mountain and make for San'a' with his brother. Then the chiefs
lir and notables among the slave-guards, those W'IO had had no complicity in the crime—and they were the greater number— assembled and wrote a letter to our lord the Sultan, in which they supplicated for an amnesty. 'So the Sultan granted them the amnesty on condition that they should lay hands on the 'Emir Fakhru'd Din and the party of those who had murdered the Sultan. They agreed to this, and they laid hands on the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din, as he was in his tent, they cutting several of the tent-ropes, so that they bound his arms behind his back therewith. Then they went all in a body to the Sultan, after seizing the party of those who had killed the Sultan.

Such is the account given by Jencdiyy ; but the author of "The String of Pearls of Great Price "(the 'Iqd) says that the cause of his arrest was that Fakhru'd-Din, when he learnt the march of the Sultan in his direction, wrote and sent a messenger to him, offering his submission and the surrender of the slave-

guards. But he answered: "Do ye not put together upon us the murder of our father and the seizure of the sovereignty out of our hands." So they conformed to his command and listened to his words, binding Fakhru'd-Din and marching with him to the Sultan.

The author of "The String of Pearls" (the 'Iqd) has furthermore narrated, saying: "I have heard from our lord the Sultan, who said: 'The reason of the arrest of the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din by the slave-guards was that they had issued from their camp in quest of intelligence, when there overtook them a courier of the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din, who had with him letters from the 'Emfr to us, containing something displeasing to them. So they returned to the camp, arrested him, and brought him to us under a guard.'"

'1r

The 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya the 'Ansite was outwardly on the side of the Sultan, but inwardly a partizan of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Di'n and his brother. Now he was a poet, eloquent, of noble disposition, and deriving his origin from 'Ans,⁴³⁸ a clan of the tribe of Medh-hij. So the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din wrote to him urging him therein to rise in arms, and inciting him to loose the bonds of his brother Fakhru'd-Din, saying f. 50ⁿ therein :

" *Hadst thou knozvn, O Muhammed?® zvhat has happened, thou zvouldst vciily have despatched thereto horsemen mounted on spare steeds with dishevelled forelocks ;*

With whom thou zvouldst have pelted the double banquette of TaHzs in all haste, so that thou mightest obtain glory, or strengthen a sou/ ce effame.

TJiere is no escape save that thou deliver thy brother in reality from thence, or that thou die and ±0 have an excuse.

Verily, the son of BcrtDs^m seized an opportunity / Alas for a death sold and bought!

*Shout, O progeny of Hamza,*ix ' We come J and acquire a most praiseworthy name, so thai thou possess thyself from amongst the stars the brightest"*

Meaning the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn ; but the more likely, in my estimation, is that he meant the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Imam Mansur 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza ; for verily he was then chief of the house of the Benu Hamza. But God knows best.

UP So when the slave-guards came with the 'Emfr Fakhru'd-Din to the Sultan Melik MudharTer, he amnestied them, and made himself personally very familiar with them. He then journeyed with the object of reaching the city of Zebfd, into which he made his entry on the ioth Dhu'l-Tlijja, 647 (25th March, 1250), with an immense procession, bearing in his person the majesty of sovereignty and the grandeur of dominion.

And when he was seated at table, being established in the court of his kingdom, the poets arose with eulogies,⁴¹² congratulating him on his accession to empire. The poets recited many verses ; but the jurist Siraj 'Ebu Bekr son of Da"As, from among all present, rose to felicitate the Sultan with what talent God granted to him as he sang :

" If one horizon ^{iiZ} has set witJi the state from the upper horizon, contemplate the splendour of the suu^{Hi} that has already filed the plenum I

Or if as it were, the eyelid of the kingdom had last evening become ophthalmic, this morning it has arisen perfectly dressed ivith the stibium of Mudhajfer.^{Wo}

f. 5i^a The lower world moans not for the loss of its sovereign; it suffered a loss at Radzvd,^m and obtained a compensation by withering.

The loss of the King^m was but a darkness that enveloped mankind; but there came to them a morn, and then they cheered up.

With the King^m has the fracture become whole ; and the neck of the upper heaven has become jeweled, which was vacant.

It is tww a resplendent turn of fortune ; and this is its oivner ; the time has become daivn through him, most bright and cheerful.

ne other than thou, O 'Ebi'i ' Umer⁴⁹ is pleasing to it; deck
 thou it, then, as a jewel; for brides are decked with jewels.
 ou hast not ceased to acknowledge the benefits of its Lord God,
 in humble supplication for its advent, piously trusting,
 thou hadst not seen it in Zebid inciting to joy and jaunting no
 in richly decorated apparel and jewels.
 Thou hast endowed her ivith a bounteous dotver ; and she has no
 peer save thee, neither does she desire an exchange.
 She has come to thee obediently ; and for her thou shookest not
 a spear, nor baredst against her a blade.
 • thou to him ivlio ignorantly desired to make himself a
 >>**reign™.<m4, it rove, losing'his wayjtfL&r'rWⁿ.—
 „t thou ? For the secret of the sovereignty is not patent
 unto thee, and thou art not qualified for it:
 Return thou, then, to the goblet of pleasure, and leave higher
 matters to him who sheaths men's swords in the upper part
 of necks ;⁴⁵¹
 And to the lord of the host, zvho barred the open country and
 clipped with the edge of the szvord the forelock of the
 wilderness ;
 And turned back thy wind when it blezv transversely y thivart-
 ingly, by a puff from him blowing from the north;
 The most deserving of mankind, of the sovereignty, ivas his
 father, who never quitted for the first in the line of glorious
 ancestry ;
 It is my empire, and I am he who set my heart upon it; and
 God is He who grants to His servant that which lie has
 desired! "

So when the Sultan Melik MudhafTer had seized the person
 of the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Dm, and had entered the city of Zebid, f. 51^Λ
 as we have related, and when his rule was established, then the
 troops of his father gathered around him and undertook the
 revenues of the low countries, his breast became dilated, and
 his spirit was at ease. The sheykhs of the Arabians begged of
 him permission to return to their homes. So he seated himself

in to take leave of them in the Plain of Seyfu'l-'Islam,⁴⁵² and came before him to take leave. Then he presented t Sheykh Zckera son of the Qarabilite a mule from among beasts of the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din, named Durraj⁴⁵³ ; he also to the Sheykh 'Aliyy son of 'Imran the Qarabilite locality named Muqassiriyya;⁴⁵⁴ while another called Li'sar was set down to the Sheykh Muhommed son of 'Ebii Zeke, lie gave them dresses of honour, gifts of money, and paid the wages handsomely ; so that they went back to their home: happy and rejoicing.

In the year A.D. 648 (A.D. 1250-1) the Sultan Melik Miu¹ took possession of the whole extent of the low on the people submitting to him and bringing in to him its revtu-

Then he set out from the city of Zebi'd for 'Aden, taking the road by the sea-coast.⁴³⁶ He made himself master of it, of Lahj,⁴⁵⁷ and of 'Ebyen⁴⁵⁸ in the month of Safer (May, 1250), receiving possession also of the castle of Yumeyn, the castle of Munif,⁴⁵⁹ and all the castles of the country of the Ma'afir⁴⁰⁰ tribes, in the same month. The first town of that country which he entered was Jeba',^{fii} where he was received by the judge Muhammed son of 'Es'ad, surnamed Ileba', who publicly prayed for him from the pulpit there. So that was the first town of the hill country in which public prayer was made for him from the pulpit.

f. 52 He next pitched against the fortress of Ta'izz in the first Rcbi' of the year (June, 1250), his camp being in a locality at Dar-Sa'ida,⁴⁶² which is in Jubeyl, between Jahidiyya and 'Asaq. He wrote to the Sheykh 'Ulwan son of Sa'id the Jahderite, demanding from him men of the Medh-hij⁴⁶³ tribes. So he joined him with a numerous array, and he continued to invest the fortress until he took possession of it in the month of the first Jumada, 648 (August, 1250), by a device on his part, which was as follows. On a certain day he captured a courier who had come from Mufaddal and his mother at Dumluvva to the 'Emir of the fortress and to its Superintendent. The 'Emir of the fortress at the time was 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite ; the

attendant being a certain seneschal⁴⁶⁴ named 'Anber. And he had captured the courier, he took what letters he had, broke them open, and ordered someone to counter-jie handwriting until he imitated it exactly. He then came to the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite, as though from the mouth of Mufaclddl and his mother, that he should seize the Superintendent and imprison him. He wrote also to the aintendent a similar letter. These papers of his were read among those of the courier, to whom he gave what befitted him, and also promised further reward. The courier proceeded with the letters to the fortress. When the Emir and the Superintendent got their letters, and each one of them became aware of what was written to him, each of them became anxious for his colleague, the two being on friendly terms together. So they came together, and each communicated to the other what he had received. In consequence, they agreed that both should write at the same time to Mudhaffer and make sure of their lives at his hands. This they did, and delivered up to him the fortress in the month of the first Jumadd of that year, A.H. 648 (August, 1250). So he appointed the eunuch Superintendent to the daughter of 'Esedu'd-Din, he being a eunuch with some good in him. The Sha'bite, too, rose greatly in his favour. For he afterwards gave him San'a' in fief, where he remained until he died.

But it is also related that the Sultan was occupied besieging the fortress something like six months. So when his stay became tedious, he wrote to his maternal aunt, the daughter of Havvza, asking her to deliver to him the fortress of Ta'izz, his own son 'Eshref, with his brother and their mother to be with her as hostages. And he sent them to her; so she wrote to the 'Emir to surrender the fortress to him, and from him he received it.

He next received possession of the castle of Habb in the month of Rajeb, 648 (October, 1250); on which event the erudite Jemalu'd-Din Muhammed son of I. Iimyer sings and says:—

f. 5^{2b} " And although a King has retired, this is the reign of h
 and in Yusuf⁴⁶⁵ is there a good substitute for ' Umer
 There rushed upon it from the hollow of Melha Ghafiq⁴⁶⁶
 with white-ringed fetlocks and manifest forehead-blaz.
 And Zebid cmulously shouted: ' Welcome, 0 Mudhaffer !
 assembly has become lighted up with thee ; and the sti
 has become cheerful! '
 And lie journeyed to Habb, and Habb⁴⁶⁷ loves him. And 1
 would be love that should be rebellious to him ? 1
 though it should desire, it could not.
 Castles have come to him; they were his inheritance by
 divine law. Oh for the sword! The sword is no !
 save his who subjugates" ⁴⁶⁸

III And in the course of this space of time the 'Imam 'Ahmed
 son of Huscyn and the 'Emir Shemsu'cl-Din 'Ahmed son of the
 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza made a pact together, and
 marched against the 'Em(r 'Escdu'd-Din Muhammed son of
 Hasan at San'a'. So he went out thence and ascended to
 the castle of Birdsh ; his departure from San'd' being on the
 2nd of the first Jumada in the year A.H. 648 (about 28th July,
 1250), and the 'Imdm entering it on the 7th of that month
 (2nd August).

The whole of the Sherifs entered San'd' with him, the clans
 of the Arabians submitting, so that he became master of the
 city and of all its dependent districts, as also later of Dhemar
 and its districts, of which the 'Emirs were Humrites,⁴⁶⁹ in whom
 lie placed no confidence either.

Says the author of the " String of Pearls of Great Price "
 ('Iqd): " The 'Imdm remained in San'd' about a year, the 'Emir
 'Escdu'd-Din being in Birdsh and attacking them at early morn
 and late at eve. But the Arabians had gathered to the 'Imam
 against him. So when the delay had become irksome to him
 and his situation unbearable, he wrote to the 'Emir Shemsu'd-
 Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam that he should pacify matters
 between him and the 'Imam. The 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din

imended him to apply to our lord the Sultan and court him
uously, conforming himself according to his mandate."

iter on the two 'Emirs, 'Esedu'd-Dm and Shemsu'd-Dm,
an interview at Jebub,⁴⁷⁰ where they came to the under-
tnding that the latter should endeavour to arrange a paci-
ation between the former and the 'Imam, this last to equip
e 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din for a campaign in Yemen to fight against i- 53^a
e son of his paternal uncle, the Sultan Mclik Mudhaffer.

When the 'Emir arrived in the vicinity of the Sultan, a
ediator arose seeking to bring about peace between the two
irties; and this was arranged. Another mediator essayed
make peace between him and the 'Imam. So they came to
erms accordingly, made a treaty, and ordered the matter.

The 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dm now made preparation, the 'Emir
'Ahmed son of 'Ulwan and others of the sons of Hatim marching
in his company. The 'Imam, too, despatched with him the
'Emir 'Abdu'llah son of Suleyman son of Musa with a hundred
horsemen. So the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dm went forth with an
immense array, and ceased not to journey until he pitched in
the Shcwafi,¹⁷¹

So soon as the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer knew of this, he set
out with his troops, and camped opposite to him. Then the
sons of Hatim and others mediated for peace between them,
and ultimately a pacification was arranged. The personal inter-
view took place in Mcwsa'a,⁴⁷² where the Sultan rode on his
horse, Mushemmîr,⁴⁷³ advancing in the majesty of his kingdom,
the throng of his guards, and the multitude of his troops. The
'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dm came forward walking on foot.⁴⁷⁴ When he
drew near, the Sultan dismounted, the two saluting each other
on foot. The Sultan then remounted, and the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-
Din walked on foot in front of him, carrying the horse-cloth⁴⁷⁵
before him until he entered into the banqueting-tent. And
when they reached the royal estrade, the Sultan said to the in
'Emfr 'Esedu'd-Dm : " In God's name, O 'Emir ! "⁴⁷⁶ But he
said : " May he avert evil from thee, O our Lord; that is thy
place, and the place of thy father; while this is my place, and

the place of my father." The matter was then settled according to the preliminaries of peace already made ; and there disbursed unto him, by way of unlimited largesse, what stage him ; so that he exclaimed : " Oh for my wits ! Has our the Sultan left anything in his treasures?"

f. 53^b Next, the Sultan, on whom be God's mercy, equipped reinforcement of one hundred horsemen for San'a', making Nasif the Yahyite their captain. His command then came the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dm for his return to San'a'. So he set off in all speed with his troops and associates. And when tidings of this reached the 'Imam, he despatched his forces to the torrent bed of Gha'ira, expecting that they would prevent the troops of the Sultan from ascending the torrent bed. But his force did not stand in face of the Mudhafferian troops for any length of time. And as soon as the 'Imam knew that the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din was at hand with the Mudhafferian troops, he went forth from San'a' to Sibd', after having demolished the pavilion of the T2m(r 'Esedu'd-Din and the pavilion of his brother the 1^r 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din. He left the Scyyid Hasan son of Wehhas the Hamzite, his brother, and several other Sherifs besides those two, and some of the Arabians, as a garrison in Safwa.⁴⁷⁷ The 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Dm went out against them with the Sultan's troops, seized them by the napes of their necks, and sent them up to the castle of Birash. The Sultan then went up to San'a' in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja in the year 648 (February-March, 1251), returning thence to Yemen in 649, on the first day of the first month of which he received possession of the fortress of Ta'kcr.⁴⁷⁸

And in the latter part of that month tidings arrived of the approach from Egypt of the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, as of the approach of his brother Fakhru'd-Din 'Ebii Bekr son of 'Aliyy son of Resul.⁴⁷⁹ This necessitated a pacification between the Sultan and the 'Imam ; so they made peace together.

Our lord the Sultan now wrote to all the deputies in the low countries, commanding them to show respect to his two paternal

cles, and to be assiduous in making their circumstances reeable. He wrote also to his paternal aunt, who was known the title of Nejmiyya, and who was then at Ta'ker,⁴⁸⁰ saying 3 her: "If thou opine to meet thy two brothers, do so." And she rejoiced at their arrival with an exceedingly great joy; for she was affectionate to her kin in especial, and kind to the people in general.

And Muhammed son of Khadir had been one of the competitors of the Sultan, his mother being Zehra' daughter of the 'Emir Bcdru'd-Din. She was a woman of mark, prudent, sagacious, and she it was who built the college in the village of Ilibal⁴⁸¹ that is named after the Benu Khadir, and in which is her sepulchre and their graves. Now Muhammed son of Khadir had acted badly towards the Sultan, and had openly opposed him; but he had forsaken that course. So the Sultan said to him: "O Muhammed, go thou down with thy grandmother, and meet thy two grandfathers." Thus he went down with the princess Nejmiyya, to whom the Sultan gave a most complete outfit.

And when they were gone down, the Sultan went down after them and met his two paternal uncles in Hays, whence they went forth to meet him. When they came face to face, each of them dismounted to the other. They mutually saluted; then they remounted their horses, and so entered the city of Hays. When repose was restored to them, the Sultan commanded the arrest of his two paternal uncles aforesaid, Jtedru'd-Din and Fakhru'd-Din, as also of Muhammed son of Khadir. He bound them, and went up with them so bound. He then conformed himself to the words of the poet of old:⁴⁸²

" / say, as says the ass of the sad flight, to which they had assigned
a load he could not well bear:

I will have patience; for events sometimes become easy, even as
events at times are straitened;

For, either I shall die, or the carrier; or the journey will come
to an end with me.^{1"}

And when they entered the house of correction afores; they found therein the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din the younger, 'E Bekr son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, who was the fh of them incarcerated. Then the 'Emfr Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliy son of Yahya wrote to the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din,⁴⁸³ accurately informing him of what had happened in the matter ; and in the course thereof he says :

" My love is that old affection of mine, and my engagement is that old promise of mine.

And amidst my ribs there is what T look upon as a devouring flame that sets a hell ablaze.

- f. 54^B *Then I said: ' The arrival there of Bedru'd-Din is for us an opportunity' ; but the arrival advantaged not"*

Intelligence of this reached our lord the Sultan, but he took no notice thereof. He had held him in honour, and had bestowed upon him several valuable fiefs. Therefore he manifested not to him anything of that which had come to his knowledge.

And in this year A.H. 649 (A.D. 1251) Mejd son of 'Ebii'l-Qasim went on an honourable Mudhafferian mission to the sacred court of the 'Abbasides at Baghdad. But it has been said that the envoy to Baghdad was the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Ja'fer son of 'Ebu'l-Qasim. And he travelled by way of Beraqish⁴⁸⁴ towards Baghdad, taking guides from the nomades of the desert, and following the road by the sands mounted on Buhturiyy⁴⁸⁵ camels.

The son of his brother narrated that they journeyed from Beraqish to 'Irdq in fourteen days. And when he reached the presence of the Khalifa in Baghdad he presented the letter, which the KhaHfa Musta'sim⁴⁸⁶ read, and then offered a prayer for our lord the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer. And the Khalifa gave command that a broadsheet diploma should be written for him ; and he appointed him to the sovereignty.

Then said the Khalifa : " See ye how much is the offering of the lord of Yemen." And they said : " Ten thousand ducats."

en said 'Izzu'd-Din son of 'Ebu'l-Qdsim: "And how much the offering of the lord of Egypt?" So they said: "Forty jiousand." To which he replied: "I will not admit for my jrd less than that." But the wezir rejoined: "Verily, the region of Egypt is of greater extent than the region of Yemen." But 'Izzu'd-Din remarked: "Whatever deficiency there may be in Yemen, verily the qualities of my master make up for it." So the Khalifa replied: "Verily, we have been pleased with thy discourse." Then, turning to the wezir, he said: "Make ye him glad with the offering of the lord of Egypt."

The Khalifa then wrote a letter to the Sultan, commanding him therein to extirpate the 'Imam 'Ahmed .son of Huseyn; impressing this injunction on the 'Emir 'Izzu'd Din also. The son of'Ebii'I-Qasim now resumed his journey, and an envoy of the Khalifa travelled with him, who, when he reached the Sultan, clothed him with a robe of honour, and read to him the diploma, conferring on him the sovereignty, as the representative of Musta'sim for that purpose, and delivering to him the licence. So he remained in the palace for guests, and the Sultan conferred upon him what overwhelmed the offering and other things besides.

And when the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn was slain, as will be hereafter narrated, if God so will, our lord the Sultan wrote to the Khalifa, informing him thereof. And when the envoy reached Bcraqish there met him the news of the murder of the Khalifa,⁴⁸⁷ and of the entry of the Tatars into Baghdad.

And in this year A.D. 649 (A.D. 1251) the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer was reconciled with his two brothers Mufaddal and Fa'iz, to whom he granted as fiefs Lahj and 'Ebyen. And in the latter part of the year the arrival took place of the envoy of the Khalifa at Mekka the Honoured with the hangings of the Temple and the diploma for Melik Mudhaffer mentioned above, as well as his lieutenancy as stated. So he robed the temple and proceeded to Yemen, reaching the Sultan there with the diploma and the commission of lieutenancy.

In the year A.D. 650 (A.D. 1252) the 'Imam made peace with

the 'Emfr 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of 'A1 son of Resul, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din entering into allegiar towards the 'Imam, to whom he sold the castle of Birash a hundred thousand pieces of silver; peace being thus broki between the 'Imam and the Sultan. This occurred in Rejeb of that year A.D. 650 (September-October, A.D. 1252). He sent him with a large array to Dhemdr, despatching with him force of his own raising, over whom he appointed captain the Sheriff 'Izzu'd-Din Hiba son of Fadl the 'Aliyyitc.

When information reached our lord the Sultan, he detacheq against them the eunuch Tajū'd-Din Bedr,⁴⁸⁸ and the 'Emii Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya. But a dissension broke out between the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya and the eunuch Tajū'd-Din, so that the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya went back to the noble sacred gates (of the court), while the eunuch Tajū'd-Din proceeded alone with the Mudhafferian forces,

f. 55^b When the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din and the Sherif 'Izzu'd-Din Hiba son of Fadl saw what terrified them of the Mudhafferian forces they fled to Sewdd⁴⁸⁹ and kept to the mountain. Thence they sent to the 'Imam asking for reinforcements from him. So he sent to their assistance the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed
ITA son of the 'Imam, and all the Arabians of the Benu Shihab, of Sinhan,⁴⁹⁰ of the people of Hadur, and others besides. There then took place, between the Mudhafferian forces and these, a number of engagements in which the prowess of the slaveguards shone conspicuously.

The 'Imam continued to despatch to them successive supports, leaving no single tribe that he did not fit out for them. So when the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din saw the multiplicity of the 'Imam's troops and their repeated arrivals in his support, there came upon him the old Arabian zeal and the warmth of the pristine Ya'rubian⁴⁹¹ blood-relationship, and he cautioned the eunuch Tajū'd-Din, recommending him to go back, and saying to him: "Verily, if thou return with those forces safe and numerous, our lord the Sultan will come up, and no one will be

to stand before him." The eunuch went back therefore
nemar, thence marching to Yemen.

this same year A. H. 650 (A. D. 1252) the Sultan obtained
ession of the castle of Dumluwa. The means thereof were
the had sent his child 'Eshref, together with his brother and
1 mother of the two, as also the eunuch Yaqit,⁴⁹² to his
internal aunt, the daughter of Hawza, placing them with her
hostages. They managed the matter and worked upon the
rison. But it has also been said that, on the contrary, the
necess Daru'sh-Shemsiyy,⁴⁹¹⁵ daughter of our lord the Sultan,
sent up in anger with her father and complaining of him to
her two brothers and her maternal aunt, the daughter of Ilavvza ;
and manifesting her complaint against her father Mudhaffer,
the eunuch Yaqut accompanying her. So she stayed with them
some days, gaining over the servants, and making their circum-
stances comfortable ; employing also the garrison, until she had
made sure of her design. Then it was told to the daughter of
Hawza that a certain cow in Juwwa had given birth to a calf
with two heads. So she willed to go down to Juwwa to see
the cow, and she proposed to Daru'sh-Shemsiyy to go down
with them. But she complained of feeling unwell, and went not
down. Then the daughter of Hawza and her children went
down. When they had gone down, the eunuch Yaqut lighted
up a fire on the summit of the castle ; for the signal agreed on
between him and the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer was that he
should light up a fire on the highest part of the castle. So
when the Sultan saw it he went down on the instant, the Sultan
being then in Habb, or, it is said, in Ta'ker.⁴⁹⁴ He mounted,
attended by a hundred horsemen, and set out. But the greater
number of them broke down by the way, a party alone keeping
pace with him. Among these was the inspector Mansur. So
when the Sultan arrived near to the gate of the castle he dis-
mounted, and the inspector Mansur was standing before him,
to whom he said : " Who is this ? " And he answered : " Thy
slave Mansur." He took the answer as of good augury,⁴⁹⁵ and
bestowed largesse upon him, giving him a robe of honour and

raising him to a superior grade. He afterwards made governor of certain districts. Says the author, on whole God's mercy: "The inspector Mansur was an excellent and an intelligent gentleman; and the chiefship has not ce with his children and his children's children unto this pres clay of ours."⁴⁹⁶ Among them was the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-In , 'Umer son of Yusuf son of Mansur; to whom the chiefs descended until he became lieutenant of the Sultan Meff Mujahid in the whole of the Yemenite territories. Another them was the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Hiba son of Muhammed of 'Ebu Bekr son of Yusuf son of Mansur, who became 'Emir Zebid. The son of his paternal uncle, also, the 'Emir Nejmu Din Muhammed son of 'Ibrahim ruled likewise for a long tim in the city of Zebi'd. And we shall mention those whom it ma be indispensable to refer to.

f. 56^b So when the Sultan reached the gate of the castle as' Dumluwa, he found his brother Fa'i'z standing over the castle gate, who would not open it to him. Then he addressed him, saying: "And is it so, while there are seventy castles that hold not with us or with you?" Then he passed on away from him, and they opened the gate for him, so that he entered. And there entered with him those who by that time had joined him of his slaves and attendants. This was on the 19th Dhu'l-Qa'da, or, as has been said, on the 25th thereof, in the year 650 (20th or 26th January, 1253).

in In this year A.D. 650 died the jurist, the 'Imam⁴⁹⁷ 'Ebu'l-Hasan 'Aliyy son of Mes'ud, who, when the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza made his appearance and obtained a predominancy in the district of Mikhlafa, went forth with a body of about sixty students in the direction of the low country, where he sojourned a space. Then, when the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza had died, and the seditions quieted down, the jurist returned to his country, Mikhlafa, also, and remained there awhile. Then there came to the country of the jurist the righteous Sheykh 'Ebu'l-Ghayth son of Jemi'l,⁴⁹⁸ who there built a convent, and the two lived giving mutual support to

ther. But when the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn^ked, and the might of the Zeydiyya sect grew vehement, /o moved from Mikhlafa and returned to the low country. Shcykh 'Ebu'l Ghayth went down to the jurist 'Ata', after n is named the village known as Beyt 'Ata' ; but the jurist *: to a pupil, the jurist 'Amr, with whom he remained until he in the year stated.

l the year A.IT. 651 (A.D. 1253-4) the 'Emir 'Escdu'd-Din med, with the troops who accompanied him, to the upper ltry,⁴⁹⁹ and dissension arose between him and the 'Imam, the reason that he had received a mere trifle only out^whe piice of Birash, and that the 'Imam did not fulfil what had promised to him as to the affaiis of the country. l< he journeyed towards Rida'u'l-Behfma^m on the road owards the cast country.⁵⁰¹ And there was with him in company the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Wehhas and a party of his cavalry, until he reached 'Amqayn,⁵⁰² Ghumddn,⁵⁰³ and Jurdhan,^{50*} which are valleys in the cast country. There the paths became straitened unto them—him and the 'Emir 'Aliyy sou of Wehhas—their condition being very critical. The Mudh.iffcrian forces moved against them, and they saw no escape but to make towards the Shcykh 'Ulwdn son of 'Abdu'lldh the Jahderitc, in spite of the enmity and malice theie was between the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din and the Sheykh 'Ulwan son of 'Abdu'lldh the Jahderitc in the days of the Mansurian reign. But when they went down to him he met them with a welcome and profusion. He made them alight in (the castle of) 'Artisan,⁵⁰⁵ where he prepared feasts for them, and undertook their protection.

The Sultan went out against them and pitched in the country of the Sheykh 'Ulwan, many places in which he laid waste, and burnt others. But the Shcykh 'Ulwdn ceased not to speak pleasantly to the Sultan, to visit him, and to beg him to grant an amnesty to the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, until at length he amnestied him through the Sheykh, who, being one of the most eloquent of the Arabians, sang as follows on the occasion :—

' Peace be upon the house within the courts of which
 rendezvous of a people for whom no covenant gradh
 amnesty /
 They made their camels kneel down at our home as they a
 there being with them long spear-shafts, Mahref
 sword-blades, and short-haired horses,
 Lions of Mount Shera,⁵⁰⁷ who waded through the sands, b e .
 made submissive by the genii-mutterings thereof; he
 highland became alarmed through fear of them.
 They aimed at the site of the sun by their grounding them
 on souls that have taken in charge the axiom: ' Dearm
 glory, or eulogy?
 Until the Yemeni an lightning flashed gleaming in the Dum
 of power which has no compeer.
 And they drove thither their full-teethed camels to the degree of
 footsoreness ; leading thither their horses on which wen.
 lions.⁵⁰⁸
 A prince led them, in whose right hand are gifts, among which
 are death and munificence ;
 Unto whom flock the people whose swords are red cornelians ⁵⁰⁹
 that scabbards befit not.
 They imagined a potable watering-place ; and when they drczu
 near to tt, and had entered it to drink, they said: ' God 's
 decrees ; not a coming to water ! ⁵¹⁰
 'Esedu'd-Din decreed the decree with his spear to the banner of
 the brightest stars that have a uniting knot;
 And a traverser gathered an array against them for Mudhaffer,
 who had gleaming swords and thundering drums ;
 A chieftain who refused that he should deliver over the
 sovereignty, and opposed himself thwartwise, having around
 him the lords of responsibility and the military,
 Which he drove on as the clouds are driven when compelled by
 the cast wind, until the embassy reached unto us ;
 Men of eminence, who were foes to me, and who began to
 vociferate: O ' Ulwan, has thy hatred departed ?'
 And to whom I said: ¹ Alight ye, then, in the branch-valley of

¹
 a!' Oh, welcome! This is Samuel⁵¹¹ and this
 l-Eblaqu) 'l-Ferd !
 ed over them the shadow of-Arusan; I opened out to
 em, in service, the hands of plenty, which they extended,
 thanks be to Him who brought near the stirrup of Muham-
 ed⁵¹² to me! For it was the spliere and good luck that
 ent him to me,
 the lords of responsibility⁵¹³ gathered around us; but
 neither their threats nor their promises caused me to waver,
 ces, some contiguous to others; but the forces of my dctet -
 mi nation opposed a barrier between them,
 'ns unto lions mutually drew nigh; but that which was
 between them, the tawny lion?⁵¹⁴ drove them away in fury,
 ten who is my like in the unnatural -wars of the Arabians ?
 And who is like my station unto them in misfortunes, if
 they reckon ?
 "or my title to glory is that I am the free man of the lineage of
 Ya'rub ; and that, verily, I am, for -whoever betakes himself
 unto my quarter, a servant!⁵¹⁵

So when the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer had granted an amnesty
 to the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, as we have narrated, the 'Emir
 Esedu'd-Din went down, with those of his associates who were
 with him, to the Sultan, who met him at Mews'a'a, where he
 treated him with honour and kindness. And the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-
 Din marched on foot in the presence of the Sultan, his sword
 being upon his shoulder.⁵¹⁶ And when they went in to table,
 he stood on foot and did service.

After that, verily, the Sullan bestowed on him magnificent
 sums of money, reinforced him with an imposing array, and
 ordered him to march against San'a'. So 'Esedu'd-Din marched
 with troops against San'a' ; and when the 'Imam knew of this
 he went forth out of San'a', which 'Esedu'd-Din entered. The
 Sultan subsequently went up to San'a' in Rejeb of the year
 A.H. 651 (September, 1253). And there ascended in his suite the
 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din son of Wehhas. And he pitched in the

parade-ground (*derb*)⁵¹⁷ of 'Abdu'llah. The 'Ima in Tesa';⁵¹⁸ so he went forth from Tesa', and demolished Tesd', with its gardens, returning then \ where he obtained possession of the castle of Derwa the Sheykh Werd⁵²⁰ son of Muhammed son of Naji.

And in this year A.D. 651 (A.D. 1253-4) the Sherff 'I was murdered in Mekka, the duration of his govcrnme having been four years, all but a month. Certain of the his paternal uncle went in to him in his palace, and slew the midst thereof. He who killed him was Jemmaz . Hasan. He performed the pilgrimage with the people thi and remained in Mekka.

In this year A.H. 651, also, did a misunderstanding break between the 'Imam and the 'Emir Shcmsu'd-Din 'Ahmed of the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza with the sons of paternal uncle, the sons of Hamza. These asked for aid f, the Sultan, who commanded the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din to go their assistance. So the 'Emir 'Escdu'd-Di'n went forth on t, fifth day of Dhu'l-Hijja (about 25th January, 1254), the roy treasury funds having already reached him ; and he met th 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din in Bcraqish,⁵²¹ after the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din had returned from Me'rib. Then they went on together f. 59 in pitching against Zebra'/'²² which they took and demolished.

f. 6P In the year A.H. 652 (A.D. 1254-5) the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, (ff59"-') with the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed and the MudharTerian f, Gl^h forces, marched to the city of Sa'da,⁵²³ the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn being then in that city of Sa'da. And nothing was ever more expeditious than the entry of the two 'Emirs with the Mudhafferian troops into the district of Sa'da. So the 'Imam fled to 'Ilaf/'²¹ leaving the Seyyid and Shcrff Hasan son of Wehhas in garrison at Sa'da with the half of his forces, while he himself marched with the other half to 'Ilaf.

The leaguer against Sa'da lasted about a month, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din and the Shcrff Shemsu'd-Din harassing them morning and evening with attacks until their reinforcements failed them. And in this interval an eye was destroyed of

the Sherif Jemalu'd - Dm 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah son of Hasan son of Hamza. After that Sa'da was captured, and the Shen'f the Scyyid Hasan son of Wehhas was made prisoner. The city was crowded with its inhabitants, and a considerable amount of treasure was pillaged, while an [imnricn.se](#) booty was taken. They also captured seventy head of horses. The 'Emir 'Esedu'd - Din granted his personal protection to the greater part of the people and safeguarded the women. He provisioned the Birash⁵²⁵ citadel of Sa'da with an ample supply, and the two 'Emi'rs, leaving as garrison in Sa'da the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Mulmmmd son of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, with Hiba son of Fadl, themselves returned to San'a'.

And when the two 'Emirs Shemsu'd-Din and 'Esedu'd-Din returned to San'a' with those accompanying them as captives, they entered San'a' on Friday, 12th of the first Reb(', 652 (about 1st May, 1254). And when the month Sha'ban (September-October) of the said year was entered upon, there arrived royal treasury funds and commands Mudhafferian for the departure of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din in company with the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm to Dhahir.⁵²⁶ So the two 'Emirs made their preparations and set out with the divinely assisted Mudhafferian forces, making for the Hashid ⁵²⁷ country, the district of the son of Wehhas.

Having devastated a variety of places there, they left for the Masna'a of the Bcnii Qadim,⁵²⁸ which they captured, and proceeded to Nub,⁵²⁹ continuing their progress towards Dhahir and seizing a place named 'Ebiaq.⁵³⁰ They then marched against the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn in a locality of the Himyer country named Ilejer.⁵³¹ He had collected considerable levies at the torrent-bed (Naqi'l) of Ilasanat,⁵³² and had commanded them to defend that place. So the two 'Emirs distributed their forces in the environs of the torrent-bed, so as to intercept the communications of the 'Imam's levies, and then routed them ignominiously, making a great slaughter of them. In the number of the slain there was killed the jurist Hamfd son of 'Ahmed the Jewel-Ornamcntcr, who was one of

the learned among the Zeydiyya sectaries, and one of their eminent men, who has left both works of a comprehensive character and treatises for princes and men of learning more in number than any other writer. Many other jurists and sectators were killed with him. There was also taken prisoner Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of Yahya son of Hamza, who was of the descendants of the 'Imam 'Aliyy son of Hamza.

The 'Imam himself took to flight after being in imminent peril of his life. He subsequently shut himself up in the castle of Khuleb⁵³³ in the Masani' range. The two 'Emirs then went back to Dhahir, wishing to advance on Jewb,⁵³⁴ but their forces opposed themselves to this, and they returned to Saina'in the month of Ramadan, 652 (October-November, 1254).

In this same year A.D. 652 the Sherif Jemmaz son of Hasan⁵³⁵ was driven out of Mekka. They who expelled him were the Sherif Rajih, with 'Kbii Numeyy⁵³⁶ and Idris.⁵³⁷ Rajih remained there three months, when he was driven out by his son Ghanim, who maintained himself until the month of Shewwal. He was in turn expelled by 'Ebu Numcy and 'Idris, who ruled there for the month, when the Sultan despatched 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din Huseyn son of 'Aliyy son of Bertas with one hundred horsemen to Mekka the Honoured. The Sherifs encountered him at the gate of Mekka; but he routed them, slew a number of them, entered Mekka, and performed the pilgrimage with the people.

And in this month of Shewwal also did the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza undertake a journey to the sacred gates of the Sultan, with his brother Dawud son of the 'Imam,⁵³⁸ and a number of the descendants of Hamza. The Sultan was then in the capital, Zebi'd, and when they arrived he went out to receive them, and treated them with honour and kindness. He possessed a gift of meeting and of making presents such as had never been heard of. Tents were set up for them, and kitchens arranged at the Shubariq⁵³⁹ Gate of Zebfd for the whole time of their stay. Thrice they had a meeting with the Sultan; they remained a full month, and

the Festival of Sacrifices⁵¹⁰ came on while they were yet at the gate.

And when the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din resolved upon returning to his own country, the Sultan presented him with money, horses, dresses, and rarities, to an amount known to God alone. He also conferred on him the town of Qahma⁵¹¹ as a fief, sending with him an escort of a hundred horsemen of the slave-guards and of the bodyguard. So the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din⁵⁴² set out for Jewf⁵¹³ and put it to the sword, meeting with many a glorious adventure.

(f. 64^u.^b)f. 65^af. 65^bf. 66^a

In the year A.IT. 653 (A.D. 1255-6) the Shcrifs of Mckka collected an immense levy to attack the 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din, whom they besieged in Mckka vigorously, penetrating the city from the hill-tops. He combated them in the midst of Mekka, but they broke his array and slew a number of his followers, making him prisoner. He redeemed himself from them, and returned to Yemen with the troops left to him.

And in the year AIL 654 (A.D. 1256-7) died the eunuch Taju'd-Din 'Redr son of 'Abdullah the Mudhafferian, in the city of Ta'izz, and in the month of the first Rebf. It is said that he died poisoned, but God knows best.

In the same year A.II. 654, also, died the righteous jurist 'Abdu'r-Rahman son of 'Aliyy son of 'Isma'il son of 'Ibnihi'm. It is reported of the Sultan Nuru'd-Dm 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Rcsiil that it became incumbent on him to expiate an act of conjugal intercourse during the daytime in a month of Ramadan, he being at the time in Jencd. So the magistrate gave orders for the assembling of the jurists of Jened and its districts by command of the king. And when he had summoned them, and they were collected together, this jurist was present among them. The Sultan received them seated in a special audience, they being all admitted to his presence. And when the assembly was thoroughly quieted down, they were asked their opinions on the case, and gave for answer the solution always given to people in general; but our jurist spake not, when they answered, one word on the subject. It was then

said to him : " For what dost thou not say something when the whole assembly give their opinions ? " He replied : " I have a desire to know whose the case is." Then it was answered him: " Our lord the Sultan it is to whom the case has happened." To this he then replied : " There is no full punishment for him save a fast of two months. As to the feeding of the poor or the freeing of a slave, they are no retribution to him." The assembled jurists contested this opinion with him, so he replied : " The object of an expiation is to stamp out the peccant matter that may induce a repetition of the sin ; and that peccant matter that might induce a repetition of this act by our lord the Sultan cannot be stamped out in any way save this." Then the Sultan was seized with admiring wonder.³⁴⁴ But God knows best.

In the year A.H. 655 (A.D. 1257) there befel a great scarcity, the market price of corn rising to an enormous degree in San'a', Sa'da, and Dhahir, and numbers of the people peiishing of famine. It lasted six months, and the people ate dogs and wild carnivora.⁵⁴⁵

In this year A.H. 655, again, the learned of the Zeydiyya sect held an assembly, having among them the Sheykh Muhamcd son of 'Ahmed son of the Pewterer. And they cast reproach on the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn as to various points of his conduct, blaming him on that account, and visiting his acts with severe reprehension.⁵¹⁶ So he commanded that they should be put in fear ; on which they went over to the Ma'aziba⁵⁴⁷ people; and it is said that they went forth from Jewb in anger to the country of the Benu Safiyyi'd-Din.⁵⁴⁸ Then the 'Imam sent unto them Hasan son of Wehhas to hear what they reproached him with. But his intimates said to him : " Send him not unto them ; verily they will gain him over." But he opposed them and sent him. And when he reached them, they argued with him and won him over, so that he became one of them ; their assertions coincided, and he became their chief. Then the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam wrote to them, asking of them an offensive alliance to make war on the 'Imam;

and they acceded to his proposal. This rejoiced him exceedingly, so that he issued forth from San'a', and they went up to him from the Ma'aziba people. They collected together at f. 68^a Rcwn, and their councils were unanimous. They adopted the resolution to wage war on him after they had asked him to hold a disputation on what they reproached him with, as to his conduct.

The 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din then wrote to our lord the Sultan, informing him of the disinclination of the Schismatics in respect of the 'Imdm, and asking him for a subsidy in money. On this he sent them a hundred thousand pieces of silver with the Shen'f 'Alemu'd-Din⁵⁴⁹ Hamza son of Hasan, who duly delivered the treasure to them an hour or so before the battle, and the I bags remained thrown down on the ground among the tents until the event was over.

And in the year A.H. 656 (A.D. 1258) the Shen'fs and the Schismatics united in waging war on the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huscyn, their gathering taking place at Suwana.⁵⁵⁰ The 'Imam went forth, therefore, with his array, and passed by the fort of f 68^b Mida⁵⁵¹ towards them. In outward appearance the meeting of the two parties was for a discussion, not for a battle. So the 'Imam pitched in a locality near to them called Mandhar,⁵⁵² above the village of Suwdna. And the outposts of the Shen'fs barred his passage short of it, so that a mutual driving back took place, and the Shen'fs multiplied around him from all sides. His troops quailed, and did not stand their ground. They were three hundred horsemen and about two thousand foot; the house of Hamza then standing for eighty horsemen and four hundred foot.

When the 'Imeim saw the defeat of his troops he turned aside to a place near at hand, and remained there, imagining that his people would fight in his defence. Rut they fled from him, delivering him over alone.⁵⁵³ Then was his horse hamstrung, and certain footmen from Dhafar performed the office of his executioners, Shemsu'd-Din participating therein with neither a cut nor a thrust. When he was slain, God's mercy on him,

they cut off his head, which they then brought to the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din, to the son of the Pewterer, and to the other jurists of the Schismatics. It was afterwards carried to Dhafar, and it was borne as a trophy in the castles and in the market-places. The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Miisa son of 'Abdu'llah then gave orders for its being swathed in gravecloths and its burial in Mesh-hed⁵⁵⁴; but the people of Mesh-hed diverted him from that purpose, and it was buried in a grave below the castle of Qahira⁵⁵⁵ in the locality of the public latrines and dunghills, until the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din ordered it to be carried down to Suwana and buried with his body. So it was buried in a spot named Meshra'a⁵⁵⁶ in the marsh of Suwana, where it remained three years, and was then removed to Dheneban,⁵⁵⁷ where it is to this our day; his grave being well known, much visited, and held to be a place where blessings descend on its visitors.

Jenediyy has said: "Trustworthy relators have given the information that at the spot where he was first interred at Suwana an odour of musk is perceptible." His slaughter took place on Wednesday, the 30th of the month of Safer, 656 (about 7th March, 1258); but it has been asserted that he was killed on the day when the Khalffa Musta'sim was put to death in Baghdad. Such is the view given by Jenediyy.

The Khalifa Musta'sim had written to the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, giving him orders about 'Ahmed son of Huseyn, when news had reached him of his uprising and of the favour in which he was held by the people, promising him in that case the fief of Egypt. The 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn, on whom be God's mercy, was the most conspicuous of the 'Imams of the Zeydiyya sect in latter times for his learning, his actions, his munificence, and his kindness.

And when the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of Huseyn was slain, the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imdm 'Abdu'lkih son of Hamza wrote to the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer a letter informing him of the event, sending it by a messenger immediately in all haste. These were the words of the missive: "In the name of God the merciful, the compassionate. We

renew our service and give thanks for His favour, unto God, who be extolled, and then to the exalted sovereign presence, whose dominion may God eternize; and we inform its chief personages of the battle at Suwana. And the head of 'Ahmed son of Huseyn is in his hands." Verses :

*" By the bright blade of the Lord of the crown, our spears stirred
up a thick dust in a field of battle between horsemen,
Which arose in front of the horses when the occurrence of high
deeds there frolicked in diffusing pure musk and blood!"*

And when Friday was come, the third day (inclusively) of the slaughter of the 'Imam, the Sherff'Ebii Muhammed Hasan son of Wehhas⁵⁰⁰ proclaimed himself for the 'Imamate. The Schismatics, the Shcrifs, and some of the commonalty of the Zeydiyya sect took the oath of allegiance, but others deferred. So, when those had taken the oath whom we have mentioned, he journeyed towards Sa'da, while the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm⁵⁵⁹ took his way also, immediately after the event, to the Jew,⁵⁶⁰ and subsequently to the district of Sa'da, with the whole body of his associates. On this, he and the Sherif Hasan son of Wehhas shared between them in equal moieties the castles and the countries.

And when the Sultan knew of the oath of fealty to Hasan son of Wehhas, he went forth with his divinely assisted forces to Mews'a.⁵⁰¹ Then he sent the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of 'Ulwan⁵⁰² to the 'Emir Shcmsu'd-Din son of the 'Imam at Sa'da, having formed sundry suspicions regarding him. But the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of 'Ulwan brought back information that satisfied him, and he returned to his capital city Ta'izz.

And in this year A.H. 656 (4.D. 1258) the Sultan sent forth his divinely assisted forces under the command of the 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din Huseyn son of 'Aliyy son of Bertas to the district of Hajja,⁵⁰³ some of the castles of which he seized.

In the same year A.H. 656 the scarcity and dearth went on increasing in severity after the slaughter of the 'Imam 'Ahmed

son of Huseyn, so that many of the people died, more especially of the jurists of the Zeydiyya sect and of the house of Hamza (Benu Hamza). The first of these to die was the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza,⁵⁶⁴ who was the prince of the house of Hamza in his day, as none of them was his equal in the qualities of a leader and ruler. His death occurred at Sa'da, and his brother, the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din Musa son of the 'Imam, undertook the management of the chieftainship of the house of Hamza after him. But it was not a long time ere he also perished after his brother. The brother of those two, Hasan son of the 'Imam, died also, as did a certain number of the house of Wehhas (Benu Wehhas); so that the 'Emir Sarirnu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam undertook the supremacy of the house of Hamza. He and the 'Imam Hasan son of Wehhas maintained an alliance for a certain space of time, the two being" opposed by Muhammed son of Suleyman son of Musa son of Dawud son of 'Aliyy son of Hamza, with Suleyman son of Hamza. He turned aside to enter the service of our lord the Sultan,

And when the 'Emir Mubarizu'd-Din returned from the outlet of Hajja to the gates of the Sultan, the sovereign again despatched to Hajja the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya with an imposing array, in which was included the 'Emir 'Ebu'l Hasan 'Ahmed son of Qasim son of the paternal uncle of the 'Imdm 'Ahmed son of Huseyn. And when the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya reached Mefraq,⁵⁰⁵ a valley between Mikhlaifa and Hajja, the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din wrote to the 'Emir 'Ebu'l-Hasan 'Ahmed a single distich, as follows:—

" *'Ebu Hasan, I have not come to Mefraq in quest of Mefraq,
but I seek other than Mefraq.*"

To this an answer was composed, in one distich, by the jurist Niclhamu'd-Di'n Qasim son of 'Ahmed the Shakirite, as though from the lips of the 'Emir 'Ebii'l-Hasan, saying :

" 'Ebu Hasan, the day will certainly bring about what thou xvilt see ; and verily at times, a scorpion hath scratched against a viper ! "566

Then the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy did not delay to return to the sovereign gates, and the Sultan received possession of the castle of 'Eshyah⁵⁶⁷ in the month Dhu'l-Hijja, A.H. 656 (December, 1258). Then the Sultan commanded a camp to be pitched against the castle of Kemim.⁵⁶⁸ So the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Suleyman son of Musa, with the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahyd, pitched against it with the forces of the Sultan.

In the year A.H. 657 (A.D. 1258) the Sultan received possession of Hajja and its castles, with the castle of Ri^la.^{r, fio} lie also took possession of Hedhdhadh,⁵⁷⁰ and of the castle of Kemim in the same year. And the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Suleymdn had already turned to the service of the Sultan, as has been mentioned, and he built in a place named Revvq,⁵⁷¹ in the country of the Benu Dirar. The 'Emir Muhammed son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul⁵⁷² felt aggrieved by this, so he took his slave, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aqwes the 'Elfite, and pitched against Rewq until he had nearly captured it. Then our lord the Sultan went up to the district f. 70^b of Dhcmar, and took Birash with the sword by assault. He laid it waste, and he made prisoners the children of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, with a numerous party of people. He then captured Rewq, demolishing it also.

Now, when the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Suleymdn opposed himself against the 'Imam Hasan son of Wehhas, he took possession of the low hollow of Jewf; but the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud went to attack him with his own forces, and the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Wehhas, also, with the forces of his brother Muhammed son of Sulcymdn was then at Suq-Di'dm.⁵⁷³ When those forces reached him he fought with them, but they broke his array, and entered the covered way⁵⁷⁴ by assault, where he was. So he took refuge

in a house there, and entered it. But there entered after him into it also Hasan son of Muhammed the Jahhafite, who slew him, and thus took revenge for his father Muhammed son of Jahhaf. For Suleyman son of Musa had formerly made prisoner Muhammed son of Jahhdf, with a number of his associates, whose heads he had then smitten off in cold blood. On this day his son got hold of Muhammed son of Suleyman, and killed him in turn for his father. The whole number of slain in this adventure was about a hundred men.

The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawiid and the 'Imam Hasan son of Wchhas were not long before they fell out, and an estrangement of the most virulent character sprang up between them.⁵⁷⁵

In this year A.H. 657 (A.D. 1258) there happened an earthquake³⁷⁶ in San'a' on the 4th of Dhu'l-Hijja, which did not devastate anything; but there subsequently occurred another shock in the west, which demolished mountains and threw down many places. It took place on the 22nd of Dhu'l-Hijja, also in the same year.

Also in this year A.H. 657 did the Sultan take on himself the affairs of the Holy Sanctuary (at Mekka), and the edification thereof. So he erected a minaret, established its service, and fixed the stipends of its ministers.

In the year A.H. 658 (A.D. 1259-60) the Sultan went up to San'a' in Muharrem, the first month thereof. And the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Rcsul was in Dhemermer, whence he demanded of our lord the Sultan that he should be equipped for an expedition to Haclramawt. He complied with the proposal, and provisioned him with all requisites. So he went forth to the low country of Jewf,⁵⁷⁷ where he was met by Hisn son of Muhammed son of Jahhdf and 'Abdu'llah son of Mansur son of Daygham, who beyged of him assistance against the house of Rashid son of Munff. He complied with their request, though these had sworn a confederacy with our lord the Sultan. So a battle took place between them, in which were killed Tawq son of Hamdan, with a number of the house of Rashid. When news

of this reached our lord the Sultan he was much incensed at heart against the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, so that it became impracticable for the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din to proceed to Hadramawt, and he therefore took the direction towards the Dhafar of the Sherifs,⁵⁷⁸ in which he remained several days.

After that the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Dfiri Dawud son of the 'Imam marched forth with his troops, and also the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan with such of the slave-guards as still continued with him (for the greater number of them had rejoined the Sultan). And they arrayed themselves to make war on the 'Imam Ilasan son of Wehhas. Their encounter took place at 'Asdfir,⁵⁷⁹ where the retainers of the 'Imam were defeated. He himself stood firm with great constancy, fighting with the utmost vigour. For he was a skilled horseman, of the bravest of the brave who have achieved renown. His retainers were beaten away from him, but he was not to be routed. Neither had he ever been known to fly, and therefore was he thrice made prisoner, this being the third time, and on each occasion his captor was the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan, a very curious instance of fortuitous coincidences.

Now when the 'Imam had been made prisoner as we have recorded, the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam incarcerated him, and so he remained in custody with him for ten years, at the end of which period he took him out of prison, as we shall by and bye narrate, God so willing.

The Sultan remained in San'a' and its neighbourhood until the month of the first Rebf (February, 1260), when he proceeded to Yemen, leaving the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya in San'a' as his fief, with its dependencies. He did not long remain there before there came the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Ilasan and pitched in Mudcwwera⁵⁸⁰ above Hamra',⁵⁸¹ whence he would make forays against San'a'. One evening his troopers had made one of those inroads, when the garrison went out to encounter them, and his slave, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aqwes the 'Elfite, was slain by being struck with an arrow. He who shot the bolt was 'Eshqar,

also one of the slaves of 'Esedu'd-Din, but who had entered the ranks of the Sultan's forces. 'Aqwes the 'Elfite was one of the heroes renowned for valour and for generosity.

And when the Sultan heard of what 'Esedu'd-Din had done, he equipped the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bitc to make a foray to San'a'. 'Esedu'd-Din then retired from his camping-ground, and went into the country of the Sherifs, after which no banner was ever set up for him. The 'Emir 'Alemu'd-D(n brought back his own camps to Birash, and the 'Emir 'Escdu'd-Din remained a wanderer between Dhafar and Dhafer.⁵⁸² Subsequently there befell him a grievous calamity, to such extent that he sold his clothes. Then he wrote to the Sultan a letter in which he said : " If I am eatable, then do thou be my eater; or otherwise, hasten thou to my rescue, ere I be torn in pieces ! "

So the Sultan sent 'AHyy son of Yahya and the 'Emir 'Abdu'llah son of 'Abbas to the 'Emir 'EscduM-Din, who ceased not to be with him until he went down with the two to the Sultan. The 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya. was sent to him by the Sultan solely on account of the friendship and devotion which he knew to exist between them. So when the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din reached the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din, he wept in his presence, complaining of the imprisonment of his father and brother. But the former remarked : " Maybe that thou canst be more useful to them when near at hand than at a distance ; and perhaps also we may look for an opportunity from fortune, when so and so may take place." And this was reported to the Sultan, who was then in the capital city of Zcbid.

So when they arrived at Zebid the Sultan gave orders for the seizure of both the 'Emirs, 'Esedu'd-Din and Shemsu'd-Din, whom he caused to be bound and sent to the fortress of Ta'izz. On this event the Judge Siraju'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of Da"as composed the following pair of distichs :—

*" In the whirligig of the days it has never occurred from all
eternity, in any wise, and it has never come about for the
nations in the indefinite lapse of past ages,*

That a solar eclipse at one and the same time ivitli a hmar eclipse should happen at the instant of the suns descent into Leo."⁵⁸³

When the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Di'n entered where he found his father, his paternal uncle, his brother, the son of his paternal uncle, the son of his brother, and Muhammed son of Khadir, they set to reproaching him and accusing him.^{r)84} So he said to them : " O people, be ye not like unto the damned in hell, who, each time that any one nation entered therein, cursed their sister nation ! "⁵⁸⁵ And they never departed from that prison, until they were called away to the mercy of God, who be exalted.

And when the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahyd was taken into custody as we have related, he then holding San'a' as his fief, the eunuch Nidhamu'd-Din Mukhtass went up immediately after to reside in San'a', the camps returning to Qidda,⁵⁸⁵ Birash, and Dhafer. Next went up afterwards Firiiz, who stayed but a few days. Then went up the 'Emir Hiba son of Fadl to collect the revenues, which he performed with the most complete success, taking also possession of the fort-castle I.Iasira⁵⁸⁷ in the month of Rejeb (June, 1260), which the sons of Wehhas had built, and which was demolished after being delivered over. The castle of Qidda was occupieJ in Dhu'l-Hijja of the year (November, 1260).

In Muharrm of the year 659 (December, 1260), the Sultan, on whom may God have mercy, received possession of the castle of 'Uddan,⁵⁸⁸ and next, in Rejeb (June, 1261) he received from the Sherif 'Ahmed son of Muhammed the 'Aliyyite, the castle of Birash, giving him in exchange Masna'a and 'Azzan in the land of the Himyer,⁵⁸⁹ with money to boot.

In the month of Ramadan of this year 659 (August, 1261), the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite went up to San'a' as feudatory lord thereof with its dependencies, the sovereign travelling cortege having already been organized to proceed to Mekka the Honoured for the performance of the incumbent rite of the pilgrimage. It set forth from the castle of Ta'izz in the

month of Shewwal (September) of the year, the Sultan having with him at sea and on shore as his alms to Mekka what God alone can know. He travelled by land, may God have mercy on him, while the ships kept abreast of him by sea with stores and provisions. And when he drew near unto Mekka, which may God protect, the two Sherffs, 'Idris son of Qatada and 'Ebu Numeyy son of 'Ebu Sa'd son of 'Aliyy son of Qatada, went forth therefrom, out of fear for him. He then entered Mekka with his troops and his levies, offering prayers, and ejaculations of obedience to God's call, in humility and with supplication, bareheaded and with an uncovered side, until he had performed the due amount of circumambulation.⁵⁹⁰ The troops and the levies then advanced and pitched their camp ill Mount Hajun.⁵⁹¹ He ceased not until he had fulfilled what was incumbent on him as to the stay and standing up at Mount 'Arefa^{f192} on the eve of the day of sacrifices, he staying in the locality of the Rocks 'Es-Sakharat.⁵⁹³ His sacred banners were *seen* floating aloft, and those of the lord of Egypt. Then said unto him the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam :

f. 74 " And wilt thou not make thy banners be seen to float, O our lord the Sultan, in advance of the banners of the Egyptians?" But he answered him : " Dost thou suppose that I will leave in the rear the banners of a prince who yesterday defeated the Tatar, and that I will advance my banners because of my presence?" Then he proceeded with his pilgrimage until he had completed it. He then made for the sacred fane, and what had been unlawful for him became lawful.⁵⁹⁴ And he never ceased during the space of his stay to perform his evening devotions upon the cupola of the Zemzem well,⁵⁹⁵ to circumambulate the fane on arriving and on departing, and to act as a servitor thereof, handling the broom, taking the water-skin under his armpit, washing it, and then anointing it with precious unguents.⁵⁹⁶

" (*This is*) a station where a lord of greatness is entitled to approach with the manners of humility ;

*Where we have seen a prince, lord of a proud excellence, 'Ebu 'Umer,⁵⁹⁷ possessed of the fortunate portion, like copious shedding of tears ;
Humble, abashed with fear of God, and who never before then was startled."*

He afterwards remained in Mekka ten days subsequently to the pilgrimage, to distribute his pious alms, until his charity had penetrated every house in Mekka, and had become universal to every pilgrim according to their various degrees. And he set forth the pilgrim-caravan of Egypt with life-giving generousities, with provisions and with saddle beasts. He dressed the fane with curtains, he bestowed honours upon the chiefs of the sacred precincts, and scattered gold and silver over the revered house.

And when he had resolved upon his departure, the blessed columns went forward to the well known as 'El-Beyda⁵⁹⁸ Then he bade farewell to the fane, weeping and supplicating God's assistance, so returning happily and approvedly. Neither did he cease from undertaking kindness and diffusing beneficence at every camping-place until he arrived in his own country.

(f. 74")
f. 75'

In the year A.H. 660 (A.D. 1261-2) the Sultan came back from his pious pilgrimage, entering the city of Zebi'd in excellent condition and with great pomp in the month of Safer (January, 1262). The Sherif Yahya son of Muhammed the Sirajite had called the people to his standard (as 'Imam) in the district of Hadiir and surrounding parts towards the end of the year A.H. 659, and the bulk of the population of those localities had obeyed his summons. So the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite had gone forth against him, springing upon him like a cat. His followers fled to the remote pasture-lands, and the 'Emir returned to San'a'. The Sherif journeyed to the country of the Benu Fahim, who took him and gave him up to the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din, who seared his eyesight in Dhu'l-Hijja, 660 (October, 1262).

(f 75^b)
f. 76^a

And in this year A.H. 660 died the Sheykh, the excellent Principal, 'Ulwan son of 'Abdu'llah son of Sa'id the Jahdcrite,

the Medhhijite,⁵⁹⁹ well known as the Kurdite, by nickname. He was a Qil⁶⁰⁰ prince, of the Qil princes of Yemen, and an unique one among the notable Sheykhs of the age. He was noble, valorous, enterprising, hospitable, ready at spear-thrusting, continent, persistent in seeking for future reward and eulogy. He possessed an immense district in the east of Yemen, namely, Hujr⁶⁰¹ and its dependencies. He seized upon many castles; among others, Artisan, Wa'l,⁶⁰² Nuweyra,⁶⁰³ and Na'mdn⁶⁰⁴ to the east of Jened. He waged war on the princes of the Ghuzz,⁶⁰⁵ who could never gain an advantage over him. The Sultan Nuru'd-Din, in his day, had pitched against him several times with feudatories from among his 'Emirs, whose kettle-drums, when the time came for the roll-call to be sounded, caused the earth to quiver and men's souls to quake. Then would 'Ulwan say to his people: " Men of Medh-hij, be not afraid ; they are but the skins of bullocks ! " There is a poem by him, instigating to a war against the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, where he sings:

*" Whoever may have forsworn warring against Nuru'd-Din
througJi affright, verily I, so long as I live, will never
forswear it"*

He wrote to Sultan Melik Kamil of Egypt, asking assistance from him for his war against Nuru'd-Din, and he helped him with considerable sums of money. But the Sultan Nuru'd-Din ceased not to coax him, and to play off against him all kinds of allurements, until he was brought to him a prisoner, when he confined him in the jail of Habb. So when he was in the prison he humbled himself exceedingly unto God, who be extolled, and in prayer with all sincerity. And it is said that he saw in his sleep a speaker who said to him⁶⁰⁶: " Pray thou unto God in these words : * O our Lord God, verily I beseech Thee, for the sake of what Thou didst reveal unto Jesus of a knowledge of Thee, and of what Thou didst impart unto him of Thy names, with which he ascended to Thy heavens, as also of what Thou didst teach him respecting Thy lordship

and Thy unity, that Thou wilt only loose my captivity by Thy mercy.'" So he repeated this until he had it by heart, and he ceased not to pray with this supplication for days and days, until God set him free and restored to him his castles. One of his good deeds was the following practice: Whenever intelligence reached him that an orphan maiden had arrived at a nubile age without being married or sought in marriage, he used to propose to her himself and prepare for her a sum of money worth consideration.⁶⁰⁷ When he had been closeted with her he would give her a divorce, and this he would sometimes do without their being alone together. She would then be sued for, either for the money or from a fancy to become her husband after him. Such was his custom. Then when Sultan Nuru'd-Din died and his son the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer came into the highlands from the low country, he asked him for aid in the capture of Ta'izz. So he advanced to him with something like twenty thousand foot of the men of Medh-hij. He was also an eloquent poet, who indited elegant verses. Of his metrical composition is the following:—

" For, by God, I -will not adopt as my home a land of which the mere earth is musk, if my portion therein be shared with others.

And why should I make it my home, my possessions being ample and my daily bread dealt out from the horizon of heaven ?

I trust not the days, which are but borrowed, and likewise the nights, which are but anxieties.

And ivhen the nights have broken their promise to me as to what is above the sod, then in the Ever-Permanent is my trust." lv

Of his poetry is also what he sings :

" When the word of God has gone forth (and His word in His sure scripture is truth as the kingdom is His by the verse on the kingdom), saying,

'He is the Exaller of whomsoever He will, and the Abaser of whom He will! then how can I cavil against His sure word by doubt ?

f. 77^a *And as to thyself why, abandon thou it through anxiety and trouble, for thy greatest relief is such abandonment, God being for thee.*

For, to command belongs solely to Him who created mankind and hath made them traverse the expanse of ocean in ships ;

Who was their Producer without a former existence, as He is their Destroyer by death after their successive multiplication.

Then complain not thou to his fellow of what befalls thee from an unjust man, but lay thy complaint before Him who will do thee justice!'

When he renounced a wrong idea and his renunciation was effective, he thus reproached his inner man :—

" *Verily my surmise, mere error and play, was that indeed we two were in the period of tender youth ;*

But when grey hairs came over me, and childishness came to an end, I reflected, and that error had not left me ;

But said: ' Yea; but I have seen thee to be at tunes in the one of two moods that agrees with me.'

So I replied to it: ' There is no welcome for thee after that; and verily I am from myself a divorced one, son of a divorced one.'

And it answered: ' We have heard that which thou hast sworn concerning us, but how many similar things hast thou not spoken that were not sincere ?'

*So I said; ' What! after divorce?' And it answered me: And what divorce is therefor women already divorced? **

Then I said to it, 'I have a protector against thee who will protect me'; and it answered, ' Who is he?' I then replied: ' The Lord of Might, my Creator i'

And a sound one undertook (to argue) in its favour against me. Then I said: ' This is not valid. Get thee, then, in all haste towards every prevaricator.' "

His poetry is abundant, and his Diwan is a stout volume, the greater part of which is remarkable for the soundness of its *dicta*. It is rare to be met with.⁶⁰⁸

In the year A.D. 661 (A.D. 1262-3) the Sultan made himself master of the castle of Jahiliyy⁶⁰⁹ by purchase from the Sherif 'Ahmed son of Qasim the Qasimite, in the month of the first Rebi ; and next he received possession of the castle of Shewafi⁶¹⁰ in the month of Rejeb (May, 1263). The divinely assisted forces then marched, in Shewwal (August, 1263), to the fortress of Dhemermer,⁶¹¹ where his camp was in the White Tower, with another in the Red Tower, a camp on the mount of 'Ibnu Si'bcnna, and a camp in Mama. Then came to him the 'Emir 'Izzu'd -Din Muhammd son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, and the 'Emir Izzu'd-Din Iliba son of Fat 11, who offered to the people of Dhemermer a hundred thousand ducats, the castle of Burullus,⁶¹² the castle of Qidda,⁶¹³ the vale of Dhahr,⁶¹⁴ and besides these clothes and other presents ; but they would not accept. Then there befell them a malady, the like of which had never been heard of. Whenever anyone was seized with it all his teeth would fall out ; so he would remain for about a fortnight, and then he would die. A great number of them perished thus in a short time.⁶¹⁵

And in this year A.D. 661 (A.D. 1263) the Sultan sent the suit of curtains for the fane at Mekka, and another suit for the Holy Chapel (of Muhammed's tomb at Medina), upon the occupant of which be the most excellent of gratulations and greetings.⁶¹⁶

In the year A.D. 662 (A.D. 1263-4) the Sultan obtained possession of the castles of the Himyeriyy people.⁶¹⁷ He also obtained the castle of Mida'⁶¹⁸ from the Benti Wuheyb,⁶¹⁹ to whom he gave in exchange the castle of Beyt 'En'um⁶²⁰ and a sum of money stipulated by them. So the 'Emir 'Alcmu'd-Din went up to Mida' after the divinely aided forces had enteted it, among whom, as captains, were Hasan son of Bchram and Muhammed son of Wesi', with others. The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam had already raised up the Sherif

Huseyn son of Muhammed the 'Attarite, and had asked him for support in the hope that he would create a diversion for the people of Dhemermer and them of Mida'; but he had no opportunity to effect this, and there was no return of God in the 'Imam's favour with aid and success. So when the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din had taken possession of the castle of Mida', and the Benu Wuheyb had received their castle, with the money they had stipulated for, sixty thousand pieces, regret for what they had done *fell* upon the Sherifs, and they saw they had made a mistake [corrected from "it became apparent to the Sherifs that they had met with a loss "⁶²¹].

The august commands next came to the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite to advance against 'Ibnu-'Aqass and Zahir⁶²² so as to capture them both. Their surrender took place in Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year 662 (September, 1254), and the divinely aided forces reached Sa'da in Dhu'l-Hijja there of.

In this year died the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan⁶²³ son of 'Aliyy son of Resul in his prison, and he was buried by the side of his father at 'Akkar²⁴ by his own desire. He was a brave, cntcrpiising horseman, of whom there was no equal in his day. His reputation renders eulogy needless. He it was who built the mosque at 'Akkar by the side of the tomb of his father Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Resul, and who created for it a mortmain trust of a full amount, instituting therein an 'Imam, a Mu'edhdhin, a professor with students, and a steward. His trust estate sufficed for the maintenance of the whole of them, as also to feed whoever came as a guest to the mosque; and it endures to the present time. But God knows best.

In the year A.H. 663 (A.D. 1264-5) Muhammed son of Wisluhi the Shihabite was put in prison; and in the month of Sha'ban (May, 1265) the fortress of Dhemermer was surrendered to the Sultan by the inhabitants thereof by reason of the straits and sufferings to which they were reduced. They asked to be amnestied and admitted to companionship, going down to the royal gates. So the Sultan granted them twenty-six thousand pieces of money, and made them an alms of the castle of Qidda.

In the month of Ramadan he received possession of Great Fass,⁶²⁵ and then the castle of Birash of the Baqiriyy⁶²⁶ was taken possession of in Dhu'l-Hijja (September, 1265) by Muhammed son of Miqsal the Wuheybite.

In the year A.H. 664. (A.D. 1265-6) the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din Bek-Temir Qallab advanced with the divinely aided forces, and pitched against Masna'a⁶²⁷ and 'Azzan.⁶²⁸ Then the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of Yahya son of IJamza, and also the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din Ahmed son of Muhammed son of Hatim, asked for assistance from the Sherif Mutahher, as did also the people of Beyt 'Erdem'"" when Muhammed son of Wisrlh was put *in* prison. So the Sherif Mutahher went up to the castle of Tawila.⁶³⁰ The 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite then went forth and pitched in Rukham,⁶³¹ despatching troops to the Ma'zib⁶³² and to Mount Toys,⁶³³ which they overran, and he fortified a spot above Tawila named Ghurab-Wakin.⁶³¹ They remained overlooking Tawila about seven months. In the month of the first Jumada the Sultan obtained possession of the castles of Masna'a and 'Azzan. He made a present of thirty thousand pieces to the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of Yahya son of Hamza and to Shuja'u'd-Din 'Ahmed son of Muhammed son of Hatim, and they delivered up the two castles. And what two castles ! Together they are the two shoulders of the towering peaks of Yemen, the two horns of the fortifications of the land of Himyer;⁶³⁵ no one has ever breached them, and no grasping prince had ever coveted them. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Fulcyt⁶³⁶ had pitched against them with the forces of Egypt and Yemen ; but he was scarcely able to save his own life, except after the pillage of his camp and of all in it, ballista, armoury, provisions, and stores, after he had disbursed against the two two hundred thousand golden ducats. The surrender of the two, and also of Deman,⁶³⁷ was in the first Jumada, 664 (February, 1266). After them the Sultan received possession of the lesser Fass⁶³⁸ in the month of Ramadan (June), and of Beyt 'Erdem⁶³⁹ in Dhu'l-Qa'da (August). He next took possession of the Qufi⁶¹⁰ and of

Shemsan⁶¹¹ from the Benu Shihab ; and lastly of Lijam,⁶⁴² also in that month, by purchase from the children of the Sherif (ff. 84-86) Suleyman son of Miisa.

f. 86^b In the year A.D. 665 (A.D. 1266-7) the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din Bek-Temir Qallab was killed. The Sultan Melik Mudhaffer had commissioned him with the edification of Zahir,⁶⁴³ and had despatched with him a hundred horsemen and five hundred foot, when the Sherifs of the house of Hamza attacked and killed him, with a part of his followers who happened to be with him. This was in the month of Sha'ban (May, 1267); and when he was killed the remainder of his followers took refuge in Bereqish.

111 The command of our lord the Sultan went forth for the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite to advance to the district of Dhahir with his forces; and the divinely aided troops went up to the district of Hajja, where severe combats took place and the matter became serious. The sagacious command and judicious view gave occasion for the ascent of the prince Melik 'Eshref 'Urner son of Yusuf⁶⁴⁴ to the district of Hajja, in order to quench the fire of this sedition. So he set out with his divinely aided forces, until he pitched in the fauces of Dhena'ib⁶¹⁵ in the camping-ground of his grandfather Melik Mansur. He then directed the leaders of his forces into Hajja, where they laid siege to the castle of Mubyin,⁶⁴⁶ in which was the Sherif Mutahher. When the siege became very much straitened around him he went forth humbled, and the divinely aided troops possessed themselves of the castle, which Melik 'Eshref commanded to be laid waste forthwith, and it was totally demolished accordingly. After the conquest of Mubyin, he directed his efforts against the fortress of Mikhlafa⁶⁴⁷ in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja, 665 (September, 1267). This consists of Mewqir,⁶⁴⁸ Qurada,⁶¹⁹ 'Akad,⁶⁵⁰ Kahlan,⁶⁵¹ and the three Gharaniq.⁶⁵² And there was an immense conquest for him in Hajja and Mikhlafa, such as had not occurred to any one of the princes before him, save to his grandfather Mansur. God's mercy be upon them both. The conquest of Hajja took place

in the month of Ramadan, 665 (June, 1267); that of Mikhlafa in Dhu'l-Hijja of that year (September).

In this same year A.D. 665 the Sultan proceeded to the country of the Jahafil,⁶⁵³ Dethfna,⁶⁵¹ and its neighbourhood. 87^a They had been committing various depredations; so he slew a number of them, when the remainder tendered their submission, dismounted from their horses, and were cowed into giving proofs of good behaviour. So the Sultan returned from their country triumphant and successful.

Thus sang Oasim son of Tluteyiriil, eulogizing the Sultan and felicitating him upon his success :—

" Say, O Zephyr, to the people of the wild lote and gum-acacia scrub : ' What repelled your gossip from that night-chat ? ' And expound thou the tale of the euphorbia-hushes and of the alighters there, and shouldst thou be wearied with the exposition of the whole, then do thou abridge.

And bring thou, of the fragrances of our clan, what the perfumed borders of thy skirts bear of the musk thereof

I conjure thee by God, withhold none of the news of what thou hast done, but garble not in the recital.

Thou hast set forth thy hint. What thou hast whispered is a secret; saving that thou art on thy guard against the maligner.

What has become of the stream bed of the valley ? Have its cotton-plants come into season for a successive yielding of this fruit ?

Or shall we drive away the hearts of camels frantic with burning thirst from its copious milk or from its dark water ?

Oh the hand-grip of fraud ! A young damsel has cheated me, and I have sold her my heart through the false pretences.

She passed the night threatening me with separation, in her wish to kill me ; but she left no sear on my heart, and became not detested.

Limber of stature, neither too tall nor too short, but between tall and short;

*A female genie ; in the absence of the sun the force of bashfulness
veils her from her own mother and father.*

*A Hurt; the marvels of her joyousness and her sheen testify that
she is not human ;*

*As though, in her composition, she were carved by a turner out of
the semblance of the sun, or of the moon ;*

*A body more diaphanous than a veil, enclosing a heart harder in
flintness than a rock.*

*When her eye shoots forth glances from the bow of her eyebrow,
she strikes thee dead by a shot from a stringless bow.*

*Oh how pleasant had been life, were it not for an ailment by
which she dooms to an end of wretchedness through an
agony of hell-fire /*

*Stand thou aloof then, from men; and, in assigning their
respective pre-eminences, examine thou their natures, but
look not at their forms.*

*And shouldst thou covet daily bread from the hands of a king, ask
it first of God, and then at the hands of Umer; ⁶⁵⁵*

*A lord of princes, who, if weighed against his finger-nail, are of
less weight than that finger-nail.*

*A most mighty one, whose adornment from his ancestral lustre
is as the beauty of steeds with their frontal blazes and stars.*

*A successful one, his hand comes not from a combat, save with its
finger-nails tinged in success.*

*It batters the hill-forts and the low valleys; through him by
sunlight invasions are night-raids rivers.*

*He rests not; and with him one campaign eventuates, through
the vastness of his views, only in some other expedition.*

*His sacrificial offerings, like those of the Apostle of God, follow in
the path traced out by the family of God's Apostle.*

*Such is his determination that each point of its keenness is more
penetrating than death, and more inexorable than the decree
of Providence.*

*If the awe of him, or one jot of the awe of him, had been cast on
the revolving sphere, it had never revolved.*

He hath recalled to life the Tubba⁶⁵⁶ and the 'Edhwa⁶⁵¹ (kings

of Yemen), so that the sovereignty of Qahtan ⁶⁵⁸ over (the sons of) Mudar ⁶⁵⁹ hath encompassed equity.

And he hath cavalcaded through the land, until the inhabitants thereof have said: ' This is the successor to Dhu'l - Qarneyn ⁶⁶⁰ and to Khadir' . ⁶⁶¹

Verily; the Khalifa ⁶⁶² hath become widowed; the Princes of the House of 'Abbas and of the Tatars have disappeared therefrom.

And if thou seek a fight towards that which is debarred from a spouse, well, thou hast already found the two wings of a bird; therefore do thou wing thy flight. ⁶⁶³

This is thy shirt, whether it be rent in front like (that of) the son f 88 of the prophet, or whether it be rent from behind. ⁶⁶⁴

Therefore bestir thee thyself for its virginity ; and know that if thou neglect it thy act will be one of the mortal sins.

And I opine not that the spear of time, if tried by a thruster at me with it, will miss the groin.

May Dethina be congratulated! Verily, God hath compensated her for the waning-moon nights with the brightest mid-lunar and crescental effulgencies. ⁶⁶⁵

Their two strongholds rendered the jahafil tribes presumptuous, and they knew not that glass has not the strength of rock.

Thou sentest forth a thunderbolt in a flashing cloud that increased and lightened with peals of rainless thunder.

So they surrendered their chargers, taking to asses in lieu thereof. Marvel thou, then, at their weaponless ones on asses.

Thou hast blinded them, whereas they had hoped to escape one-eyed ; and who prefers blindness to one-eyedness ?

They came to thee, O thou Sun, in troops, having already tendered unto thee the dominion over their females and their males.

Lend ear: ' Mayst thou ever be defended from the claims of rivals for the sovereignty, shielded from jealousies! ⁶⁶⁶

Verily, I am a man in whose mouth there is a watering, and in whose liver is a rankling, through a disobedient lord.

Already have I experienced of the cares of the world and its Iv

*pain, that through which the burden of patience is as aloe.*⁶⁶⁷

*If the aged camel grumble, examine thou what ails his withers ; for verily, if he growl, he growls from a gall.*⁶⁶⁸

And do thou regard me with thine eye of compassion, desiderating by that look the service of God alone.

*And cloak thou over, of information received, what is interlarded with devilish suggestions, such that its suggester may make thee oblivious of the interpolated state of the information."*⁶⁶⁹

(ff. 88^h-91ⁿ)

f. 92^b And in the year A H. 666 (A.D. 1267-8) the Sultan took possession of the castles of 'Ulwan the Jahderite, which are "The Two Spouses " ('Arnsau).⁶⁷⁹ And in the month of Jumada the latter (February-March) of that year the sacred commands came to the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite to proceed to Sa'da. He set out, therefore, towards it with five hundred horsemen and three thousand foot, pitching his camp in the Jewf, and then advancing towards Sa'da. The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam, also, collected the whole of the sons of Ilamza and an immense array. Among them was 'Askcr son of Sinjer, and among them were footmen innumerable for multitude, who took up their headquarters in the Ravine of the Wateiwheel (Naqilu'l-'Ajela),⁶⁷¹ a difficult place, in which there was but one path, which they occupied with horse and foot.

So when the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din arrived at the said ravine and encamped in the lower part thereof one morning just after sunrise, he breakfasted, and the whole of his people breakfasted also. He then tarried until the hour of the noontide heat, when he disposed as a garrison in the camp the 'Emir Ibnu Buz with two hundred horsemen and a thousand foot. The horsemen then put on their accoutrements and mounted the ravine, but no one could find a way, by reason of the narrowness of the place, its steepness, and the throng of troops therein. When the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Di'n Sinjer the Sha'bite perceived this, he advanced with a considerable force of the horsemen of his cavalry and the picked men of his foot, proceeding by a different

IV

f 93^a

route. The enemy became not aware of this until he came upon them in their rear. There then came against him the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Hamza son of Hasan son of Hamza, who was at that time incontestably the champion of the sons of Hamza. And he was the first of them to be overthrown. After that the forces of the Sherifs were defeated, and 'Asker son of Sinjer was slain, who was a valiant horseman. So they turned back in retreat, their military band being taken, and the divinely assisted troops pursuing them.

The 'Emir Dawud son of the 'Imam took the direction to Birash⁶⁷² of Sa'da, while the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din entered Sa'da, being preceded by the head of the Sherif Hamza son of Hasan son of Hamza and the head of 'Asker son of Sinjer. He laid waste in Sa'da a number of places, proceeding thence to the districts thereof, which he devastated also, while his people pillaged whomsoever they found in the canton of Sa'da. He returned then to Sa'da, where he sojourned some time and took his road back in triumph ultimately to San'a', as a victor. Wr

And in this year A.H. 666 (A.D. 1267-8) the Sultan gave orders for the adornment of the door of the Cubical House (Ka'ba) with gold and silver by the hand of 'Ibnu't-Ta'izzî.⁶⁷³ There arrived also an envoy from the lord of Egypt to Yemen with letters and presents.⁶⁷⁴ The envoy died in Yemen towards the end of the year.

In it there died also the eunuch Nidhamu'd-Din Mukhtass⁶⁷⁵ the Mudhafferitc, who had been a slave to Ghazi son of Jibra'il, f. 93^b and then served under the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, who made him governor to his son Mudhaffer. Him he educated in the best manner, and instructed in all polite learning. And when the dignity of the sovereignty descended to the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, he conferred upon him a military band, bestowing on him also several magnificent fiefs. He was fully worthy of the honours showered upon him, being brave, enterprising, and of exalted purpose. He was animated with a desire to merit an eternal reward, as well as a lasting reputation, being bounteous in his alms and building a number of colleges. His

foundations continue to exist unto this present time. Among the establishments instituted by him is the Nidhdmiiyya College in Zebid ; and also the mosque known as the mosque of Sabiq the Nidhamite, from the name of a slave of his ; also a college Dhu Huzeym,⁶⁷⁶ one of the cantons in the vicinity of Ta'izz. There is also a college of his at Dhu Jibla,⁶⁷⁷ and another in
 148 a place known by the name of Wahs, which is in a spot near to the castle in Bahrana;⁶⁷⁸ but God alone knows best.

And in the year A.H. 667 (A.D. 1268-9) the Sultan received possession of the castle of Birash of Sa'da from the 'Emir Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, after the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din had given as hostages his son and his daughter.

After this the order came to the 'Emir 'Alcmu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite to encamp against Thula. He pitched, therefore, a number of camps against it. This was in the month of the former Rebi' of the year (November, 1268), and he took Thughayra⁶⁷⁹ by assault, sword in hand, and placed therein a garrison to hold it.

And in this year A.H. 667 the 'Emir Musa son of Resul, and the 'Emir Mughultay, one of the Bahriyya Memluks,⁶⁸⁰ marched from the sacred gate (of the Sultan) with the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, with troops, to encamp against Telmus.⁶⁸¹ And when the siege became distressing around Thula" and Telmus, the Shcrifs and the Doctors of the Zeydiyya sect congregated about the 'Emir
 f. 94^a Sarimu'd-Din Dawtkl son of the 'Imam, and begged him to send forth Hasan son of Wehhas as a relief to put a stop to those two sieges. So he sent him forth reluctantly. The Shen'f 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'lkih son of Tayyar went forth with him to his own castle, Mi'qa'.⁶⁸²

So when their forces were united they marched towards
 149 Sa'da and made a night attack on the camp pitched against Telmus, so that Mughultay with the Memluks were driven in disorder to Felola,⁶⁸³ where the men of Khawlan granted them protection and travelled with them on the road to the Tihama.

But as for Musa son of Resul, he took refuge with a party of Arabs travelling towards Nejran⁶⁸⁴ The Sherifs received intelligence of this, pursued and overtook him with them. They put him to death as an insult below the castle of Telmus in the middle of the month Jumada the first (January, 1269).

The Sherifs now returned from Sa'da, collected immense forces, and marched against 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite at Thula, who came down from his camp. The reason of this was that the site was very broken ground, on which cavalry were uselebs, so that he feared for his garrison. He therefore descended, and brought them down also. Then the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din entered Thula to 'Abdu'lkih with a numerous body of infantry. The 'Emir 'Alemu'd Din retreated to Shibam,⁶⁸⁵ and retired thence to San'a', which he entered in the month of Ramadan (May, 1269). Afterwards the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din went forth to the Upper and Lower Dhahir districts, completely devastated them, and returned to Sai'Va'.

And in this year A.H 667 (A.D. 1269) the lord of Egypt performed the pilgrimage at Mekka, he being Melik Dhahir Ruknu'd-Din Beybars Bunduqdariyy,⁶⁸⁶ going from Egypt to Mekka the Honoured, may God have mercy on him. And in it also died the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din 'Umer son of Yusuf Zeyn, the half-biother of Melik Mudhaffer on his mother's side.⁶⁸⁷

lvb

(ff. 94^b95
f. 95^b)

In the year A.H. 668 (A.D. 1269-70) the 'Emir 'AletnuYl-Din equipped an expedition to Sa'da, which he entered on the 3rd of Safer (1st October). And in the month of Sha'ban (April, 1270) peace was concluded between the Sultan and the Sherifs, the sons of Hamza.

(ff. 96-97)

And in the year A.H. 669 (A.D. 1270-1) the Sherff 'Idri's, lord of Mekka, was killed ; and after him 'Ebu Numeyy son of 'Ebu Sa'd son of 'Aliyy son of Qatada was installed as governor, and remained there as such until he died in the month of the latter Rebi' in the year 700 (December, 1300).

f. 98'

In the year A.H. 670 (A.D. 1271-2) the supreme command came to hand for the siege of Thula to be resumed a second time. The camp was pitched over against Jcnab,⁰⁸⁸ and they

f. 98^b

blockaded the people of ThuM, pressing them and distressing them until they saw distinctly that they would perish. And the Sultan obtained possession of the castles of the Masani',⁶⁸⁹ which were sold to him by one of their slaves named Muhammed son of Qufl.

f. 99^a And in this year A.H. 670 (A.D. 1271-2) arose the 'Imam 'Ibrahim son of 'Ahmed son of Taju'd-Din the Hedewite, his uprising being in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja (July, 1272). He called on the people to recognize him, and he was obeyed by the inhabitants of Hadur, by the Benu'r-Ra'i, the Benu Shihab, and others of the countries of 'Ans and Zubeyd.⁰⁹⁰ Then the Sherffs and the 'Imam went up into a mountain named Tiba,⁰⁹¹ the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din being in Jenab. He moved thence to his camp, and pitched beneath the castle of Kewkeban, The Shen'fs, too, moved from their camp to the hamlet of the Bcnii Shihab.⁶⁹²

Therein died the jurist 'Ebu 'Abdi'lladi Muhammed son of 'Umer the judge. His birth was on Thursday the 18th of Shcwwal, in the year A.H. 591 (about 10th September, 1195). lie was pressed to undertake the office of judge after his father; but he refused. The Sultan Melik Mudhaffer used to venerate him and put faith in his piety. Sometimes he used to visit him incognito in his house, and frequently used to ask for his prayers. He died after the noon-worship on Monday the 25th of Shewwal in this year (about 1st September, 1272). When the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer heard of his decease he wrote to the children of the jurist, entreating them to bury him in the mausoleum that stands to the south of the mosque of 'Udeyna⁶⁹³ in the city of Ta'izz, which they did. None had previously been buried therein save those intimately connected with the sons of Resul, such as relations, concubines, and young infants, their children.

In this same year A.H. 670 (A.D. 1271-2) died also the eminent jurist Yahya son of Salim son of Suleyman son of Fadl son of Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah the Shihabite, the Kindite. His father emigrated with him from the country of the Benu Shihab

to Dhu Jibla, where he settled and where his son studied jurisprudence, the said Yahya. He used to consort with Reshid, the chief Registry in the Supreme Court of the Mudhafferian realm. When Reshid died, it was whispered to the Sultan that this jurist had in his possession property belonging to Reshid. He was therefore sued for twelve thousand sequins and put to the torture.⁶⁹¹ He died not long after of rage at this treatment, in the evening of Tuesday, 27th of the latter Rebi' of the year (about 5th November, 1271).

In it, A.H. 670, died also the jurist and learned 'Imam, 'Ebii 'Aliyy Yahya son of 'Ibrahim son of Mi'akk, who was one of the doctors of mark. At first he was a chieftain in his tribe, engaged in horsemanship and caring nothing for the acquisition of learning. The reason of his taking to study science was that he asked in marriage a woman of the Benu KhattAb⁶⁰⁵ tribe, a daughter of the jurist 'Ebu Bekr son of Khattadb. The jurist refused to marry him with her, saying to him : "Thou art not her peer ; for verily thou art an ignorant man." He was pricked by this remark, and took to seek for learning until he became an 'Imam. He then busied himself with letters, and became a proficient in syntax, lexicology, pedigrees, prosody, and the like, so that his name became a proverb for a good neighbour, a man of his word in whatever protection he promised to refugees. There are anecdotes current about him in this respect, too numerous to be mentioned here. He was brave, enterprising, generous, munificent, and an eloquent poet with a good diction. He composed several panegyrics on the Sultan Mclik Mudhaffer. He also compiled many books on syntax and other subjects. Among his literary works is the book named 'El-Kamil, on prosody and rhymes, which is a work of great authority ; also those entitled 'El-Wafi, 'El-Kafi, etc. His books are the best compiled by a native of Yemen, as to investigation and research. Of his poetry, also, is what he indited in praise of blackness, which is as follows :—

f. 99^b

VA

f. 100^a

" Repeat thou unto me thy tale on the day of Kethib,⁶⁹⁶ and console
 thou me therewith of my saddened heart.

She came forward one dark evening, to steal glances at me from
 near at hand,

When I felt safe from the ambush of the rancorous, from the
 eavesdropping of tale-bearers, and the eye of the rival.

She appealed unto us from among the spaces between the tents,
 trailing on the ground the redundancy of her new mantle.

She showed us her musky locks and the ridge of her nose
 slantingly, straight as a wand, swelling as a sand-hill.

Born among the daughters of the slave-girls, like a faivtl,
 strange, but house-nut tared.

Now, should mankind reproach me as to my love for her, my
 reproacher would never, to all eternity, be right.

They say: ' A black girl! ' But were they only just; and
 what would it cost were they just to the disparaged one ?

For, were there no blackness, and the marvellous beauty of
 mystery wherewith God hath endowed it,

It would never have dwelt in the centres of the eyes, nor would
 it have been in the cores of the hearts ;

Neither would the mole have adorned the cheek of the stripling,
 nor would tracery have embellished the tablet of the sage.

Is not the Stone of the Comer-Pilaster⁶⁹⁷ the best of all stones ?

Is not musk more fragrant than all other pet fumes ?

Is not the delight of mankind, in their generation, in the eulogy
 of youth and the dispraise of /wariness?

100b The eye is not admired tvlun the eyelids are void of stibium⁶⁹⁸ ;
 nor the palm of the hand when untinged with henna.⁶⁹⁹

Neither is every eye like the eye of the lover, nor every heart like
 the heart of one's beloved!

He united in himself the two primacies, that of religion and
 that of the world, being also held in great honour by princes.
 It is related that there was once in his village a stranger, one
 who had sought asylum with him, and connected with him.
 This man undertook to make a journey to certain localities, and

hired a beast of a relation of the Sheykh to go to the place desiderated. The two journeyed together, and when they were on their way the man of whom he had hired the beast murdered him, took possession of all he found on him, and returned to the village, as though he had done nothing. Information of this reached the jurist Yahya, who was pained thereat, but bided his time. So when the day of rendezvous was come, and the people were assembled in the market-place, he gave orders for the murderer to be seized. He was seized accordingly, and brought bound before him. He ordered him to be executed; so he was put to death in the market-place on the evidence of witnesses.⁷⁰⁰

When the jurist had set about studying the sciences, and the fruits of his efforts became manifest, he again sued for the daughter of the jurist 'Ebu Bckr son of Khattab, renewing his request to be united with her; to which her father now gave his consent. She bore him a number of children, and never left him until death separated them.

In the year A.H. 671 (A.D. 1272-3) the 'Imam 'Ibrahim son of 'Ahmed son of Taju'd-Din sent the Sherif Jemalu'd-Din son of Muhammed son of 'Abdu'lilah to Hadur, to the country of the Benii Shihab, and to the country of the Benu'r-Ra'i, who met him with their submission. His arrival in their country was in company with seven individuals, and he performed public worship with the people on the first Friday in the month of seven thousand.

And in the same year A.H. 671 (A.D. 1272--3) the Sherifs quarrelled with the 'Imam, betaking them to Suleyman son of Musa. They were the people of Jehran, to whom the Sultan, to whom God be gracious, had given in fief the cantons of Dhcmar, receiving from them afterwards Lijam.⁷⁰¹ The Doctors of the Zeydiyya sect rose with them in that canton, and they marched with immense multitudes to Dhemar, which they entered by force, killing a number of the garrison whom they found therein, but granting safeguard to the remainder. They devastated it most completely; and this took place in the month of Jumada the first (December, 1272).

180

f. 101^a

181

The 'Imam Ibrahim and the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam, as also the 'Emir Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of Shemsu'd-Din and the rest of the Sherifs, marched in the desire to reach Hadda and Siba'.⁷⁰² So they passed by at speed. And there was no one in San'a' but the son of Nejah with a hundred horsemen of the Sultan's forces. The Sha'bite and his array were in camp at Jenab through fear for the garrison of Thula. So the Sheriffs turned aside from San'a'; and when the night was drawing to a close, the 'Esediyya⁷⁰³ troop entered it, who had been in the camp of the Sha'bite, ninety horsemen, the pick of the forces of San'a', foot or horse.

The Sha'bite then went up with the remainder of his forces, passed on to the camps blockading Thula, reinforced them, marched to Shibam, and from Shibam to San'a', where a sanguinary combat ensued between him and the Sheriffs, who then levied an immense force and marched therewith against the son of 'Abdu'lkih. He decamped from Thula, and marched with his force towards Dhirwa,⁷⁰⁴ in which was Word son of N.Vji, who had not had time to complete its fortifications. He therefore made an attack upon them as the night drew to a close, devastated it, and returned to his companions in Siba'.

The circumstances of the time called for the advance of the Sultan with his household troops to the neighbourhood of Dhemar. When he arrived there the inhabitants of the canton came to meet him, in love or in fear, in the month of Sha'ban of the year 671 (March, 1273). He abode in Dhemar a certain number of days, and gave orders for the restoration of its coveied way (*derb*). He then advanced towards San'a', and encamped in the fortified suburb (*derb*) of 'Abdu'llah. The Sheriffs then retreated to Beyt Khabbid,⁷⁰⁵ and the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite went up against them, upon which there took place the battle of Beytu't-Tahim.⁷⁰⁶ The Itenu Safiyyi'd-Din killed the Sherifs and a number of their troops in the month of Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year (May-June, 1273). The Sultan then advanced into San'a', occupying the public parade-ground (*Meydan*) in Dhu'l-Hijja (June-July).

And in this year 671 (April, 1273) the Sultan sent the draperies of the Honoured Temple (of Mekka) in the charge of Qasim son of Mahfudh.⁷⁰⁷

In the year A.H. 672 (A D. 1273-4) the Sultan Melik Mudhaffar entered San'a' on the 18th day of Muharrem (5th August, 1273), taking up his abode there. And the Shen'fs marched to Hadiir, where the whole of the inhabitants joined them with acclamation, and they encamped against 'Azzan,⁷⁰⁸ causing great distress to those in it, so that a parley was held for the surrender of the place and safe-conduct for the troops therein. The garrison therefore came down, and the Shen'fs took possession of the castle. f, 102^a

Immediately after this, 'Ahmed son of Jabir arrived and began to negociate a peace between the Shen'fs and the Sultan in especial, but also between the 'Imam and the whole people in general. So the Sultan proceeded to Yemen in the month of the first Rebi' of the year (September, 1273). 14

He now detached his divinely aided forces against Beyt Khabbul, which they took by assault. The troops found therein a large quantity of wine, the jars of which they broke and allowed it to run to waste.⁷⁰⁹ The capture of Beyt Khabbul took place on Friday, the 30th of the month of the first Rebi' of the year (about 15th October, 1273).

And when the Sultan's forces entered Beyt Khabbid the Sherifs decamped from Hadda and Sibd', which the Sultan caused to be totally devastated, and their trees to be cut down. Among these were some ancient trees, about two hundred years old, not one of which was left standing. It is said that a certain almond-tree was lopped of its head, when there was found within it a marble tablet, on which was written : " I was planted in the year forty⁷¹⁰ of the Hijra." f 102^b

The Sultan then commanded that a certain mountain called the Peak of 'Anter⁷¹¹ should be planted and built on for habitation. He named it Dhafar,⁷¹² and he fitted it with all kinds of stores. He then journeyed with his camp to Safiya⁷¹³ on his return to Yemen in the month of the latter Jumada of the year

672 (December, 1273-January, 1274), the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite travelling- in the august royal suite as far as Dhemar, where the 'Emir halted and the august cortege continued its progress towards Yemen.

And in this year A.H. 672 the 'Emir Husam son of Bcdhliyy set up a claim to Beraqish, and seized upon it, he being its governor. The Sultan detached therefore the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite to that place, and commanded the 'Emir 'Erdem to remain in waiting at San'a'. 'Aliyy son of Hatim proceeded to the Beraqish in company with the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Di'n, and opened a correspondence with Husam son of Bedhliyy, taught him what action to adopt, and promised him the Sultan's favour. He abandoned him not until he had obtained for him somewhat of the Sultan's bounty and also one of the castles of the Benu'r-Ra'i, named Masna'a.⁷¹¹ The 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din. received possession of Beraqish, and returned to San'a'. After this, peace was made between the Sultan, the 'Imam, and the rest of the Shcrifs. Peace also took place on the part of the Sultan in favour of the 'Emir Muhammed son of Hatim son of 'Amr son of 'Aliyy the I Temdanite. There chanced, immediately after this peace, an expedition of the Shcrifs into Nejran ; and in it was killed the 'Emi'r 'Alemu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Wehhas. They who killed him wcie of the Yam⁷¹⁵ clan.

f. 103^a And in this year A.H. 672 died the Sheykh 'Abdu'l-Wehhab son of Yusuf son of Izzan the Ghirniqite. lie was a Sheykh, a Jlead-Professor of note among the class, valiant, enterprising, generous, munificent, awe-inspiring to his foemen. He had been made Governor of the land of the 'Awadir⁷¹⁰ at a fixed amount of revenue payable to the Sultan, and his beneficence was great. He built a college⁷¹⁷ in the castle of Dhafer, and endowed it richly, naming to it a professor and students. He was given to the use of intoxicants, and on one occasion he went from his own country as a visitor to the jurist 'Umer son of Sa'id the 'Uqaylite. When he entered the mosque to the presence of the jurist, he bound his handkerchief to his own neck and then to the foot of this latter, saying : " I will not loose it until thou

give me a pledge⁷¹⁸ to repent, and a warranty against wine-bibbing." The jurist then exhorted him to forsake his design, but he would not. He then complied with the Shcykh/s request and administered to him a pledge of repentance. This was in the month of Ramadan, and it became the means of his reformation. It is related that when the day of the Festival⁷¹⁹ was come, he made preparation to drink a little wine which he had laid in store for that day, and gave orders for it to be brought to him. He took the goblet in his hand and raised it to his mouth, when he felt on his back the stroke of a scourge as though of fire. He then cast away the goblet out of his hand, kicked the vase in which was the wine, broke it, and gave instant orders for a crier to proclaim in his country the unlawfulness of wine, showing great severity in cases of its being drunk. After that, he never drank an intoxicant. He performed the pilgrimage at Mekka this year, A.H. 672 ; and having completed its rites, he went forth with the desire to visit the grave of the Apostle of God, on whom be the salutation and greeting of God, at Medina, on that sojourner wherein be the salutation. And when he had entered Medina he took up a post at the station for visitors at the sacred mausoleum, and several present heard him exclaim : " O thou Apostle of God, I am a refugee unto thee from the unrighteousness that recurs to me ; O my Lord God, suffer me not to return unto it." So he died as he was returning on foot from his visit to Medina. His companions took him up as a burden, returned to Medina, and buried him in the Baqi cemetery⁷²⁰ in the midst of the companions of the Apostle of God, on whom be God's salutation and greeting, in this said year. May God, who be extolled, grant him grace!

181

f. 103^b

In the year A.H. 673 (A.D. 1274-5) there ensued a great dearth in the land, and there died of mankind a whole universe innumerable ; and men ate beasts that had died without being slaughtered in the canonical manner.⁷²¹

And in the month of the latter Rebi a party of retainers of the cattle-breeders (Khawwaliyyun)⁷²² seized the castle of Kewkeban and made themselves dominant there. Then was

the head of every mischief-maker lifted up, and the rabble rose in tumult for rebellion.

f. 104^b In the year A.H. 674 (A.D. 1275-6) the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bitc went out to the canton of Dhemar to collect the revenues due to the Sultan, leaving the whole of the 'Esediyya slave-guards in garrison at San'a' under Tbnu'l-Ghalldb. Only
 1AV one single man out of their number marched with the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din. There befell between this one man and a certain Dawi, one of the slaves of the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din, a quarrel over drink. And Dawi killed him during the march of the 'Emfr 'Alemu'd-Din to Dhemar, the homicide then taking to flight. So soon as the 'Esediyya slave-guards heard of the murder of their comrade, they mutinied and quitted duty. They had formerly shown signs of presumptuous overbearing; so
 f. 105^a they broke out in rebellion against the Sultan, and took possession of San'a', seizing all the property of the Sha'bite in the place. This happened on the 24th of the first Rebi" (about 18th August, 1275).

They wrote to the 'Imdm and to the Sher/fs to come and join them. So the Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah joined them on the 27th with seven thousand footmen, he having been in Mount Hach'ir. Afterwards came also the 'Imam and the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam, the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din, and the rest of the Sherifs, who entered San'a' on the 5th of the first Jumdda of the year 674 (about 1st November, 1275), there taking up their abode. On the Friday following the 'Imdm rode in state to the cathedral mosque of San'ci', and ascended its pulpit. The Mu'edhdhin, too, proclaimed from its minaret the formula: "Come to the best of action."⁷²³ For there was mixed within them an immense deal of contentiousness and presumption.

"And liad they known the latter end of the matters, they had asserted the commencements thereof with caution, and had cast away presumption.

But that which is providentially ordained overpowers the man of intelligence, and despoils him which his projects are intent on despoiling"

And they became unanimous as to issuing forth from San'a' to advance to Dhemar. Perhaps they even coveted what was beyond Dhemdr. Then the 'Emir' Aliyyson of 'Abdullah rode one day to the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Dm Dawud son of the 'Imam, and they held a council about their matters. The 'Emir Dawud said : " Verily I perceive you, O ye Sherifs, since you entered San'a', inclined to ease and supineness, while your minds suggest to you an expedition to Dhem.lr, and even to Yemen for warfare against the Sultan ; which is a pernicious idea. If you first reflect on your own affairs, and then think about an expedition to Dhemar, it will be wiser. Be you not led into over-confidence by those inept fellows⁷²⁴ who have already formed part of your array. For, by God, should they smell the odour of Melik Mudhaffer and see the flash of his lightning, verily the inward truth of their case would become manifest to you. Now, I have to ask you : Have you seen one single man come to join us from Hemdan,⁷²⁵ who are the chief part of the inhabitants; and will anyone join them⁷²⁶ from San'a' after our having evacuated it? Did you not give commandment unto them⁷²⁷ to troop to us ; and did they not say they would not so troop to us until we had passed through their *country*, and when we had passed through it there came not one of them to join us? So was it also with Sinhan.⁷²⁸ Is this anything else than watching and waiting, and seeking for information of what will come from Yemen? Melik Mudhaffer will not abandon his dominions nor his city. What, then, is it that preoccupies him and prevents him from setting out and coming up? Look you, then, to your own concerns."

f. 105^b

Then answered unto him the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'lhih : " It is for thee to give consideration unto all our concerns, and we are in thy hands." So he said : " By God, verily you all shoot from one same bow ; your 'Imam and his followers from

among you, Arabian or Kurd."⁷²⁹ The other then asked : " What, then, is the plan thou wouldst recommend us to pursue ? What is best to do ? " Then he answered : " The best is that you adopt one of two alternatives : first, we must either remain in San'a', we being three hundred horsemen ; and each day we must surprise at day-dawn a village of Hemdan or Sinhdn until they enter into subjection to us, humiliated and cowed ; or, secondly, we must go foith to some one who will eagerly receive us, and we must evacuate and lay waste San'a'. Then, we being three hundred horsemen, with five thousand foot, we can capture any tribe towards whom we turn our steps, and we can take refuge in some stronghold and secure fastness ; therewithal, no one will advance against us, and no one will enter San'a' while we maintain this aspect."

f. 106' The two now arose and went forth to the 'Imam. So after this, there was no course left but to go forth to the canton of Jehran and the annulment of the proposals of the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din. So the 'Imam went forth to the parade-ground ; after which the whole of them marched to the Khawlaniyy well,⁷³⁰ proceeding thence to 'Umriyy⁷³¹ below Kcmim.⁷³² And when they had pitched their tents at 'Umriyy, the 'Imam gave orders to the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Rashid son of Khalid son of 'Atwa to advance to Khidar⁷³³ and raise up his maternal uncle, the Sheykh Husam son of Fad I, with all his followers of the Sinhan tribe. So he proceeded immediately to the said Sheykh, who, when he arrived and informed him of the message from the 'Imam, answered : " We will make no delay in joining the 'Imam." He therefore passed the night at the Sheykh's. And when there had elapsed rather more than one-half of the night, there came a messenger from the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer with a letter for the Sheykh Husam son of Fadl, in which was written : " Its departure is from Haql, and we are on the march to San'a', if God so will. And we intimate unto you to come and join us, warning you not to place an overweening confidence in those Sherifs." The hand of the Sheykh Husam son of Fadl became as it were paralyzed ; so he went in to 'Aliyy

son of Rashid, awoke him from his sleep, informed him of the Sultan's letter, and said to him: "Arise, proceed to the 'Imam, and inform him of this ; for there remains not unto us a junction with him."

When 'Aliyy son of Rashid reached the 'Imam, he informed him of the news. So the 'Imam called together the whole of the Sheri'fs, and communicated the intelligence to them. They were struck with consternation, and said to the 'Emfr Sanmu'd-Din : " What dost thou piopose now ? " He answered : " I gave you my opinion in San'a', and you accepted it not. At this moment I command you not to persevere nor to remain inactive. If you persist, you are not safe from defeat; and if you desist, to desist is a defeat of itself. But mount this moment before the news becomes publicly known of the Sultan's ascent." So the whole of them set out from 'Umriyy, and they went down to the ravine of Gha'ira.⁷³⁴ Then the news became generally known of the Sultan's approach, which threw them into consternation and bewilderment. The ('Esediyya) slave-guards then returned to San'a'. After which the Sheri'fs advanced and encamped at a ford, marching; to 'Ufuq⁷³⁵ early on the Thursday ; their purpose was to march early on the Friday to Jebjeb.⁷³⁶ So the 'Emir Tzzu'd-Dm went forth with sixty horsemen to seek for intelligence. And they came and saw that the Sultan's array was already encamped in Dhemar. So they made a raid with their horsemen around the outskirts of the camp. But the Sultan commanded that no one should go forth against them, and forbade anyone to mount his horse. So the Sheri'fs returned to their camp at 'Ufuq, and reported : " We encountered the Sultan ; but no one came out against us. The probability is that the camp is weak." Thus they passed the night in their camp rejoicing.

f. 106^b

And when the day-dawn broke on the Friday, they had not collected their senses when a single horseman from the corps of cavalry appeared in sight. On this the Sheri'fs mounted, not doubting but that it was a foray with intent to [surprise](#) and spoil them, in return for their expedition of the day before. So

the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din mounted with about forty horsemen, ordering the camp to await in expectation of his return. And nothing could be quicker than his return. So they collected around him and asked of him : "What news?" He answered : " Here is Melik Mudhaffer behind me with his troops and his forces." So they asked : "Then what is you" opinion?" His answer was: " I see no other course than to stand firm and fight, for this is a decisive day." He then called the people of 'Ufuq and said to them: "Tell me, where is the strategical position of your district?" And they answered him : " If you hold fast by this mound, you need fear nothing." So he said, "I will hold the mound " ; and he ordered the 'Imam to remain in the castle, so that should a defeat be suffered he would be far from the fray.

f. 107^a Now turn we to consider the action of the Sultan. When he pitched his camp in Dhemar there joined him the 'Emit* 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite, who said unto him : " O our lord the Sultan, to-day is Friday, and these Arabs do not hold their worship to be valid unless it be after the 'Imam. If, then, **11r** our lord the Sultan delay to attack them until after the Friday congregational worship, there will collect unto them an innumerable array, and their fighting will be all the more obstinate." But the Sultan answered him : " Leave them alone ; for verily we do not desire bloodshed on a Friday's congregation day. And in whatever state they may be they will be defeated." But the Sha'bite would not accept this answer from him, but arose, left him, and assembled his forces, who took up their weapons and made their way past the door of the tent of the Sultan. The Sultan sent to him to stop, but he would not. So he continued his march toward them with his forces. The Sultan then bestirred himself, gave orders for his troops to mount, and advanced towards 'Ufuq.⁷³⁷

'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite now pressed forward, threatening the mound on which was the 'Emir Dawiid son of the 'Imam. The troops then advanced, following one another in succession. Lastly appeared the Sultan upon the Black Mountain⁷³⁸ in

a body of his troops and forces, so that it was as if the mountain were enveloped in white raiment which covered the whole of it on all sides. And when the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Dm attacked the mound with his forces the Sherifs were routed, and the troops gathered in an enormous booty. The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Dm Dawud son of the 'Imam escaped, as did all the family of Hamza, after severe suffering.

The divinely aided troops surrounded next the 'Imam in the castle, making him prisoner, and killing a number of those who were with him. Amongst these were the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of Muhammed son of Hatim, and the Wezir of the 'Imam, the Judge 'Ibnu 'Ebi'n-Nejm. The Sherifs were crushed in those valleys ; they abandoned their camp and everything in it ; they dismounted from their horses, leaving these standing and netting in halters. The troops brought the 'Imam and other prisoners to the Sultan.

And when the 'Imam came before the Sultan bareheaded, he saluted and offered congratulations on the victory. The Sultan, too, congratulated him on his safety, receiving him with honour and cordiality. He also commanded to cover his head. A number of the slave-guards had begun to crowd round him, but the Sultan rebuked and reprimanded them. He gave him a she-mule to ride on, and used to journey between him and the Intimate⁷³⁹ Baha'u'd-Di'n until he came with him to the castle of Ta'izz, when he consigned him to the house of detention. Here he was unceasingly treated with honour and respect, every day there being assigned to him ten royal ducats, food morning and evening, with clothing for himself and for those with him, concubines and servants, in all sufficiency.

f. 107^b

It was a saying of his: " In the Sultan's peace there has arisen for us an ability to do without waging war on him." He also wrote over the door of his suite of rooms :

" These are the alighting-places of generous chieftains, the station of a comprehensive munificence and security ;

The two pavilions of Khawernaq⁷⁴⁰ and Sedir⁷⁴¹ fail short thereof, as also that of Dhu'sh~Shurufat⁷⁴² of (the) Sindad (palace)"

He ceased not to live in his apartment with every attention and respect until he died at the date that will be specified, God so willing, who be exalted.

(f. 108^a. ^b) And when the 'Imam 'Ibrahim was captured, the Sherfis
f. 109^a wished to set up the son of Wehhas as 'Imam after him, but he disapproved. Then, when the Sultan returned from Dhemar, he assisted 'Alcmu'd-Din with large sums of money, who marched to San'a'.

f. 109^b And on the day of their defeat the road taken by the Shcrffs was that of the Ma'azib⁷⁴³ tribe, where great losses befell them, and they journeyed to the castle of Redman,⁷⁴⁴ known by the name of the Khawwaliyyun, which was in the possession of the Shen'f 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'lhih. There they sojourned awhile, and the 'Emir Sdrimu'd-Din entered into correspondence with the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya, to invite him to the Tmamship. When he joined him he constrained him to assume the office, and he therefore proclaimed himself, inviting adherents, upon which the whole of the Zeydiyya sectaries gave in their assent. So the Sherifs remained awhile in the country of the Benii Shihab without any rule.

Consequently upon this, correspondence was opened between
the Sultan and the 'Emir Sdrimu'd-Dm, which resulted in
a peace between the two. So the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din turned
out the 'Imam Mutahher and the Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah,
with the idea that they should hold the castles and do battle therein. The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah therefore used to pass from castle to castle, being sometimes in Kewkebdn,
(f. 110^a) sometimes in Redman, and at others in Qahir⁷¹⁵ or in 'Azzan.

f. 110^b And in the year A.H. 675 (A.D. 1276-7) the Sultan received possession of the castle of Reshsha⁷¹⁶ in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja.

In the year A.H. 676 (A.D. 1277-8) the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite pitched his camp against the castles of Hadur,

viz. Qahir and 'Azzan. The Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah asked for aid from the Sheriffs, but not one of them gave him succour, save the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya, who raised a large force and advanced against the Sha'bite in his camp. He was at Raid⁷⁴⁷ and his troops arrived at Qahir, but they were unable to attack 'Alemu'd-Dm in the camp.

And when they saw that their affairs were declining, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah asked for an interview with the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Hatim, and talked over with him the question of peace. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din said: "Obtain ye for me from our lord the Sultan a hundred thousand ducats, and give me a hostage from among you for the delivery of the money." And they ceased not until they agreed upon the payment of two thousand ducats, the evacuation of the castles, and their surrender. So the matter was settled on those terms, and the heralds proclaimed an amnesty for them, on which they surrendered the whole of the castles of Hadur. In the month of Ramadan the Sultan was put in possession of the castle of Redman, from which went forth such of the Sherifs as were in it. The Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah returned to Dhahir, and the 'Imam to the Ma'azib.

f. 11 p

(f. 111' »;
f. ..2' :')
f. 113'

In the year A.H. 677 (A.D. 1278-9) died the most noble and great 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of the great 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of the most noble and great 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Resul the Ghassamte. He was one of the most perfect of the sons of Resul, in religion, braver), munificence, and elevation of views. He was a mighty and strenuous hero, whose prowess became a proverb. He used to grasp an iron stirrup and crush its parts together. He it was who threw an iron mace at the crescent that was on the minaret of San'a', and caused it to fall down from where it was fixed. He was noble and generous. Seldom did a man have recourse to him without his granting his request, and lavishly bestowing his gift and bounty. Among his religious foundations are the college of his that stands in the city of 'Ibb, his college that is in Habbaliyy,⁷⁴⁸ in which is his grave

A and the graves of a number of his issue. He also built a dam in the village of Qirfa,⁷⁴⁹ and he assigned in mortmain for the whole liberal estates sufficient to maintain all. And when f. 113^b (his cousin) the son of his paternal uncle, the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, put him in confinement, he occupied himself with the science of Qur'anic recitation, inviting jurists to his place, to whom he would recite and on whom he would bestow bounty, especially the jurist 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy the Surdudic, who was then the chief Traditionist in the city of Ta'izz. Under him he studied a number of the traditions reported, and transcribed a quantity of books, codexes, and prefaces, giving them in perpetual trust to many an institution. He ceased not to follow this goodly course until he died on the 13th of Dhti'Mlijja of this year (about 1st May, 1279); may God's mercy be on him. He left a numerous posterity, and his children are among the best of the 'Emfrs. The most excellent of his sons was 'Ebu Bekr, who was perfect, wise, learned, and a good poet, a specimen of his verse being the following two distichs from a long poem that he wrote to his father, then in prison. God's mercy be on both.

" *Were I not to share with thee thy joy and ivoc; were I not to
feel each transport thou fcekst ;
Were I not to pass the whole of the long night sleeplessly ; then
should I not be thy child, nor thou my father?* ⁷⁵⁰

f. 114^a And in that same year A.H. 677 died the eminent jurist 'Ebu Bekr son of Yusuf of Mckka the Ilancfite, of whom Jenediyy has said: " Credible persons from among his associates have informed me that he said to them one day a short time before his death: ' I had a vision, which was as though the day of resurrection had set in, and the (four) 'Imams (of orthodox 'Islam) were made to be present before God, who be exalted. They are 'Ebu Hanifa, Malik, esh-Shafl'iyy, and 'Ahmed son of Hanbel. And the Creator said unto them, whose majesty be extolled : " Verily, I sent unto you one apostle with one law,

and you have turned it into four. Restore ye it." And this He repeated to them thrice, but no one answered Him. Then said unto Him 'Ahmed son of Hanbel: "O my Lord God, Thou hast spoken, and Thy word is the truth; none speak, save whomsoever the Merciful granteth leave to, and who speaketh aright." Then He said unto him: "Speak." On this he answered: "O my Lord God, who are Thy witnesses against us?" He replied: "The angels." He remarked: "O my Lord God, we have for us a valid objection against them, which is, that verily Thou hast said, and Thy word is the truth: 'And when thy Lord God said unto the angels, "Verily, I am about to place in the caith a substitute," they said: "Wilt Thou place therein one who will do wrong therein and will shed blood?"' Thus they bore witness against us before our existence." Then answered the Creator: "Your skins will bear witness against you." To which he replied: "O my Lord God, our skins used not to speak on earth, and they will speak this day under constraint; whereas the witness borne by one under constraint is not valid." Then said the Creator, whose majesty be extolled: "I will bear witness against you." But he replied: "O my Lord God, both judge and witness?" On which God said, who be exalted: "Get ye gone, for I have pardoned you." ⁷⁵¹

Again, when it was the 17th of the month of the latter Rebi' (about 10th September, 1278), a certain one of the godly in the city of Zebid saw in a vision that the minaret of the mosque of the 'Esh'ariyy tribe had moved from its place to a degree that it had got out from among the graves, and then disappeared among them. Our jurist died subsequently to this, the people went forth to his burial, and then the dreamer saw that the jurist was buried in the spot where the minaret had disappeared. He knew thence that it had been a symbol of the jurist, on whom be God's mercy. ⁷⁵²

(f. 114^b)

In the year A.H. 678 (A.D. 1279-80) occurred the conquest of the city of Dhafar of the Habudite, when the lord thereof, Salim son of 'Idris, was slain, and about three hundred men

f. 115^a

with him, while a great number of people were made captives. The cause of this was the outbreak of a great famine and general scarcity that befell the land of Hadramawt,⁷⁵⁴ the lord of which had recourse to Salim son of Idris, seeking from him the wherewithal to assuage the sufferings of that year with them. They surrendered to him the fortresses of Hadramawt, holding this to be seemly in respect of him, and acting thdein of their own inclinations towards him. So he complied with their request, and went forth with them to Iladramawt for the completion of what had already been commenced with. This was an undertaking in him for which there had been no precedent in the days
 f. 11 of any one of his ancestors, but he did not know their cunning and their deceit.

So when they had received from him the whole of that which they had sought, they delivered to him the fortresses, which he took over and then returned to Dhafar, imagining that he had made a good bargain and been successful; also, that Hadramawt would be in his possession and keeping. But when he returned to Dhafar the people of Hadramawt inclined with one sole inclination to their fortresses, which they took possession of with or without consent given, there being no obstacle interposing between them and the fortresses. So he was left without his property and without the country. He was nearly killed with his regret for having wasted his goods to no purpose.

Now it happened, through an inevitable dispensation of providence, that our lord the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, on whom be God's mercy, appointed an envoy to the princes of Persia,⁷⁵⁵ conveying magnificent presents; and a number of merchants accompanied him. The wind drove them out of their course and cast them on the coast of Dhafar, where Salim son of Idris seized them and took possession of all they had with them, presents, money, and meichandize, his greedy soul suggesting
 f. 115^b to him that this was a compensation for what had slipped out of his fingers in Hadramawt.

The Sultan sent a messenger to him on this account, and wrote to him, saying: " The custom with thy family has never

been in this wise, and we acquit thee of highway robbery, while thou knowest the relations current between us and thy father, as between us and thyself; also the written communications that have passed between us; besides our regulating our conduct by the maxims of the noble Qur'an, wherein God hath said : ' And We are not of those who inflict castigation before We despatch a messenger.'"⁷⁵⁶ Hut he increased in obduracy and folly, so that an answer came back in which he said : " The messenger is come, but where is the castigation ?" and other similar pieces of insolence.

After this there was nothing for him to do but to suborn the lord of Shahr,⁷⁵⁷ Rashid son of Sheji'a, whom he incited to rebel, and who inclined to him from a desire to escape payment of the tribute due from him to the lord of Yemen. That tribute was of a fixed amount, payable yearly to the state treasury. His death occurred through his vicious purpose.

" And the decision of every matter is with a strenuous Lord God. He failed not of success, save that he strove And flinched, whereas the arrows were sent, which swerve from him who moves aside to him whom they transfix."

Immediately after this orders were issued to the governor of 'Aden, the 'Emir Shihabu'd-Din Ghazi son of the Architect, to advance to the coast of Dhafar with the galleys and the foot-soldiers. So he arrived at Dhafar ; but there was no effective battle, and he then returned to the fortified city of 'Aden. And when the son of the Architect came back from Dhafar, Salim son of 'Idris put to sea, and his presumption suggested to him to carry pillage to the coasts of 'Aden, which was not disapproved of by the lord of Shahr. So his pillaging excursion by sea reached to the coast of 'Aden, the Sultan being then in Jened.

The populations were disgusted with this action on the part of Salim son of 'Idris, since the lord of India, or of China, or the princes of Persia, had never ventured on the like thereof. f. 116

And the Sultan blazed up with rage, his commands going forth for the construction of galleys, ships, and barges, as well as other kinds of naval transports. The august Court, too, advanced to the fortified frontier place of 'Aden. He expended gold and silver in quantity greater than the number of the pebbles, fitting out his 'Errn'rs, his captains, his divinely aided forces of cavalry and foot, so that he filled the land and the sea with horsemen and infantry, as well as munitions.

The expedition advanced in three divisions.⁷⁵⁸ One division went by sea, being the bulk of the foot-soldiers. Of them was the Sheykh Faris son of 'Ebu'l-Ma'ali the Jeza'irite, the Sheykh Muhammed son of Muhammed son of Naji, the Sheykh Humam son of 'Aliyy son of Ghawwas the Melikite, Shemsu'd-Dm son of Mekbus, the Sheykh Bcdru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Aliyy the Medhhijite, who had the greatest array of them all. The commander over the sea was the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Sunqur the Turunjulite, captain of the naval slave-guards.

f. 116^a The second division marched with the Sheykh Bedru'd-Din son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Amr son of Jened. These were the Arabs, and were three hundred horsemen. They marched by way of Hadramawt, forcing their way over the necks- of the inhabitants, as it was full of the castles of the Benu'l-Habudiyy⁷⁵⁹ and their confederates. There were not in that quarter any confederates of the Sultan, except 'Ebu Shemakh and Sheykh 'Amr son of 'Aliyy son of Mes'ud, in whom also there was a bias towards the cause of the Benu'l-Habudiyy.

f. 116^b Thus saith the author of "*The Necklace of Great Price*" ('el-'Iqdu'th-Themin): "The information reached me that the Sheykh Bedru'd-Din and his comrades never severed themselves from doing battle one single night until they had traversed Hadramawt; and his comrades ceased not to lag behind away from him until he reached Dhafar of the Habudite with one hundred horsemen and thirteen on foot after five months from the day on which they marched from San'a'." ⁷⁶⁰

The third division marched by way of the sea-coast. They were four hundred horsemen of the maritime slave-guards and

the body-guard of the Sultan. The commander of the slave-guards was the 'Emir Husamu'd-Dm Lu'lu' the Tewrizite, who was the Sultan's standard-bearer. The captain of the body-guard was the 'Emir 'Ebu Firuz, and the commander-in-chief of the whole was the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Di'n 'Er-Demir, the marshal of the household, to whom the Sultan said: "Thou wilt kill Salim, if God so will, who be exalted ; for verily I saw, in what the sleeper witnesses, an immense snake come out of a chink, and I said unto thee, ' Kill it, C) 'Er-Demir,' and thou didst kill it and didst return unto thy station."⁷⁰¹

And the path of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din was difficult and steep, for it lay over the summits of mountains, and over mountains of hills of sand. Therefore did he and those with him march in the slowest pace, while the ships in the sea sailed abreast of them. When the road led them to a distance from the coast, they suffered hardship and privations until a turn of the road brought them back to the coast. Then they had comfort, because they obtained from the ships whatever they wished for, whether corn, or dates, or any kind of pulse or culinary necessities ; as also every species of weapon, whether spears, or swords, coats of mail, helmets, or buff-coats, bows, arrows, shields, slings, horse-shoes, bridles, and every kind of furniture according to their several requirements; such as six catapults, with all their equipment, gear, legs, and stone projectiles.⁷⁶²

Saith the above-mentioned author: "It was communicated to me that there was lost overboard, sinking in the sea, a thousand packages, each package consisting of the largest size sack, with every kind of store, without the loss being felt. Then there were markets held continuously at sea, the same as the very largest fairs in cities ; and there were to be found all manner of cooks, bakers, and artizans."⁷⁶³ So each division ceased not to journey as well as it was possible for them to advance, until God brought them all together in one day above the port of Reysut."⁷⁶⁴ This is what is narrated by the author of the " Necklace of Great Price."

f. 117^a

۲۰۶

Then the naval transports advanced,⁷⁶⁵ such as galleys, preceded by smacks and hoys, as though they were eagles. Next the barges advanced, which are large ships, having in front of them other vessels, so that they resembled certain princes, swords being drawn, flags hoisted, and bands playing strepitously. And in that barge was the public treasure, amounting to four hundred thousand ducats, while of stuffs, such as bunduqiyy,⁷⁶⁶ susiyy,⁷⁶⁷ mewsiliyy,⁷⁶⁸ zebi'diyy,⁷⁶⁹ there was a quantity that could not be told. Unto God to recompense such a prince! His levies had filled the land and the sea; his gifts and his protection had extended over the Arabian and the non-Arabian,⁷⁷⁰ and, by God, verily he was worthy of what 'Amr son of Kulthum⁷⁷¹ said when he sang:

" We have filled the land until it is too narrow for us ; and we fill the surface of the ocean with ships."

And when the divinely aided forces were assembled at the port of Reysul the cavalry was of five hundred horsemen, and the infantry of seven thousand foot, who said to one another :

☛ "Ye have seen already what we have done in spending money and courting dangers; to hold back now would be in us incapacity and abjectness; nothing remains, then, but firmness and perseverance." So they marched until they reached 'Awqad,⁷⁷² one of the villages of Dhafar. There a false rumour was whispered among them that the cavalry of Hadramawt were arrived at Dhafar, as also the cavalry of Bahrevn. So they counselled together and said : " Verily they are come against us to do battle, and for no other purpose.¹" It never occurred to their imaginations that Salim son of 'Idtis would come out to them in the open. But while they were in this state of mind, lo, the forces of Dhafar advanced against them, having for their leader Salim son of 'Idn's. So, when the divinely aided troops saw them, they armed themselves to encounter him. Then he drew up in line of battle to meet them at a distance from the city, and they formed in line against him.

f. 117^b

The Sheykh Bedru'd-Din son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Amr son of Jened, with his comrades, was in the left wing, while the body-guard was in the right wing, and the 'Emu Shemsu'd-Din 'Er-Demir was in the centre. And nothing could be more expeditious than their joining battle with one charge, in which the Mudhafferian forces made a single rush and threw from their saddles about fifty horsemen. And then ensued the rout, none of the men of Dhatdr escaping, except those who were made prisoners. There were killed of them something like three hundred slain, while about eight hundred were taken and made captive. Of the slaves there were captured as many as God willed. Salim the son of Idris was included among the slain, though no one WAS known to have been his slayer ^{11d}

The mass of troops then made for the gate of Dhafar. The 'Emir Shihabud-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Er-Demir had been left by his lather in the camp ; and news came from him to his father and the other 'Emirs in the course of the night, as they were assembled at the gate of the city, telling them that the head of Salim son of 'Idris was in his charge. It is said: " Yes, his brother Musa first recognized his copy of the Qur'an and his whip, saying: 'This is my brother's Qur'an; and I cannot imagine my brother otherwise than slain.' So they sought him, and found him killed. Then they took him up and buried him, after they had cut off his head.

This encounter took place on Saturday, 27th of Rejeb, 677 (about 21st December, 1278). The people of Dhafar asked for an amnesty, which was granted to them by the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Di'n 'Er-Demir. The august Mudhafferian ensigns entered the city of Dhafar on Sunday, 28th Rejeb, when a general pardon was accorded to the whole of the inhabitants, and nothing was taken from any one of them. The preachers offered up prayers in the pulpits of Dhafar on Friday, 3rd Sha'ban (27th December), in the august Mudhafferian name and titles.

f. 118^a

And the forces of the Sultan took possession of the city of Shibam ⁷⁷⁴ in the Hadramawt territory on the 8th day of Ramadan (about 20th January, 1279). And on the 26th of

that month (about 7th February) the whole of the members of the Habudiyy family (Benu'l-Habudiyy) were taken from the palace of Dhafar by the 'Emi'r Shemsu'd-Dm 'Er-Demir, and sent to the court of the Sultan, who ordered their removal to Zebid. There they ceased not to live by the royal alms until the last of them came to his end, so that in these our days of the present time not one of them is left.⁷⁷⁵

And when the Sultan, may God have meicy on him, conquered the city of Dhafar at the date specified, as we have narrated, and Salim son of 'Idns was killed, the whole of the Qasiyya⁷⁷⁶ regions trembled through awe of the Sultan, while the hearts of the Piinces of Persia, as of the lords of India and China, were filled with fear of him, from what they witnessed of his soaring ambition and his great power of retaliation. So the lord of 'Uman sent with his present two horses and a pair of golden eagles to the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Er-Demir, who was then at Dhafar. There came also the presents of the lord of China. The lord of Bahreyn came himself to Zebid.

And the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm 'Er-Demir appointed in Dhafar a deputy governor, the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Sunqur the Turunjulite, with whom he placed also Husam the Tewn'zite and also a number of the Sheykhs of the Arabs and of the captains of the foot-soldiers, after which he returned to Yemen.

(ff. 118^b;
119^a)
f. 119b

And when Dhafar was captured, as we have narrated, Hadramawt became submissive, and the Sultan appointed as its 'Emir Muhammed son of Muhammed son of Naji, who resided there a certain space, returning then to Ta'izz. And it was asked of him: "How didst thou manage the people of Hadramawt?" He answered: "When I alighted at Shibam, a man named the Yemenite gave me trouble, who was the most powerful of them in infantry. He collected a large force to do battle with me, and I also drew together troops to combat him; then I procrastinated in my tactics until he had expended everything he had with him in money and kind, so that he had nothing left to him, whereas I had had recourse

f. 120^a

to our lord the Sultan. And when he found nothing more to expend on those who were with him, he came to me himself. When he had made his camel kneel down at my house-gate, and the usher came to ask permission, I told him to let him come to me. When he entered where I was, he said to me : ' Know thou that verily I. when I resolved to come forth unto thee, called as witnesses a number of members of my household to testify that I am under the safeguard of the son of Resul, and under thy safeguard, O Muhammed.' Then he continued : " I said to him : ' And they are both granted unto thee.' I then treated him with honour and showed kindness to him, placing him in an office that would maintain him. So he returned to his folk in good plight. Four clans did I deal with after that fashion, confronting them until they delivered themselves to me. After this no one raised his head against me of all the people of Hadramawt." ^{rn}

ru

(f. 120^b)f. 121^a

And in the year A.H. 679 (A.D. 1280-1) took place public rejoicings by the Court; and the Sultan, on whom God have mercy, invited the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite to the capital city Zebid. He also invited the whole of the Sherifs of the house of Hamza to the sacred court; but none of them came, save the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah son of Hasan son of Hamza and the 'Emir Tzzu'd-Din Muhammed son of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam Mansur 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza. The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam offered excuses, as did the rest of the Shafts. The 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din and the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din ceased not their visit to the sacred court on account of the rejoicings, as we narrated, and in consequence the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud seized upon their two castles. Unto 'Izzu'd-Din belonged Ta'izz of Sa'da.⁷⁷⁸ Therefore, the Intimate Baha'u'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Es'ad the 'Imninite went up as judge to try the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud, and he encamped at Jenab (with letter n), the 'Emfr Sarimu'd-Din being in Masna'a,⁷⁷⁹ the mountain that overhangs it. And on the third and fourth (days) the two had meetings, the 'Emfr

'Alemu'd-Din being in San'd', but nothing was settled between them. And the Intimate saw in them a disposition to procrastinate, and their reliance on the multitude of their forces, as well as on their unworthy acts, which angered him. So he wrote to the Sultan informing him thereof. And the answer of the Sultan came to say: "If they will not keep within what they have covenanted, then do thou cast the treaty in their faces, and announce to them the rupture of the peace." But the Intimate demurred as to the rupture, in the hope of their relenting. So he came back to Yemen.

And in this year A.H. 679 (A.D. 1280-1) the Sultan recovered the fortress of Kewkeban from the Khawwaliyyun for the castle of Redman and twenty-two thousand ducats.⁷⁸⁰

f. 121^b In the year A.H. 680 (A.D. 1281-2) the rupture took place between the Sultan and the Sherffs. Then the 'Emir Jcmalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah and the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed went down to the august court, and left it not until their affairs were decided on, namely, the surrender of their two castles, Miqa',⁷⁸¹ and Ta'izz of Sa'da.⁷⁸²

(ff. 122^a 124) They were both taken possession of by agents of the Sultan in Muharrem, the first month of the year 681 (April, 1282).

f. 124^b And in this latter year, A.H. 681, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah went up, and the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Di'n the Sha'bitc went forth with an array, the two marching together to the Dhahir country, where the 'Emir Alemu'd-Di'n the Sha'bite encamped over against Kewla,⁷⁸³ and began to restore it, the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din being with him, while the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah encamped against the castle of Kuhl and the summit (Dhirwa) of Upper Dhahir, both of which he captured in the shortest space. The 'Emir **ر**^ر 'Alemu'd-Dm returned to his camp, having already appointed lieutenants in Dakhsa,⁷⁸⁴ Hubsan,⁷⁸⁵ and Dhirwa,⁷⁸⁶ with full complements of troops. He next appointed the Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah to Kewla, with a hundred horsemen and a thousand footmen, assigning to him the command over all the garrisons. He and the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Di'n then went down

towards Suwana.⁷⁸⁷ The 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din did not remove his camp from Kewla until after a year, when the affairs of the garrisons were put in order over the upper section of the Dhahir country. He then moved to the lower section, and encamped in Suwana, he and the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din. And he repaired the covered way of Suwana, which lie supplied with stores, and in which he stationed the 'Emir Izzu'd-Din over the lower section.⁷⁸⁸

And in this year A.H. 681 (A.D. 1282-3) died the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Ahyy son of Yahya the 'Ansite,⁷⁸⁹ so called from his relation to the 'Ans clan of the tribe of Medh-hij (written with letter //), a gre.d clan among the clans of the Medh hij tribe, lie had been held in great esteem by the Sultan Nuru'd-Din, who gave him a military band and assigned to him rich fiefs. The Sultan Nuiu'd-Din was the son ot his paternal aunt, though some said the son of his sister, lie ceased not to be esteemed and honoured until (McIik) Alansur died and Melik Mudhaffer was established as sovereign He then went over to the party of the sons of his uncle 'EseduYl-Din and his brother Kakhru'd-Din ; and when Mudhaffer seized Fakhru'd-Din and imprisoned him, as we have narrated, he wrote to 'Esedu'd-Din, instigating him to rise and endeavour to release his brother from his prison, saying :

f. 125»

rii°

" *Hadst tJiou knozvn, O Muhammd, tliat ivJiich has happened,
thou hadst sent them forth scunying, their f01 clocks dis-
hevelled, themselves worn lean with hard trailh,
kine-coated, which thou mightest see drinking ivith their reins
on, as they cleave the deserts and the wilderness in their
course ;
That thou mightest smite with them the double ramparts of
TaHzz without their being shod, so that thou mightest
allege an excuse or confirm the family renown."*

To which the son of Da"as answered in verses still more beautiful, of which I will only give one specimen distich :

" Look thou at 'Aden, which has submitted to his command; to Tdizz, and to Mekka, the ¹ Mother of Cities! "

f. 125^b And when the poem of 'Aliyy son of Yahya came to the knowledge of the Sultan Melik Mudhaffcr he took no notice of it, and confirmed him in the condition in which (Melik) Mansiir had left him at his death. But in his mind he had a grand project. For when the year A.H. 658 (A.I). 1259-60) had come, and 'Esedu'd-Din had become wearied by reason of his long lesistance against the son of his paternal uncle, fearing also from the Arabians either to be murdered or made
 no prisoner, so that he sent to the Sultan, craving for peace, the Sultan then sent for the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Yahya, and despatched him to 'Esedu'd-Din to negociate a peace between him and the Sultan. wSo he went up to him as envoy for the purpose of that peace, and the two came down together, the Sultan being then at Zebi'd. When, therefore, the two airived at Zebi'd, he had a place vacated for them both in the palace, where the two took up their quarters. Then he issued orders for both of them to be seized in the latter part of that very same day; whereupon they were both seized and fettered. He sent them both to the fortress of Ta'izz, and they departed not forth from the prison until they both died. God\ mere)' on them both !

f. 126^a And in that year also, A.H. 681 (A.T). 1282-3), died the righteous jurist 'Abdu'llah son of Muhammed son of 'Aliyy son of 'Isma'il son of 'Aliyy the Hadramawtite, celebrated for his miracles. One of the strangest of these is thus related : " He was passing by the gate of the Sultan at Zebid while the full band was playing. It was a custom that no one should dare to pass by that place riding or on foot while it continued to play. But the jurist rode by without anyone saying a word to him. Those present were surprised at this."⁹⁰

And in the year A.H. 682 (A.D. 1283-4) the palace at San'a' fell down on the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite, who was killed, with a number of those who were with him, beneath the ruins.⁷⁹¹

The author of "The Necklace" ('Iqd) relates in his book, saying: " I was one of those present on that day in the room with the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din. I went in to him that day, and his room was in a throng with people. And his breakfast was brought in, of which the people ate with him. Their affairs being settled, they went forth, and there were none left in the room save the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din, his biother-in-law Muhammed son of Yezid, two young slave-boys belonging to the 'Emir 'Ebu Bekrson of 'Ammar, the 'Emir's secietary, the canon law judge 'Umer son of Sa'id, I, and my brother 'Aliyy son of I.Iatim. We lemaincd until the mu'ezzin announced the time for afternoon worship. The 'Emir arose and pelformed his devotions. He then returned to us and next said to his slave-boy : ' Bring water for the assembly to perform worship.' So we cleansed ourselves and went through our devotions, after which we returned to what wc were conversing about. We were aware of nothing until there came in upon us a cloud of dust through the lattice nearest to the 'Emir, of whom someone asked: 'What is the cause of this dust?' There was then scattered over us dust and earth from the ceiling. We now attempted to get out ; but the lower floor fell away from under us before the ceiling gave way. This was the last time that some of us were together. The downfall took place in the first part of the latter afternoon, and we remained beneath the mins until the time of sunset. I recited what I knew by heart of the Qur'an, and I prayed with what I could manage to call to mind of prayer, and I humbly offered supplication unto God. No other thought remained in my mind save that of death. I was only aware of shovels (at work) over my head, the sound of which drew near by slow degrees, until some people cleared away the rubbish from my head and face, when I invoked God, who be extolled. They then asked me as to my condition, and I answered : ' Please God, who be extolled, I am well.' They next asked me about the 'Emir, and I said: 'He is near.' They then took me out, and dug for the 'Emir, whom they found dead, a large beam having fallen on his head. And the

f. 127^a

digging was continued for the rest of the assembly, by which they extricated unhurt the judge 'Umer son of Sa'fd, though the others all perished. They did not reach the last of them until the night was drawing to an end."

At this date, therefore, occurred the death of the 'Emu* 'Alcmu'd-Din Sinjer the Sha'bite, who was a brave commander, an enterprising horseman, whose designs were elevated, and whose success was well known. His battles are generally known, celebrated, and talked of in Upper Yemen. He was religious, pious, and observant of the times of devotions, whether in the field or at home, in spite of the severity of the cold in the mountains ; so much so, that he used to say : " Xo one performs his devotions in the camp, save the 'Emir." And it was that if the band of his drawers, or his drawers themselves, were laid upon a woman in difficult parturition, she would bring forth her child immediately. lie was one of the slaves of Mclik Mes'ud Yusuf son of Mclik Kamil the 'Eyyubite. And he was named the Sha'bite because he was in the house of the slaves when young, and knew nothing of their libertinage or deviltry ; for which reason they used to call him Jctthro (Shu'ayb), that is to say, that verily he was very patient, having no connection with anything of the actions of the slave-guards.

When this great calamity took place, the inhabitants became excited in SanVi' and its dependent districts. Information thereof reached the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud son of the 'Imam, who collected his forces and the 'Esedivya slave-guards, having an idea of an attack on the 'Emir Jcmalu'd-Din 'Alivy son of 'Abdu'll.ih. The camps were therefore removed from Dhahir. Then the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din Beleban, the piivate secretary of the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din the Sha'bite, set out from vSan'a' with a hundred horse and five hundred foot to Hewn ;⁷⁹² and the spies of the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din came to him with intelligence thereof. On this he set out with his forces (or the Lower Dhahir and avoided the Upper Dhahir. He next advanced to Jewb.⁷⁹³ But when the troops equipped from San'a' reached the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Di'n, he made an excursion against

the 'Emfr Sarimu'd-Din at Jevvb, and then returned to Dhahir. After this the camp of the 'Emir Fakhru'd-Din son of Firuz, with the troops of Yemen, went up to San'a', and the leaguer against Dhahir was protracted a whole year afterwards.

And in this year A.H. 682 (A.D. 1283-4) died the judge 'Ebu 'Abdi'llah Muhammed son of 'Aliyy son of 'Ebu'l-Qasim the Riahite, who was a judge with whom men were well pleased, who was extreme in his abstemiousness, *in* abstention from all prohibited and doubtful things, and in his modeiation with respect to food and clothing. His original town was 'Ibb, where his father was judge. When his father's death was at hand, he cautioned his son Muhammed against the office *c*{ judge. So when his father died, he himself took no heed of the office, in compliance with his father's injunction to him. On this there happened to him many a piece of tyranny and suffering. Then his mother said to him : " O my son, get thee unto Seyr,^m and inform the Judge of Judges of the death of thy father and of what has come upon thee and upon thy brothers in the way of violence and tyranny ; for peradventure he will put thee in the position of thy father, when thou wilt be screened from oppression." He now proceeded to the Judge of Judges,⁷⁹⁵ and informed him of the death of his father, complaining also to him of what oppression had befallen him. The Judge wished God's mercy on the father, offering condolence to the son for his loss, and appointing him to his father's office. He now returned to the town, living there as judge and acting so as to give general satisfaction. When the judge of Ta'izz, the son of Ebu'l-'A'azz, died, the Judge of Judges sent to our judge and appointed him to the judgeship of the city of Ta'izz, naming also his brother to the same office in the city of 'Ibb.

The judge Muhammed son of 'Aliyy was learned, acting according to precept, strict in the performance of devotional duties, abstinent horn all things unlawful or doubtful, untiring in the service of the public, neither proud nor overbearing.

Thus say*, *Jencdiyy*: "A trustworthy informant told me he had heard from a ciedible person that he had seen the judge

fM

f. 128*

Muhammed son of 'Aliyy walking barefoot in the fierce noon heat of the day, his shoes in his hand, and going from the western district to the quarter of the poor in the city of Ta'izz." lie said further: "I said to him: '() my lord, why acetest thou thus?' He answeied; 'It has come to my knowledge respecting the Prophet, on whom be God's salutation and greeting, that he said: "Whosoever walks barefoot In the service of a brother Muslim shall have a great reward," or something to a like effect.'"TM

f. 128^b And it is related of him that he one day went forth barefoot and with his dress in disoider, when there met him one who knew him, who encountered him face to face, saluting, and who then walked after him, at an equal pace, to see where he was going to. And lo, he was going to the house of the treasurer of Melik Mudhaffer. And when he stopped at the door, the attendant went quickly to the 'Emir to inform him of the judge's coming. The 'Emir came foith in haste and kissed the judge's hand, saying to him: "O my lord, why ait thou come; and why not send to me that I might come to thee?" The judge answered: "I am better entitled to the divine reward; but if thou wilt assist me, thou shalt share with me therein." Then said the 'Emir: "And what is it thou desirest, O my lord?" And he replied: "The children of So-and-so have come to me and have communicated that thou hast imprisoned their father in the yard for stores, whereas they are poor and in need. It has also reached my knowledge that the Prophet, on whom be God's salutation and greeting, hath said: 'Whosoever walks barefoot and bareheaded for a service to a brother Muslim, God will give him a very great reward'; and for this reason am I come." Then answered the 'Emir: "O my lord, he is impiksoncd by the very command of the Sultan, and it is impossible to let him go forth, save after a reference." The 'Emir asked then for an inkstand and paper, when he wrote to the Sultan, informing him of the coming of the judge to him barefoot and bareheaded, and that he interceded for So-and-so, sending a messenger with the note. The answer

of the Sultan came back for the liberation of the man ; but the judge would not quit the house of the 'Emir, save with the man in his train. He was possessed of great credit and immense consideration with Mudhaffer on account of his piety and goodness

Another of the things narrated of him is that a certain merchant, being near his death, requested the judge Muhammed son of 'Aliyy to come to his house. When the judge was come to him in his house, he shut himself up with him in private, and said to him : "Verily I have built this place over my piopcrty to so great an amount that I can hardly tell the sum ; whereas, as thou seest, my children are infants, and there has come upon me that which thou witnessest. I cannot inform anyone of them, so I inform thee, in order that it may be a trust in thy charge." The judge said to him : " There is no harm in that." He then directed him to commit to some good man the trust of his declared estate. This the man did, and then died, leaving man)' children. These consumed what had been manifested to them of the estate left. They then wished to sell the house, by reason of the severity of their straits; but the judge prohibited them. They remained then for a time in that condition, after which information was given to him of their competency. He waited patiently for a time, and then commissioned someone to make inquiries about them, who found them to have attained to years of discretion. This he reported to the judge, who then paid them a visit in their house. They rejoiced at this, and begged him to enter, so that they might be blessed with his presence. He then said to the eldest of them : "Open thou this place." So he opened it, and that tieasurc was made manifest. The judge then said to him: "This was a trust with me for thee from thy father, that thou mayest therewith procure what is necessary for thyself and for thy brethren according to what is right." The children then begged him to accept therefrom a portion for himself, which the children would esteem as a part of their share ; but he did not.

f. 129*

III

It is related from the 'Emir Ghazi son of Yuniis the Ta'izzitc,

who said : " I was sitting at home in the days of my youth, when a summoner came to summon me before the judge. There came over me, thence, a great trepidation ; but this passed off away from me, through what I knew of the equity of the judge and his upright conduct. So I went to him. When he saw me he smiled ; and when I drew near to him I saluted him, and he returned my salutation with a radiant expression of countenance. Then he said to me: 'Had thy father any child other than thee?' I answered: 'No.' He now rose and entered his house, commanding me to enter after him. So I entered, and there was no one in the house. He went on in front of me until he came to the kitchen. When he had reached the middle, he went towards a certain spot and said to me: 'Open thou here.' So I opened, and there appeared unto me a vase, which I took forth, when he said to me : 'Open it.' And I found it full of gold. Then he said to me : 'Take thou this property and keep it for thyself, for it was a trust in my charge belonging to thy father, which I would not deliver to thee until after making inquiry concerning thee, and until I was informed that thou art discreet and of full age, thy father, too, having no other child than thee. And glory be to Hun who hath vouchsafed unto me a discharge from my trust ere I die.'" The anecdotes relating to him are numerous and well known.

rrr
f. 129^b

(f. 130^a)

f. 130^b

And in the year A.H. 683 (A.D. 1284-5) Melik Wathiq⁷⁹⁷ ascended to San'a, endowed therewith as his fief, and entering it on the 22nd of the first Rebi' of the year (about 10th June, 1284). He received possession of the castle of Hirash of San'a,⁷⁹⁸ and he seized upon the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Beleben the'Alemite, the private secretary, from whom had proceeded acts calling for this.

And when distress befell the affairs of the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Dm Dawud son of the 'Imam, he proposed to the 'Imam Hasan son of Wehhas to rise in rebellion with him ; but he returned a refusal to him. He then requested the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya to do so ; but he, too, returned a refusal. These

rebuffs arose from what they knew of his evil conduct towards the 'Imams and of his opposition to them. He now turned ' towards the son of his own brother, 'Ibrahfm son of the 'Imam 'Ahmed son of 'Ibrahim son of the 'Imam, who had already studied a small matter in science, but was not perfect in the duties of the 'Imdmate or of anything else. So he set him up as 'Imam and led him forth to Thula. With him he cast a fascination over the vulgar, and with him he drew together a large array, with which he went forth to Dhahir. The Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah retreated before them to Mount Miqa,⁷⁹⁹ as he had not with him a sufficient force to oppose them. So they fought against Kewla and Habsan, but could not take either of them. They then went against Mcnqal⁸⁰⁰ and Menara,⁸⁰¹ both of which they captured by assault, and then marched towards Sa'da.

The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah now demanded succours and troops. So Melik Wathiq detached to him Fehd son of I'Jdtim with seventy horsemen of the tribe of llemdan, and P*so the 'Emir Shihabu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Er-Demir with thirty horsemen and five hundred infantry. When these arrived at Kewla and joined the 'Emfr Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, he stationed his own brothers and the family of Yahya son of Hasan in Kewla, and marched with the divinely aided forces towards Sa'da. These troops were then about four hundred horsemen and a thousand foot, who went forward and entered Sa'da, the camp of the Sherffs being below Tclmus⁸⁰² They kept their headquarters about two months, and several severe encounters took place, many horses being hamstrung on both sides.

f. 131*

Now the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din used to pay the horsemen, serve out food, and attend to all matters himself, patrolling the camp by night and by day. The Sultan, on whom may God have mercy, used to send him treasure and necessities for the troops before they became due, so that the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Di'n became unable to resist him, and went forth in flight, consequently, to the mountain of the Benu 'Uweymir,⁸⁰³ above the plain of

'Adddn,⁸⁰⁴ and then to Shatib,⁸⁰⁵ until he entered the country, of the Shcrff 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, traversing its breadth', until he encamped in Jennat.⁸⁰⁶

And in this year A.M. 683 died the learned 'Imam 'Ibrahim son of 'Ahmed son of Taju'd-Din the Hedewite in the castle of Ta'izz as a prisoner. He was one of the celebrated men of valour and famous horsemen ; he used to indite good poetry ; and of his verse is a poem in which he describes his captivity and offers his apology :

" A grave matter befell, and made me forget therewith all (other) serious affairs, making my heart turn into fragments within its entrails.

i. 131" So much so that when there came from behind me, and, from before me, troops, they bore away halves and segments.

And they seized the word from behind me, to keep things as they lucre ; and they seized the spear, and the fleet horse also.

And I was in a place difficult and narrow, in which I met wit' no space for the range of the eyesight.

Then I reached unto courts in which was a pi hue who dwells in an exalted palace of sublimity.

rr And he showed generosity by pardon; for kindness is his characteristic, and he never ceases being an actor with grandeur and munificence."

[have recorded of it merely what may indicate that which is therein.

His death took place in the month of the latter Rabi* of the year (June-July, 1284), and his grave is in the cemetery at Ta'izz, is well known, is piously visited, is deemed a source of blessings, and prayer is offered near it for men's wants. May God, who be exalted, have mercy on him.⁸⁰⁷

And in the same year there died also the 'Imam 'Ebu Muhammcd Hasan son of Wehhas the Hamzite in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja (February, 1285).[^]

(f. 132*,^f)

*• *33*

And in the year A.H. 684 (A.D. 1285-6) our lord Melik Wathiq

equipped a force against Menqab;⁸⁰⁹ and he feared that the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din would go forth from Thula to the Shihabite (Bcnu Shihab) districts. In consequence he besieged him in Thula. Thereupon the Sheykh Bedru'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of 'Amr son of Jened joined him, and exerted himself to effect a reconciliation between him and the Sultan. The camps were broken up, and the whole force returned to San'a'; peace being concluded upon the condition that the hostage of the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din Dawud should be set at liberty, this being his son Muhammed son of Dawud, who was in the fortress of Dumluwa, and also that the castle of Quf^l⁸¹⁰ should be exchanged for Dhafar. On these terms was peace concluded, when safe-conduct and amity continued for a length of time.

(f. i33^b)
f. 134a

And in the same year died the judge 'Ebu Hafs 'timer son of Sa⁴d son of Muhammed son of 'Aliyy the Rebi'ite, who held the jurisdiction of San'a', and was one of the most eloquent of men and of the best of them in the relation of tradition^{8U} and the exegesis of the QurYm. And it was that when he was present in an assembly, no one but himself would have a word to say. It is reported that what he had committed to memory was fifty thousand traditions. The Sultan Mclik Mudhaffer used to honour and distinguish him. He gave him for his judgeship the tribute of the Jews of his district, so that his worldly wealth was very great.

rrv

Among the extraordinary events that befell him was the following. He was seated with the 'Emir the Sha'bite in the palace of the Sultan in San'a', at the time when the roof fell in upon them and the assembly, among whom were Muhammed son of Hatim the Ilemdanite, with his brother, and also Muhammed son of Yezid Bedr, brother-in-law of the Sha'bite. They all died under the ruins, except the judge spoken of, who escaped alive, and also Muhammed son of Hatim. The judge used to recount that when the palace fell down he saw a man of great age pick up out of it a beam and a curtain, which he made into a roof over him, so that the ruins did not reach him.⁸¹²

The judge was of great estimation, celebrated by repute, honoured by the great ones of his epoch. His excellencies were noised abroad to the east and west, far and near; and I know no one of his contemporaries who was equally famous with him. So much so, that I have [^]seen a handsome volume on his qualities, a compilation of the jurist 'Aliyy son of 'Ebu Bekr the Qur'anic reciter, the San'a'ite. His diploma of investiture came from Baghdad, surmounted with the sacred Musta'simite cipher, and containing, in expressions of consideration for his condition and of recognition of his worth, all that he truly merited.⁸¹³

f. i35^a And in the year A.H. 685 (A.D. 1286-7) «sacred Mudhafiferian dirhems were struck in the city of Sa'da,⁸¹⁴ in the month of the latter Jumada (July-August, 1286). The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah went down to the gates of the Sultan, where he was received by Melik Mes'ud and the judge Baha'u'd-Dm, the Intimate, at Havvban.⁸¹³ And he presented himself at once at an audience of the Sultan, remaining at court for some time, after which there was conferred on him a military band of five loads, together with five banners. And there came to visit him, with the door-keepers, Jeshib, Jarud, Matira, and Hisn-Dhffan.⁸¹⁶ And he composed a poem in which he eulogized the Sultan as he said :

"And thou, O Yusuf^{fi} hast signified by banners that I am sincere, and that, when misfortune betides, I am a treasure in reserve.

And thou hast moved with drums zyhat was quiet, though there was hardness of hearing therein from an audition of the excitement thereof"

And in the same year A.H. 685 died the eminent jurist 'Ebu'l-Hasan 'Aliyy son of Muhammed son of Hujr son of 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy son of Hujr, the 'Ezdite by descent, the Hcjente by country, who was commonly known as 'Ebu Hujr, and who was domiciled at 'Aden. He was wealthy in worldly possessions[^]

and was scrupulous lest anything doubtful should become mixed with his property ; neither would he have any relation with anyone he suspected on this score. And he used not, in his sales, to hoard (coins) in hopes of a rise in prices.⁸¹⁸ Jenediyy hath said : " My father, Yusuf son of Ya'qub, on whom may God have mercy, informed me and said that there was a man in the city of Jencd, a perfumer, originally from the city of 'Ibb, who exercised no leniency as to coins, taking only one in ten. Now it came to pass that a journey to 'Aden befell him, in order to purchase perfume. So he came to this jurist, and enquired of him for the commodities of which he was in want. The jurist told him that the whole was in stock. Upon this he handed to him a bag of money, which the jurist gave to one of his slaves, telling him to take and examine them. The man of 'Ibb remarked: 'There is no need to examine them, for there is not anyone in my town who hoards up money as I do.' On this the jurist asked of him : ' And dost thou then hoard up money ?' He answered : ' Yes.' Then said the jurist : ' Give them back to him, and mix not his money among my cash.' So they were given back to him, and he went away frustrated "

And it was that everyone of eminence who came to 'Aden alighted for the most part solely at the house of the jurist, who used to lodge them in one of his rooms in proximity to himself. The people used also to assemble about him for recitation in the mosque (mesjid) of Sema', which was so named {*mesjidiis-sem'd*')}⁸²⁰ from the great number of books that were there heard recited to those who came to it. The sum legally due as alms out of his property⁸²⁰ yearly amounted to forty, or, it is said, to sixty thousand pieces of silver, which he gave away in chanty for the greater portion of his days, until his charity was nearly exhausted. He ceased not to practise this until he died at the age of 88 years, in the night of Wednesday, 5th Safer, 685 (30th March, 1286), leaving two sons, Muhammed and 'Abdu'llah. As to Muhammed, he studied jurisprudence, and his father betrothed him to the daughter of a certain merchant named

'Idrfs the Saddler. He was given to a profuse munificence, unseemly in a young man. Never was disappointed one who had recourse to him. So his circumstances became shattered, and much debt weighed upon him after the death of his father. There came to him one of those to whom the debt was due, and importuned him, using gross expressions to him in what he said, letting him hear extravagant words. He was sitting at the door of his house, which he entered in haste, went purposely into a mountain, and there hung himself.⁸²¹ This was on a Friday, after some days had elapsed in Dhu'l-Oa'da of the same year (December, 1286). And one of the righteous men of the inhabitants of 'Aden of that epoch saw in a dream⁸²² that he was standing at the gate of the mosque which bears the name of 'Eban's Mosque, when lo, there was a multitude that had advanced through the gate of 'Aden coming towards the city, majestic in appearance and with shining faces. The man enquired about them, and there was said unto him: "This is the Apostle of God, on whom be God's salutation and greeting, with a multitude of his Companions who are bound to the (funeral) service over a man of the inhabitants of the city who will die this morning."

rr1 So when the morning was come on the man, and there happened to Muhammed son of 'Ebii Hujr what did happen, while there died on that day no one but he, the man came to the place where burial services are performed over the dead. And he sat down there in expectation of the arrival of the aforementioned defunct one, that he might perform his devotions over him as one of the congregation. Said he: "Then there happened to me an emission, and I arose canonically unclean. And I had already reflected, and I said: * It is inconceivable, in respect of such as this, that the Prophet, on whom be the salutation and greeting of God, should perform the funeral service over him, when he has hung himself. Then I heard one speaking, who said to me: ' Separate thou not thyself from this funeral convoy, for this is the very man himself/ So I recalled my wandering thoughts, renewed my ablution, went to the

door of the house of the deceased, accompanied the funeral
convoy, and was present at the funeral service, as also at the f. 136"
burial."

Thus saith Jenediyy: " My tutor 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy, of
Algiers, informed me that the jurist 'Ebu Hujr had several
daughters, for the most part righteous. One of these narrated
that she saw her father in a vision,⁸²³ some time after the death
of her brother, and said to him : * O my father dear, what
has happened to thee ? ' And he answered : ' Since thy brother
joined us we have been constant in entreating God, who be
exalted, that he would pardon him his offence against his own
self; but He did not so until after a severe suffering and a near
approach to despair for the same."

And in the year A.H. 686 (A.n. 1287-8) the 'Emir Sarimu'd-
Din Pawikl son of the 'Imam devised a piece of craft for the
recovery of his castle Qufl⁸²⁴; but he feared a failure therein, rrr
and so advanced to the canton of Sa'da, where he effected an
arrangement with his brother's son the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din
Musa son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam. They then asked for
assistance of the 'Imam Mutahher, whom they incited to an
expedition to the canton of Sa'da. So he went out from
Derwan⁸²⁵ to Hujr,⁸²⁶ and collected great levies, with which
he marched towards Sa'da. Khawlan joined him. He fought
against Derb,⁸²⁷ and took it by assault, putting to the sword
the garrison that held it, about two hundred men, and taking f. ij7»
prisoner the governor of Ghallab. On the side of the 'Imdm
there were killed twenty (?) five archers.

After this the 'Imam, and with him the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Dm
Musa son of 'Ahmed, marched to Jewf,⁸²⁸ where they took
Fakhra⁸²⁹ and Suwana, and then ascended Dhahir, where they
devastated Kewla and Dakhsa, camping them against Zdhir.⁸³⁰

The 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din son of the 'Imam flew at his castle
Qufl, camping against it, and sending to our lord Melik Wathiq
a notification of the rupture of peace. Upon this Melik Wathiq
equipped two hundred horsemen, Ghuzz Kurds and Arabians,
their captain being the Sherif Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of the

'Abdu'lldh. He ordered them to ascend Dhahir; but its ascent was not practicable for them.

rrr The Sultan Melik MudhafTer now sent forth his marshal, the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Humam, with a force of horse from Yemen, and commanded him to make excursions against Zahir. And when he reached San'a', Melik Wdthiq went forth with a store of necessaries to Dhirwa, and detached the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah, as also the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din the marshal, to raise the siege of Zahir. On the Sherffs becoming informed of their movement they raised their camp from Zahir. The 'Imam went up to Dhahir, and the siege of Qufi by the 'Emfr Sarimu'd-Din became more severe.

Melik Wathiq returned to San'a', and rumours with disorders multiplied in the land. The country became perturbed with great agitation, matters assumed a serious aspect, with increase of trouble; the inhabitants of the east country, with those of the west country, revolted; and the whole land, from Naqfi⁸³¹ to Sa'da, was a prey to disorder.

f. i₃₇^b When these troubles arose the Sultan sent his son Melik 'Eshref⁸³² to San'a', to hold it as his fief, recalling his son Wathiq. So Melik 'Eshref entered San'a' on the 8th of Jumada the first, this year (about 20th June, 1287), and then left it for the camp at Dheyfan.⁸³³ Afterwards he marched towards Dhahir, treading down the country with a violent trample, devastating the greater part of Upper Dhahir and of Lower Dhahir, until his divinely aided forces reached 'Anan and Khaywan,⁸³⁴ nothing offering resistance to him in Dhahir, and none having reached where he reached to. He delivered battle from Qubba⁸³⁵ several times, and ordered Kewla to be restored, placing in it as garrison the Sherif^k 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah. The festival of the sacred month of Ramadan occurred while he was yet tented at Kewla; and it was a most beautiful and joyous festival.

rrr

And when Dhahir was laid waste as we have narrated, the 'Emfr Sarimu'd-Din being in Qubba, when he had reinforced

the garrisons against Dhafar,⁸³⁶ and had placed the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah, with a hundred horsemen and a thousand footmen, in Kewla, he set out from Dhahir to the country of the 'Emfr 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas,⁸³⁷ which he devastated, cutting down its trees and its vineyards, demolishing also therein forts from the times of paganism.

He then moved from the country of the son of Wehhas to San'a'. And the troops went forth from San'a' to meet him, the levies also assembling, so that he had never seen a more marvellous or more joyous day, nor one with greater crowds, than this. He entered by the Gate of God's Aid (Babu'n-Nasr);⁸³⁸ and when he came opposite the royal pavilion, there were spread on the ground tapestries of silk worked with figures of gold, and there was scattered over the people, of white and yellow (gold and silver coins), what could not be told. He then remained in San'a', public affairs being tranquil, the frontiers protected, war against Qubba, siege against Dhafar, the 'Imam Mutahher in Ten'um,⁸³⁹ on Mount Ien'um, with no one joining him, and the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din besieged in Qubba.

rro

And in the year A.H. 687 (A.D. 1288-9) th<re took place negotiations for peace, and the 'Emir Sarimu'd-Din made peace after becoming master of Qufl, the criers proclaiming the same in the city of San'a' on Saturday, the 22nd of the former Jumada in this year about 21st June, 1288). Later on peace was concluded between the 'Imam and Melik 'Eshref, the criers proclaiming it on the tenth of the latter Jumada (about 10th July). But he did not grant him peace on any condition as to countries, or as to subjects, except as to certain tribes of the righteous,⁸⁴⁰ as the Benu Hayy, the Benu Siham, the 'U'rush, and the Benu Mut'im.

f. 138*

He then went back to Yemen, his departure from San'a' taking place on Friday, 10th Rejeb, of the year (about 5th August, 1288); after which Melik Mu'eyyed⁸⁴¹ went up to San'a* to hold it as his fief. He entered it on the 14th of Dhi'l-Qa'da of the same year (about 10th December, 1288). When he had entered San'a', there joined him the whole

population of the Arabs, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, and envoys of the Shen'fs, all surrounded by an escort of horsemen. He remained a certain space in San'a', going forth afterwards to the cantons of Dhemar. The peace became precarious between him and the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya.

f. i3«^b

rn

And in this year A.ii. 687 died the eunuch 'Iftikhdr'u'd-Din Yaqut son of 'Abdu'llah the Mudhafferite. He was a prudent, intelligent, shrewd servant, and he it was whom the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer sent in company with his son Melik 'Eshref to Dumluwa, for Melik 'Eshref to be his hostage with his two uncles Mufaddal and Fa'iz, together with the mother of them both, the daughter of Hawza. And when he was there, the eunuch managed matters and gained over the hearts of the garrison troops by word and deed, until he had made the thing sure. There then arose a circumstance that called for the descent of Fa'iz, Mufaddal, and their mother, the daughter of Hawza, to Mansura, or, as is said, to Juwwa. As soon as they were out of the castle the eunuch Yaqut, and they who were with him in the castle, rose up in arms and took possession of it for his lord Mudhaffer. And Yaqut ceased not to be the lieutenant of his lord in the castle until he died on the 30th of Dhu'l-Qa'da of this year (about 25th December, 1288). He was a man of violence and great haughtiness, but therewithal very charitable, showing much respect to the learned and virtuous. He built a college in Mansura of Dumluwa. May God have mercy on him, who be extolled.

f. 139^a

In the year A.H. 688 (A.D. 1289-90) the garrison in the castle of Birash mutinied in the month of Rejeb (July, 1289), and Melik Mu'eyyed marched against them, killed a number of them, and took it from them by assault.

rrv

And in this same year a party of the Jushem⁸⁴² tribe suddenly made an assault on the castle of Beyt 'En'um, with which the 'Imam was at peace. One of the conditions of the peace was that if it should appear that any tribe had transgressed on either side, and had shut themselves up for resistance in any castle or mountain, then verily are they adversaries of the

Sultan and of the 'Imam, and the Sultan with the 'Imam shall unite against whomsoever gives rise to such event, and shall support each other against him. Now, when there arose from those men that which eventuated, the Sultan gave orders for a camp to be pitched against the castle of Beyt 'Fn'um, and requested of the 'Imam the dispatch of someone on his part to camp against them. But the 'Imam did it not, and ^ave no facilities for anything of the sort.

And in this year A.ir. CSS (A.D. 1289-90) died the eminent Shcykh 'Ebu'l-Khattab 'Umer son of 'Abdu'r-Rahman son of Hassan, of Jerusalem. His father was of the people of Damascus, while his mother was from Ascalon. They met at Jerusalem and lived there, where he married her, and she bore him this child in the year A.H. 604 or 606 (A.D. 1207 or 1209). He went to 'Ummu 'Abida⁸¹³ when he was 12 years old, and he joined the She>kh Nejmu'd-Di'n, known as 'el-'Akhdar, of the posterity of the brother of the righteous Sheykh 'Ahmed the Rifa'ite.⁸⁵⁴ From him he took the vow, and by him was he fostered. When the Sheykh saw his perfection, he commanded him to enter Mekka and perform the pilgrimage, then to enter Yemen and disseminate there the Rifa'ite garb.⁸¹⁵ He also informed him that he would there meet with a man from whom he would derive advantage in religious and in mundane matters, lie obeyed, and when he entered Yemen he met with the jurist 'Umer son of Sa'fd the 'Uqaybite, with whom lie sojourned a certain time at Dhu 'Uqayb.⁸⁴⁶ This was in the year A.IT. 649 (A.D. 1251-2). The jurist made him publicly known, and showed great respect for him. He then caused him to reside in a locdity near to himself, known by the name of Ma'arr.⁸⁴⁷ He removed thence afterwards to many places, in which many convents were built for him, until the last convent that he inhabited was Dhehub,^{8,8} below the city of 'Ibb, whence he was never absent until he died after the dissemination of the Rifa'ite garb, especially in the canton of Mikhlaf.⁸⁴⁹ His death took place in the night before Friday, the 22nd of the first Rebi'-of the year (about 12th March, 1289).

rrA

f. i40^b And in the year A.H. 689 (1290) died the 'Emfr Sdrimu'd-Dm
 Dawiid⁸⁵⁰ son of the 'Imdm Mansur 'Abdu'llah son of Hamza
 f. 141* son of Suleyman son of Hamza son of 'Aliyy son of Hamza.
 His death took place the —teenth of Safer in the year (end of
 February, 1290). He was a leading man among the Sherffs,
 and one of their chiefs. He was an eloquent poet, a piece of
 his composition being a poem in which he eulogizes Melik
 Mudhaffer and begs of him the release of his son Muhammed,
 who was a hostage in the fort of Dumluwa. It is this poem in
 which he says :

*" Shall I scold htm in our estrangement, or shall I not scold him ;
 shall I have patience until he reform, or shall I shun him ?
 And who will be conveyer from me to Melik Yusuf 'Ebu ^l Umcr,^m
 the giver of bounty and the bestotver thereof.
 And I have no irritating remark to utter, save that I tvill recall
 to his mind the document of which he was the writer.
 Then do thou allow our father^m to intercede for his two children ;
 for verily, he is thy intercessor as to the sin which thou
 hast drawn on thyself"*

And it is said that the Khalffa⁸⁵⁸ (Sultan), on whom may
 God have mercy, wept when he read this distich, and said :
 " Set him at liberty as a mark of reverence for his ancestor,^{8i*4} on
 whom be God's salutation and greeting." And it is also said
 that he saw in a vision the Prophet,⁸⁵⁵ on whom be God's
 salutation and greeting, who said, "Verily, I will reward thee
 for this on the day of the resurrection," as he patted him on
 the face.

And in this year A.H. 689 the Sultan went down to Zebid
 on the occasion of the rejoicings which he instituted for the
 circumcision⁸⁵⁶ of the children of his children. Melik Mu'cyeyd
 also descended for this reason from San'a'. The Shen'f Jemalu'd-
 Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, with the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din Musd
 son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, went down also. This became
 a means for giving strength to the 'Emirship of the 'Emir

Humamu'd-Din Suleyman son of Qasim son of the paternal aunt of the late 'Emir Sarimu'd-Dm, called to the mercy of God, who be extolled. For the 'Emir Humamu'd-Din took possession of the forts of Dhafar,⁸⁵⁷ and then marched to Telmus,⁸⁵⁸ near ri- Sa'da, capturing it also.

And when our lord Melik Mu'eyyed returned to San'a', the peace having been already broken between the 'Emir and the Sultan, as we have related, the 'Imam openly declared himself for an infraction of the peace. So when the 'Imam cast aside his plighted troth, letters came from the people of the east country declaratory of their submission to our lord the Sultan. Upon this our lord Melik Mu'eyyed went up with his levies and his troops, and there remained not one out of the tribes of the east country but came and served on foot in obedience to him, voluntarily or by constraint. But some of them held back, and Melik Mu'eyyed fought the recusants and ravaged their country, so that they tendered their submission to him by force. Melik Mu'eyyed became thus master of all the east country in its entirety, and laid it waste. f. 141^b

And in the year A.H. 690 (A.D. 1291) Melik Mu'eyyed marched from San'a' with his forces to Mount Lewdh,⁸⁵⁹ where he fought against the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya. The 'Imam Mutahher had placed the son of his paternal uncle, the Sherff 'Es'ad, in garrison at Ten'um,⁸⁶⁰ where were his own women and children. Melik Mu'eyyed fought against him for a space in the mountain, ascending it afterwards against him by assault on the 5th of Muharrem of the year 691 (27th December, 1291). (f. 142^a
f. 142^b
f. 143^a)

In that year A.H. 690 died the jurist and 'Imam, the scholar, the Pivot of Yemen and the Erudite of both Yemen and North Yemen ('Esh-Sham), 'Ebu'l-'Abbas 'Ahmed son of Musa son of 'Aliyy son of 'Umer son of 'Ujeyl ('Ibnu 'Ujeyl),⁸⁶¹ whose birthday had been in Ramadan, 608 (January-February, 1212). He was an 'Imam among the 'Imams of the Muslims, learned, practical, righteous, scrupulous, abstemious. There was not among the 'Imams of latter days anyone more subtle than he of scrutiny

f. 143^b in jurisprudence, or more erudite than he therein, diving down after the minutiae of jurisprudence, and lucidly explaining its obscurities. He was blessed in teaching, and subtle of view therein. He was a source of miraculous phenomena well known, and of effects mentioned by history. Princes used to visit him, pay their respects to him, honour his worth, accept his intercession, and desire him to be shown indulgence as to what was due from him by way of king's taxes; but this he would not accept, saying : " I prefer to be of the company of paying subjects." He was a frequent performer of the pilgrimage to Mekka the Venerated ; and when he went on pilgrimage, there would perform the journey and rites with him a large concourse of people from among the inhabitants of Yemen, as a blessing to themselves and as company to him. Hardly ever would anyone encounter him with evil intent from among the Arabs ; and if any interfered with him he never prospered. The caravan used to travel by land in his day, and for a considerable space after his time. It was solely named "the caravan of 'Ibnu 'Ujeyl," whether he himself journeyed with it or whether some other of the jurists accompanied it. This is one of the things worthy of marvel ; and how well adapted is this to the saying of the Ancient—

۲۴۲ " Some have died whom their good deeds have survived; others have lived while they, among men, were as dead."

There was hardly one of the jurists of his age but had [recourse](#) to his juridical science and to his knowledge ; but it was never heard that he was in want of the science of any one of them for an answer or for a question. He ceased not from what we have described, as to teaching, and as to laying open his whole soul, until he died on the Tuesday, 24th of the first Rebi' of this year, 690 (about 5th April, 1291). Melik Wathiq 'Ibrahim son of Melik Mudhaffer was then in the city of Fcshal,⁸⁶² his fief at that time from his father, and about half a day's journey from Beytu'l-Faqih. When he heard of

the death of the jurist he mounted his horse, with his special household, and was present at the funereal ablution of the jurist, being one of his washers ; then, when he was borne to his tomb, was one of his bearers, assisting also to lower him into his grave, together with other assistants in that duty. Many men of mark of that age envied his having had that (ff. 144^a-146 honour.

In the year A.H. 691 (A.D. 1291-2) Melik Mu'eyyed captured Mount Lewdh, ascending it on the 5th Muharrem (27th December, 1291), as we have narrated. He put to death a certain number of the 'Imam's troops, the 'Imam himself going forth as a fugitive by broken paths and passes never before travelled. He went forth to the country of the Benu Wehhas, then up the Dhahir, until he had journeyed to Derwan.⁸⁶³ Melik Mu'eyyed went by the summits of Mount Lcwdh to San'Vi' in triumph and rejoicing. He remained there the rest of the year. f. 146^b

In the year A.H. 693 (A.D. 1292-3) an estrangement arose between the Sherif Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'lkih and Melik Mu'eyyed. The Sherif Jemalu'd-Di'n conceived a fear of Melik Mu'eyyed, ceased to visit him, and removed his family by night from San'a'. This reached the knowledge of the Khalifa (Sultan), who wrote to the Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah asking him as to the cause of his refraining from paying his respects. The Shcn'f wrote him a reply in which he said: "Verily thy son is a young, powerful prince, and I dread from him some sudden act, more than that of which thou wouldst say 'David erred.'" ⁸⁶¹ He returned him as an answer: "God forfend that he should do this, or that Ins father should so act." But the mind of the Sherif was not tranquillized, so that he remained in an attitude of guarded refusal. The misunderstanding became subsequently intensified, and the 'Emi'r Jemalu'd-Di'n showed himself openly in rebellion and ostentatiously opened a correspondence with the 'Imam, who was in his castle at IJajja,⁸⁶⁵ he himself being in his castle at Birash⁸⁶⁶ in the Ma'azib country. f. 147^a

The 'Imam complied with his wish, and went up to him with a large force. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Dm, together with those siding with him of the people of Shatib⁸⁶⁷ and of those of Dhahir, drew together and joined the 'Imam, the whole of them then going against Kewla. They camped against it for a certain time, but could not penetrate into any part thereof.



After this the whole of the Sherifs leagued themselves together, visited one another, renounced all that divided them in the matter of bloodwit or vengeance, and collected for war with the Sultan. One of the Sherifs wrote a letter to Melik Mu'eyyed, in which he said :

*" Stand thou aside from the dominion of which thou art the chief
and turn thou back from the realm of which thou Jioldest
possession by rapine.*

*Have a care ! Verily uod hath willed a war against you, and
the Compassionate One hath fashioned for me, in His
Kingdom, a host.*

*I will bring them against thee, scattered and by troops, sinewy,
sleek-coated, huge, and small of waist;*

*Thereupon lion-like warriors of the sons of Luweyy son of
Glulib,⁸⁶⁸ chieftains who hover round the foe, and who are
already expert in battle.*

*There is no shame in the mountains of Lewdh for a lord to
whom, by thy turning away, thou hast converted reprobation
into a highway."*

Melik Mu'eyyed answered him with a letter, and with some distichs in which he says :

*" Have thou a care ! Hurry thou not ! For thou art not the man
for that. There shall come to thee thy compeer, who shall
teach thee sword-play.*

*If thou be a man of deter mutation, then take thou not to flight,
as is the custom of him to whom thou hast become a
follower.*

And question thou the mountains of Lewdh as to us and as to you ; for the most excellent of you turned his back, and left you behind as spoil.

But I will treat you with forgiveness, since such is a point in my character ; while you never pardon a fault committed"

And when the counsel of the Sherifs had become unanimous, and they had come together to wage war on the Sultan, he sent forth his divinely aided forces, while his well-replenished treasury went up from Yemen. The cavalry was of about a thousand horsemen, and the infantry about ten thousand footmen. Melik Mu'eyyed also went forth from San'a' with his troops and the array of his father that had come up from Yemen. He then ascended Dhahir and encamped in the two places named 'el-Majilan,⁸⁶⁹ where there followed between him and the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas negotiations and correspondence. They then met and became reconciled, his troops joining Melik Mu'eyyed after he had made oath that he would keep faith. Melik Mu'eyyed stayed there a month. He then ascended Dhahir, remaining a space in Upper Dhahir, when he moved on to Lower Dhahir. He now advanced against them in the Majil of Sa'da,⁸⁷⁰ where there was fought a severe battle, and the horse and foot retreated before the troops of the 'Imam until they came to the Red Mound ('el- Ekametu'l-Hamra').⁸⁷⁴ The Benii Slnhab and the men of Haclur remained behind and deserted from the array of the Sultan to the forces of the Sherds, and turned round upon our people in a determined attack. Five men were killed, and Melik Mu'eyyed returned to his camp. He then set out for Kewla, but stayed there one night only. Next he went to Bewn,⁸⁷² where the 'Emir 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas asked of him some troops to stay with him. So he gave him some horse and foot, returning then to San'a'.

And in this year A.H. (92 (A.D. 1292-3) the Sultan Melik Mudh after gave in fief to his son Melik Wathiq⁸⁷³ 'Ibrahim son of Yusuf the province of Dhafar of the Habudite. So he

f. 148^a

❧

proceeded thither by sea from 'Aden in the month of Ramadan (August), departing not thence until he died at the date which we shall specify, if God will.

- f. 148^b And in the year A.H. 693 (A.D. 1293-4) Melik Mu'eyyed made ready for war and for an ascent against the canton of Hadur and the Shihabite⁸⁷⁴ districts. He then went forth and encamped in Qubba.⁸⁷⁵ There now took place between him and the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'lldh messages and addresses in the sense of a peace, on the bases that Melik Mu'eyyed should return to San'a', and that the conclusion of the peace should be arranged at Dhafar.⁸⁷⁶ The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din intended by this merely a deception, inasmuch as he was in a state of unpreparedness for war. Melik Mu'eyyed returned
- f. 149^a therefore to San'a', and the 'Emir Jemdlu'd-Din prepared himself for the journey to Dhafar, taking with him the elders and notables of the districts. Melik Mu'eyyed equipped his *weir*, the jurist Sherefu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy son of Juneyd, with fifty horsemen of the Kahriyya slave-guards and two hundred foot, together with all that was necessary of unprepared food, kitchen utensils, and furniture, as also a company of upholsterers and waiters. He then set out from San'a' and encamped at Werwer,⁸⁷⁷ after which he went up to Dhafar with a number of cavalry and foot-soldiers. And they conversed on the question of the peace, and they represented to the wezfr that the matter was settled. But their design was merely to put their affairs in order and get those to join them who, though their associates, had held back from them ; such as the 'Emir Musa" son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam, and the 'Emir Jemaiu'd-Din 'Abdu'lldh son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas. They therefore wrote to these two and gained them over. So the two rebelled against the Sultan also, and entered Dhafar militarily escorted. The whole of them were now unanimous, and they all took an oath of fealty to the 'Emir Humamu'd-Din Suleyman son of Qasim.⁸⁷⁸ So when they had become of one voice, they gathered themselves to the jurist Sherefu'd-Din, having drawn up a document on the

purpose of the peace, in which they had laid down conditions for things without customary precedent ; and they declared : " We will not make peace, excepting on the conditions inserted by us in this paper. Do thou, therefore, send it to thy master." The wezir despatched it, in consequence, to Melik Mu'eyyed, who, when apprised of its contents, sent it on to his father, the Khalifa.⁸⁷⁹ On reading it, the Khalifa deemed it fit only to be rejected, and gave no other answer but the sovereign command issued to his son Melik Mu'eyyed, ordering him to go forth with his array to the Shihabite and Hadurite cantons. He equipped also the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of Behran, and Fehd son of Hatim, for the canton of Sa'da. Thus Melik Mu'eyyed went forth to the Shihabite countries, and laid waste therein a number of places. He then marched to the canton of Hadur, devastating there also some localities in Haretu'l-Jebel (Mountain Canton).⁸⁸⁰ rm

The 'Emir Tajud-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Yahya son of Hamza now joined with a large force, about a couple of thousand foot, as a reinforcement to the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah. The 'Kmlr Humamu'd-Din Suleymdn son of Qasim came forth from Dhafar and camped in a place named Qust,⁸⁸¹ in the country of the son of Wehhas, and near to Rahba.⁸⁸² Melik Mu'eyyed fought them both, and at one time at Rehiqa,⁸⁸³ and another time in Mount Hadur. He attacked one morning early Beyt Shu'ayb,⁸⁸¹ carrying it by assault at the sword's point, and slaughtering its inhabitants. He then returned to the land of the son of Wehhas,⁸⁸⁵ and took the village of the Benu'l-Qadim,⁸⁸⁶ laid waste the districts, and went back to San'a' in Sha'ban, 693 (July, 1293). A truce was then concluded at the court of the Sultan, with peace between him and the Sherffs. f. 149*

But in regard to the Sa'da expedition, there was opposed to it the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din Musa son of 'Ahmed son of the Imam, with about three hundred horsemen, besides his force of foot. Fightings occurred between them, with some slaughter on both sides. A truce for three months was then settled,

and after this Melik Mu'eyyed went down to the court of the Sultan, whither came also envoys from the Sher/fs to conclude a peace.

The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah went forth to the canton of the east country, and rebuilt the works of Ten'um.⁸⁸⁷ The whole of the inhabitants of the east country obeyed his call. He then joined the 'Emir Suleyman son of Muhammed son of Suleyman son of Musa, being then in the canton of Dhemar. The people went over to the side of the two, and disorder befell the districts.

The command of the Sultan was now issued for the ascent of Melik 'Eshref to the upper countries for the cause of peace. He proceeded, therefore, to San'a', which he entered on the Monday, 10th of Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year 693 (about 1st October, 1294). The whole population of the east country flocked to him ; all the people of Iladur and the 'Emirs of the Shihabites ; the Ficnu'r-Ka'i came also in troops.

The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah then went forth from Ijhafar to Redman, on which the order was issued by our lord the Sultan Melik 'Eshref to the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Muhammed son of Hatim to proceed to Redman and to journey with Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah to San'a'. The 'Emir Tajud-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Yahyd son of Hamza had already united with the Shen'f 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, and was staying with him in Redman. So the two went down together in company of the 'Emir Bedru'd Din to Melik 'Eshref at San'a'.

r* When they reached the fort, there met them the 'Emir Salahu'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of Melik 'Eshref, as a civility and an honour to them ; and when they neared the city, Melik 'Eshref himself met them escorted by his troops and his men at arms. They presented their homage to him, the whole of them ranging themselves at his stirrup until they reached the sacred pavilion. There he treated them with honour and received them with courtesy, so that there was not left one individual who had declared himself in revolt but came into him voluntarily or through fear.

Thus saith the author of "The Necklace" ('Iqd) : "Melik 'Eshref now set himself to treat of peace between himself and the Sherifs, as a body, at the hand of the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Dm 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah. This matter was settled, and proclaimed by the heralds. The festival of the sacrifices occurred, and the whole population was at his gate, Sherifs, Arabs, and Ghu/z Kurds. He went forth to the parade-ground in the midst of his troops and retainers, passing thence to the open-air oratory (*Musalla*) in the greatest pomp and most gorgeous state. He stayed in San'a' during Dhu'l-Hijja and Muharrem (November and December, 1291)." f. 15^{ob}

And in the year A.H. 694 (A.D. 1294-5) Melik 'Eshref made ready for his descent to Yemen, his departure from San'a' taking place on Friday, 12th Safer, of that year (about 1st January, 1295). When he arrived at Ta'izz, and had taken up his abode there, his father made over to him the unprofitable sovereignty, placing in his hands the reins of firm command.⁸⁸⁸

The illustrious warrant of investiture was issued from the council-chamber of the great princes and honourable lords, couched in terms unanswerable suggestive of deep insight and sound judgment, surpassing what the downpour of the clouds causes to grow in the meads, casting reproach on the solitary large pearls on the neck of a swelling-breasted damsel, and setting forth : " After thanks and praise to God, salutation to the apostle of God, whom may God salute and greet, as also after prayer, what has to be said is as follows : ' Verily I have appointed as king over you one on whom, by God, the survivor after an approximation to what may cause ruin will produce no effect, nor he who hastes to excite to a postponed sincerity, nor a perseverance in selfishness or in following after a persistency in testing and trying. And he is our esteemed son, our luminous meteor, our provision laid up according to our desire, our aid through whom we hope for the prosperity of the dominions and people, wishing for him from God forgiveness and salvation in the resurrection. We have enjoined unto him some of the means of repelling the attacks of enemies

roi

f. 151*

and the protection of subjects, the beacons also of gentleness and consideration, as he has practised through his fidelity to his duty. He is begged to help him, who has no helper himself save through him. And we will not describe unto you, of his laudable habits and virtuous deeds, save what is already manifest and conspicuous, emblazoned by trial, and bruited abroad from you by every tongue. We have prescribed unto him that he prove himself to you clement and merciful, munificent and generous, so long as you obey him, according to his wish, with the obedience of submission. But whoso shall show himself perverse, forsake obedience, and rebel, verily, he shall abase him, even though the whole world cleave unto him by the tie of blood-relationship. Be ye therefore unto him good subjects by lending ear and obeying in all cases, so that he may be to you, by goodness and tenderness, the best of kings and rulers.' "

ror

Thus was delivered over to the Sultan Melik 'Eshref the commanding and prohibiting, the loosing and binding, the outstretching and contracting, on land and sea, in the provinces and on the coasts, in cities, castles, and frontier places, as also the conducting of war and peace, with the sending forth of the troops and levies. Nor did he have recourse to his father, save in the most weighty matters ; showing no weakness, inability, or failing. And this took place in the former Jumada of the year 694 (March-April, 1295).

f. i51^b

And when he undertook to govern the affairs of the realm, as we have narrated, he took up his abode in the castle of Ta'izz, while the Khalifa resided in Thu'bat.⁸⁸⁹ Melik Mu'eyyed, on whom be God's mercy, then took his departure towards Shahr⁸⁹⁰ and Hadramawt, his mind not being pleased at what had been specially given, as to the sovereignty, to his brother Melik 'Eshref rather than to him. His paternal aunt, the princess Shemsiyya,⁸⁹¹ went with him, for she loved him with much affection.

And then the Sultan Melik MudhafFer Shemsu'd-Din Yusuf son of 'Umer son of Aliyy son of Resul died, his decease

happening on Tuesday, 10th Ramadan, of the year 694 (about 20th July, 1295), and he being then, it is said, a man of seventy-four years, ten months, eleven days, and ten hours old. His reign was of forty-six years. He it was whom the Commander of the Believers, 'Aliyy son of 'Ebu Talib,⁸⁹² to whom be salutation, meant in his word spoken concerning a fierce battle special to the people of Yemen: "Then shall rule Melik Mudhaffer, who shall govern them thirty and seventeen (years)." for

The Khalifa was a prince of a kind, generous, clement disposition, prodigal of money, especially for his wars, and he was gifted, as to government and policy, beyond what was given to any other prince. When he died, the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya, on hearing of his demise, exclaimed: "The greatest of the ancient line of Yemenite kings is dead! The Mu'awiya⁸⁹³ of the age is dead! He is dead whose pens have broken our swords and our spears! May God have mercy on him!"

Thus saith the author, on whom may God have mercy: Melik Mudhaffer, on whom may God have mere), founded many pious institutions which aie in evidence to the present time. Of these is the college which he built in the west quarter of Ta'izz,⁸⁹¹ known as the Mudhafferiyya. Therein he ordained a professor, a tutor, and ten students; appointing also to it a precentor, a mu'ezzin, a teacher, and ten orphans to learn the Our'an, together with one beadle. He assigned in mortmain trust to it what sufficed to cover the maintenance of the whole of them. He further built a mosque in that same western quarter of Ta'izz, this mosque being known in our time as the New Mosque. He appointed for it a precentor, a preacher, two mu'ezzins, and two beadles, creating a mortmain trust for it sufficient to maintain the whole. To him belongs, moreover, the guest-house in Dhu 'Udeyna.⁸⁹⁵ He also built the dervish-convent⁸⁹⁶ that is in the city of Hays,⁸⁹⁷ to which he appointed a precentor, a mu'ezzin, a beadle, a teacher, and orphans to learn the Qur'an. rot* He established

f. 152* as food for those who came a quarter of grain per diem, a measure of the people of Yemen, which is more than a large and strong camel can carry; and besides that, flesh meat and dates to boot. It is averred that the produce of the large estates which he gave in mortmain to the dervish-convent mentioned above as existing in the city of Hays, amounts yearly to a thousand quarters of millet.

Another of his monuments is the mosque in the city of Mehjem,⁸⁹⁸ called after him the Mudhafferiyiyy mosque, in which he established a professor and students, a precentor, a preacher, a mu'ezzin, a beadle, a teacher, and orphans, assigning for them *in* mortmain trust a liberal estate, enough for their maintenance.

One of his works, again, is the mosque in Wasit of Mahalib,^{8<9} in which he placed a precentor, a preacher, a mu'ezzin, a teacher, and orphans, giving in mortmain trust a sufficiency for their support. He also founded a college in Dhafar of the Habudite,⁹⁰⁰ settling thereon in mortmain trust sufficient for the support of those connected with it.

Ilis eunuch slave Bcdr the Mudhafferite built furthermore in the city of Zebid a college for jurisprudence as taught by the school of the 'Imam ShafViyy, with whom may God be pleased; a second college for the professors and students of the apostolic traditions; and a third for the studies of the reciters of the noble Qur'an according to its seven accepted versions;⁹⁰¹ as also a guest-house. To each of these he appointed a precentor, a mu'ezzin, a beadle, and a sufficient trust for their perpetual maintenance.

roc The rule of the Khalifa, on whom may God have mercy, who be extolled, was most approximate to equity and clemency. Me used to sit in company with the learned and the righteous; and he used to occupy himself, may God have mercy on him, with science, of which he acquired as much as was vouchsafed to him in every branch. He studied jurisprudence under **the jurist Muhammed** son of 'Isma'il the Hadramawtite, and under others. Also the apostolic traditions under the jurist

Muhammed son of 'Ibrahim the Feshclite, and under the jurist Muhibbu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Abdu'llah the Taberite. He read syntax and lexicology under the Sheykh Yahya son of 'Ibrahim the Dwarf. He learnt logic from the juiist 'Ahmed son of 'Abdu'l-Hamfd the Surdudite. He collected forty apostolic traditions of God's apostle, on whom be the salutation and greeting of God, twenty of incitement, and twenty of a minatory character.

The jurist Jemalu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah the Reymite informed me, and I have several times heard him say: " I have studied the principal books on the traditions, from among the books of our deceased lord the Khalifa ; and I have found the whole of them marked with the orthographical marks in the handwriting of himself, so that whoever saw them would say that he had no other occupation in his whole life ; and this, in spite of his assiduity in studying science under several branches, and in spite of his attention to the affairs of the realm." f. 152^b

His teacher, the jurist Muhammed son of the Hadramawtite, has also said : " Our lord Mclik Mudhaffer had written out eveiy veise of the Kook of God, who be extolled, and also its commentary ; he had committed them all to memory as well as their commentaiy, so as to repeat them away from the texts."

He possessed a complete mastery over the science of medicine, and when he conquered the city of Dhafar of the Habudite he mentioned in his letter to Mehk Dhahir Beybars, lord of Egypt, that he was in need of a physician (or the city of Dhafar, inasmuch as it was malarious ; and he added : " Let not thy exalted picsence imagine that we desire the physician for ourselves ; for, praise be to God, we know, of medicine, that which no other knows besides ourselves ; and we have busied ourselves therewith with extreme assiduity from the days of our youth. Our son, also, 'Umer 'Eshref, is one of the doctors of medicine." To him belongs the (authorship of the) book named 'el-Jami', the like of which pertains to no one. ٢٥١

Mudhaffer, on whom God have mercy, was insatiable for science. This is substantiated by what I have seen in his own handwriting in one of the sections of the commentary on the Qur'an by Fakhru'd-Dm Raziyy, a passage the purport of which declares: " I have studied this commentary from beginning to end with minute attention, and I have noticed therein many things wanting. Four copies of the same came to me from Egypt, from the Judge of Judges Taju'd-Din son of the daughter of A'azz, and I found in them this defect as before. 1 was not contented with this, but 1 believed it to have arisen from the transcriber. So I sent a messenger to journey as far as Khurasan, to the city of Herat ; and he brought back to me the script of the author. Then I approached unto it, and 1 saw theieiti the defect as before, and many spaces left blank." Consider, then, this exalted
 rov painstaking in the ascertainment of sciences, this labour theiein, and this study of a commentary comprising all the sciences !

He was a lover of his subjects and a benefactor to them. He would not burden them beyond what they could endure. When the people of a canton complained of any one of the tax-collectors or of the writers, he would recall him away from them, never sending him back to that canton for fear of his bearing it a grudge. Whenever a district yielded more revenue than was usual, or less than what was customary, he would enquire into the reason of the surplus or deficiency. If the surplus arose from an innovation put in force by the collector, or the deficiency from some decay in the canton, he would chastise the collector commensurately and fine him, never again appointing him to a collectorship.

He used to

practise equity towards the subjects, and to show respect to the learned and to the righteous.

f. 153^a

It is said that he had five hundred horsemen in Egypt, who warred against the Franks. He loaded their beasts of burden from Yemen with what he sent to them by way of presents and rarities.

It is also reported that the sovereign of China forbade the Muslims of his country to practise circumcision. This grieved and distressed them. So the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, on whom be God's mercy, wrote a letter to him interceding with him to grant permission to them, and sent also unto him a magnificent pi consonant with what he desired. f. 90a
He accepted this intercession and gave them his permission in the matter.⁹⁰²

There came forth unto him into the world seventeen male children, of whom the greater part died in their infancy, but out of whom five sons survived him. These were : (1) 'timer 'Eshref, (2) Dawud Mu'eyyed, (3) 'Ibrahim Wathiq, (4) Hasan Mes'ud, (5) 'Eyyub Mansur. They all reigned as sovereigns, and invocations were made for them in the pulpits, while money was coined in their names; all except Mes'ud, who attained to none of these things.

His Wezir was the judge Baha'u'd-inm Muhammed son of 'Es'ad the Imranite.

A number of eloquent poets eulogized him, men of renown. One was the famous poet Muhammed son of Himyer, the paragon of his age, who lived in the beginning of his reign. (ff. 153^b-154^b)
Another was the jurist Siraju'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of f. 154^b
Da"as, one of those with whom he used to sit in company, and of his intimates. The Khalifa, on whom be God's mercy, used to speak in his praise, preferring him to the son of Himyer, and saying : " Verily the son of Himyer is merely a shameless buffoon." A third of them was Mutenahhi, one f. 155^a
of the poets of the north country (esh-Sham) ⁹⁰³

CHAPTER IV.

On the Establishment of the lesser 'Eshrefl Sovereignty.

Thus saith the author, on whom be God's mercy : When the Sultan Melik Aludhaffer, on whom be God's mercy, who be extolled, had died as we have related, his son Melik 'Eshref Mumeyyidu'd-Di'n 'Umer son of Yusuf son of 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul rose up as the aider of the realm, taking possession of the castles, cities, the whole of the provinces, and all the countries. He was an auspicious prince, wise, excellent, learned, ingenious, of good manners, and quiet. He had occupied himself with an acquisition of the sciences in the days of his emirship, so as to surpass others in a number of their branches, and to possess a fair knowledge of the remainder. He compiled many works, and was beloved by the people with attachments differing according to their moral states and various political degrees.

When his brother Melik Mu'evydc heard of the death of his father, he himself being then in Shahr as we have related, he went forth from Shahr to proceed to Yemen in quest of the sovereignty.

f. 155^b Thus says the son of 'Abdu'l-Meji'd : And when he had become near to Yemen, there reached him a letter from his brother Melik Mansur, cautioning him, and indicating to him the castle of Semdan,⁹⁰⁴ which was then in his hands. ۱۶۰ He thanked him for this act, and became irresolute as to persevering or desisting. And while he was in this state of mind there reached him a letter from the judge MuvvafTaqu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Muhammed the Yahyawite, in which he said : " The rumour has spread abroad that thou hast arrived in Yemen ; and I have heard from one who knows for certain

that thy brother the Sultan Melik 'Eshref has already despatched two individuals of the self-devoting (Fedawiiyya)⁹⁰⁵ Assassin sect to seek thee out ; therefore beware, beware, and take heed for thy life." And when this letter from the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din came to him with the purport we have mentioned, he considered that the matter was become serious, and set out and marched with all possible dispatch. When he arrived at 'Ebyen, where there was a garrison on the part of Melik 'Eshref, the commander fled to Yemen with a part of his force, while another portion went over to Melik Mu'eyyed. He then sent on his baggage and his female suite to the castle of Semdan, causing a military escort to accompany them. They reached their destination in safety, while he set out for 'Aden, being resolved to attempt its capture, that he might ascertain how far his brother would push matters with him.

So he proceeded to 'Aden and examined the place. He descried on one side thereof a dilapidated but skilfully constructed rampart. So he sent for one of the hunters who followed the chase round about the mountain, to ask of him concerning it and the paths in it, whether it was easy or difficult of access, whether there was a road in it or not leading to the gate of 'Aden. The hunter remembered that there was in it a road by which a man could reach the gate of the town. So he said to him : " Would it be possible for thee to take with thee some troops and march them to the place thou hast mentioned?" And he answered: "Yes." But the Sultan concealed his design, and retained the hunter near him.

MI

When the time of the sunset devotions was past, he sent with the hunter three hundred of the picked men of, his infantry, enjoining on them not to show themselves until they should see the Sultan in their vicinity. So they marched in company with the hunter. When Melik Mu'eyyed arose in the morning, he collected his forces and took the direction towards the gate, where the governor had already assembled a levy within the town for the defence of the gate. As

f. 156^a Melik Mu'eyyed came near to them, and they were disposing themselves to do battle with him, the infantry mentioned above rose up against them, shouting from the summit of the mountain and rushing down on the gate, of which they took possession. The governor fled with his levy into the interior of the town, shouting "Quarter! Quarter!" The Sultan granted them their lives, and invited them to come to him. So the governor, the commissioner, the notables of the town, and the principal merchants went forth to him from love or fear. Thus he possessed himself of 'Aden, though no man of ambition had ever before taken it. He then returned to the gardens overwhelmed with an excess of joy, and reciting as a proverb the words of the poet:—

" *When no other vehicle is forthcoming than the spear-heads, the constrained one has no option but to mount thereon.*"⁹⁰⁶

212 The Sultan⁹⁰⁷ next advanced to Lahj and 'Ebyen, of both of which he took possession. Yemen was filled with dread of him, and the hearts of the inhabitants with his love.

And when the Sultan Melik 'Eshref heard of what he had done at 'Aden, Lahj, and 'Ebyen, as also that the people were attracted towards him as iron is drawn by the magnet, he equipped his son Nasir with three hundred horsemen, who went as far as Raha⁹⁰⁸ and halted there. The Sherff Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah came down from the upper country, and the Sultan Melik 'Eshref furnished him with horsemen, and sent him to join his son Nasir. He next sent for troops to come from San'ci' and other places, and he also equipped the two sons, Nejmu'd-Din and Bedru'd-Din, of the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Er-Demir. The levies thus became numerous, and the cavalry collected in large numbers. But there was at that time with Melik Mu'eyyed only the forces that had come with him from Shahr, and a body of the Jahciful⁹⁰⁹ tribesmen whose captain was 'Umer son of Suheyl.

(f. 156^b)

And in the year A.H. 695 (A.D. 1295-6) the 'Eshrefiyy f. 157^a
 forces marched from Raha to Juwwa⁹¹⁰ to a spot named the
 Grassy Knoll. Mu'eyyed likewise marched towards them
 between his two sons Dhafir and Mudhaffer, he being thus as
 a poet has expressed himself: "Thou wouldst suppose him
 of himself in a clattering concourse." And when the people
 came into collision, he routed them until he took no notice of
 them at the Knoll. So the Sherff 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah
 and the chiefs of the array descended and took possession of
 part of the plain, when a second charge took place and the
 Jahafil tribesmen were broken and turned back in flight, f. 157^b
 they forming the bulk of his force. He therefore returned to
 the high road in a defensive disposition. But his treasury and
 equipage had been already made spoil, and the enemy had
 surrounded him on the highway in every direction. The son
 of his brother, Muhammed Nasir, now came to him and
 remained with him a long while, after which they went forth
 together to a tent that had been set up. This they did not
 leave until he had been bound, as also his two sons, and they
 continued in that place the rest of the day, departing at
 early morn for Juwwa.

The Sultan Melik 'Eshref was there, waiting to receive
 intelligence of anything that should happen; and when the
 news was brought of their having been put in bonds, he
 wept bitterly, and commanded that they should be treated
 with honour, sending them on to the castle of Ta'izz, where
 they arrived on Sunday, 29th Muharrem, of the year 695
 (about 9th December, 1295), and were lodged in the house of
 detention.

The Sultan Melik 'Eshref gave orders for meats and drinks
 to be assigned to them in due course; but placed over them
 a eunuch named Kafur the Betulite, who was then captain
 of the corps of slave-guards. According to what is reported
 of him, he used to break in small fragments the bread when-
 ever he entered their presence, and sometimes would search
 their robes.

When he was thus shut up in the prison, as we have related, the jurist 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawite wrote unto him an epistle in which he said : " In the name of God the Merciful, the Compassionate: By the high forenoon and by the night when it is stilly dark, verily thy Lord God hath not abandoned thee, nor left thee in disgust ; and truly the latter end shall be better for thee than the first; and in sooth, perhaps thy Lord God will give unto thee, so that thou be well pleased."⁹¹¹

A number of poets congratulated Melik 'Eshref on the capture of his brother, as also on his imprisonment of him. The judge Taju'd-Din Musa son of Huseyn son of 'Aliyy excelled in this by his words :

*"And were it not that thy opponent is a part of thee, we had
uttered a spee eh at w h i c h the rocks would have crumbled;
I Thereat we now desire that the grudge between you may
turn to mutual content, so that affairs may again be
made whole "*

When the Sherif 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah wished to go up to his own country, the Sultan Melik 'Eshrcf clothed him with a robe of honour, made him valuable gifts, and bestowed on him the two fiefs 'Adhima⁹¹² and Miqa'.⁹¹³ And when Melik Mu'eyyed was placed in prison, his paternal aunt, the princess Ijar-Shemsiyy, came to the mausoleum of her brother the Khalifa, and dwelt therein a certain space of time, after which she became ailing, and moved to the mansion of our lord Melik Mu'eyyed at Mihal,⁹¹⁴ where she resided until she died on the 1st Rejeb in this year (about 1st May, 1296). When news of her death reached the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya, He exclaimed : " Bilqi's⁹¹⁵ the Younger is dead ! "

And in this year A.H. 695 (A.D 1295-6), in the month of Jumada the first (March, 1296), there fell in Yemen a rain that embraced the whole of it; and there came a letter to the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya from the governor of

Raha-of-the-Benu-Sherif,⁹¹⁶ informing¹ him of this rain, in which there was also a great storm of hail that killed a great number of sheep and goats. And on that day there descended a hail-stone as latge as a small mountain, with spiked prominences of which each one exceeded a cubit in length.⁹¹⁷ It fell in a lonely spot between the towns of Sijan and Raha, the greater part thereof disappearing in the earth, and leaving only a portion visible above the surface. Twenty men circled round about it, but they could not see, some of them, some others. There fell also another in a place adjacent to the country of Khawlin, which forty men tried to overturn, but which did not permit them to accomplish their object. This is one of the marvels of the kingdom of the heavens and the earth ; I recite therefore the litanies of Him whose power created this, and whose wisdom produced it!

٢١٥

And in the afore-mentioned month of Jumada of this year 695, the Sultan Melik 'Kshref went up to the city of Dumluwa and thence descended to Zebid, his entry into which was made by way of the gate of Qurtub,⁹¹⁸ the jurists going before him carrying copies of the Qur'an and the books used in preparation for its study. It was thus a day worthy to be witnessed.

Thus says 'Aliyy son of Hasan the Khazrejite: One of those who treasure up points of history, and *in* whom I trust, informed me, saying : " The Sultan Melik 'Eshref used to go for a holiday during his reign from Zebid to the date-gardens (*Nakh!*);⁹¹⁹ and there used to travel with him to the date-gardens three hundred camel-litters, in each one of which was one of his concubine-slaves"

He remained in Zebid until the month of Sha'ban, after which he went up to Ta'izz in Ramadan. In the month of Dhu'l-Hijja of this year (October, 1296) he sprang to Dhemar against the castle of Methwa,⁹²⁰ stationing therein a garrison of his troops. And among the slave-guards organized by Melik Mudhaffer there was a slave-guardsman called Faris. The tribesmen of Medh-hij took to watching him, and they

٢١٦

f. 158^b went up against him by night from every site they knew of. They beleaguered him one day ; then they got into his chamber and killed him, with seventy men of his comrades.⁹²¹

In this year A.H. 695 died the Intimate, the Judge Baha'u'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Es'ad son of Muhammed son of Musa the 'Imranite, the paragon of the men of his epoch. There sprang up between him and the Khalifa Melik Mudhaffer an intimacy of the closest nature, and this grew more and more confirmed until it resulted in his appointment as Wezfr and as the Judge of Judges.⁹²² He was an eloquent, fluent, and sedate poet, who has left some charming poems and fine essay treatises. A person who has seen his essay works in a thick volume informed me that they are replete with the qualities of perfection, comprehensive of the environments of grandeur ; only that the handwriting thereof is of poor degree. The jurist Muhammed son of 'Ibrahim of San'a' also gave me information, saying : " Our Sheykh, the erudite jurist Nefisu'd-Din Suleyman son of 'Ibrahim the 'Ahyvite, informed me, saying: 'My grandfather the Judge ShercfuYl-Din 'Ebu'l-Qasim son of 'Abdu'r-Rahman the 'Eshrefite conversed with us to the effect that he said he found a sheet of paper written in the handwriting of the judge Baha'u'd-Din, and deemed his handwriting very poor. This he afterwards sent to the Sultan Mujahid,⁹²³ on whom be God's mercy, that he might astonish him therewith ; and he, on whom be God's mercy, answered : " Excellent prince of wezirs to the lord of princes ! " These were his very words "

He was also an effective and ingenious preacher, full of subtlety and ability for government, with excellent insight for the management of the realm. And he was the first of those in whom were united the offices of wezir and judge in Yemen in the Mudhafferian reign. After him came the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Muhammed the Yahyawite in the Mu'eyyedian sovereignty ; next, the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din 'Abdu'lleh son of 'Aliyy son of Muhammed the Yahyawite

in the Mujahidian epoch ; and then the judge Wejihu'd-Din 'Abdu'r-Rahman son of 'Aliyy son of 'Abbas in the 'Eshtefian period. These are the whole of those in whom were united the offices of judge and wezīr up to the present date of the year 802.⁹²¹

The judge Baha'u'd-Din ceased not to hold the two functions of the wezirate and chief judgeship, as we have recounted, until the course of the year 694 (1294-5), when, in the month of the latter Jumada (April-May, 1295), at the time that the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer set up his son the Sultan Melik 'Eshref in the sovereignty and the realm, requiting obedience to him from the countries and the peoples, the judge Baha'u'd-Din gave his advice to the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer that his brother the judge Tusamu'd-Din Hassan should become the wezīr to Eshref. The Khalifa so commanded, and the judge Kaha'u'd-Din continued in the office of Judge of Judges. His brother Hassan used to refer to him in whatever came before him relating to the low seaboard districts, until the judge Baha'u'd-Din expired in the middle of the month of the first Rebi of the year 695 (about 20th January, 1296).

f. 159^a

۲۶۸

And in this year also died the princess Daru'sh-Shemsiyy,^{aj5} who was a daughter of the Sultan Melik Mansur Nuru'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. She was a wise, virtuous, prudent, intelligent woman, who loved her brother Mudhaffer most affectionately. She conducted her government and her measures with gave success until he attained the sovereignty ; for she was the at Zebi'd at the moment of the death of her father, and, tired herself, spent money in emolding men, and defended the city until her brother arrived from Mehjem, which was then his fief given to him by his father. When her brother arrived at Zebi'd from Mehjem, he took possession thereof, and it was the first city in which his sovereignty was made patent. She was, further, the means of the capture of Dumluwa, mention of which has already been made. For these reasons he used to show great consideration for her, and never opposed her opinion.

She was a dispenser of alms and charity, and many are the institutions she left behind her. Among them is the college known as the Shemsiyya, in Dhu 'Udeyna,⁹²⁶ a part of the city of Ta'izz, which is well endowed in mortmain trust for a precentor, a mu'ezzin, a beadle, a professor, students, a teacher, and orphans to learn the Qur'an. She built also in Zebid a college of the same name, in the south of the market of the presses. This, too, she endowed bountifully for the maintenance of those attached to it. She it was who undertook the maintenance of Mu'eyyed, son of her brother, whom she loved with ardent affection, and with whom she journeyed to Shahr, her brother the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer dying while she was there. She and Mu'eyyed then came back; and when Mu'eyyed was put in chains, as we have narrated, she went to Ta'izz and alighted in the college of her brother Mudhaffer, where she dwelt a certain space, and then fell sick. Her malady increasing, she removed to the mansion of Mu'eyyed son of her brother, and continued there until she died in the course of the month of Rejeb in this year. May God, who be extolled, have mercy on her.

f. 159^b(f. 160^b)f. 160^bf. 161^A

And in the year A.H. 696 (1296-7) died the Sultan Melik 'Eshref Mumeyyidu'd-Din 'Umer son of Yusuf son of 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Resul,⁹²⁷ in the night before Tuesday, the 23rd Muharrem, first month of the said year (about 21st November, 1296). His son Nasir was then away at Qahma, while 'Adil was at San'a' on business willed of God, who be extolled.

So the counsels of the slaves of special mark, as of the commonalty and of their highnesses the princesses of the royal family, agreed unanimously on the manifestation of the full moon of munificence, on the outshining of the sun of existence, that the lion should roar in his own jungle, while the right was established on its own pivot, that the Nu'man⁹²⁸ of the realm should rule it, and its Luqman⁹²⁹ take possession of its rein.

When it was daybreak after that night, the grandees of the

eunuchs proceeded to our lord the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, he being in his place of confinement, and informed him of the demise of his brother Melik 'Eshref, departed to God's mercy. There fell upon him that which befell him of regret for the loss of his brother, while the community of Muslims experienced a joy that well-nigh took away their consciousnesses, a transport of delights that kills. And when he went forth from his prison, he asked of the governor of the castle a sword that he might have in his hand ; so they brought out three swords, for him and his two sons. He then proceeded until he stood by his brother's head, when he wept bitterly and mourned over him most dolefully. He next went forth from his side, having given orders for the preparations for his burial, and seated himself on the throne of the kingdom until the dawn appeared. When the light of dawn had spread, he gave orders to the corps of herald-musicians of the castle to proclaim that prayer be made for God's mercy on Melik 'Eshref and for a prosperous morning to Melik Mu'eyyed, with a recitation of litanies for Him whose kingdom never ends, whose rule never ceases.

Melik 'Eshref was an auspicious prince, righteous, kind to his brothers and kinsfolks, and loving towards them. He was element towards his subjects, affable in their respect. In his days there happened in Yemen a very grievous visitation of locusts, which attacked the seed crops and the various fruits. The peasants complained to him, and he gave orders for indulgence to be shown them. But the wezir continued to press them ; he being the judge Husamu'd-Din Hassan son of 'Es'ad the 'Imranite, who did not give effect to any indulgence towards them as the Sultan had commanded. So they complained to the Sultan a second time, who then wrote to him: "O such-a-one, withdraw thou thy hand from them, and disperse them not against us, for it would be hard for us to collect them together again."⁹³⁰

rvi

One instance of his character, may God have mercy on him, is that the peasantry of the palm-groves (Nakhl)⁹³¹ in

f. 161^b the vale of Zebid had been ruined by the severe tyranny and exactions of the princes over them. To such a pitch did this condition reach that whosoever possessed date-palms, to him would no one give a wife; and what woman soever owned date-palms, her would no one take to wife, unless deceived. And when a man who possessed no date-palms took to wife a woman who also owned none, he used to say, when making the marriage-contract between him and her : "And one of our pieces of good fortune is that neither of us owns date-palms." But when Melik 'Eshref assumed the sovereignty, he commissioned a person to enquire into this matter of the palms, and removed from their owners the vexations that had been laid on them. He was the first who enjoined numbering on the jurist assessors, and he was followed in this by the princes who ruled after him ; may God have mercy on them all.

His sons were Muhammed Nasir and 'Ebu Bekr 'Adil. His wezfr was the judge Baha'u'd-Din, the wezfr of his father. And when the judge Baha'u'd-Din died, he appointed as wezfr his brother the judge Husamu'd-Din. The judge Baha'u'd-Din resigned the office of wezfr and continued in that of the Judge of Judges. His brother Hassan used to consult him in such matters only as he deemed of very great importance. But God knows best.

CHAPTER V.

On the Tidings of the Mu'eyyadiyy Sovereignty and its Events.

Thus say they who are learned in the science of political biographies and their narratives: When Sultan Melik 'Eshref was dead and the herald had proclaimed • the injunction to pray for God's mercy on him and for an auspicious morning on Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, as we have related, the city was moved, and the people were agitated, rising as waves one towards another. The Sultan gave orders for the gates of the castle to be thrown open; and the first of the people who went up to him was the wezir Husamu'd-Din Hassan son of 'Es'ad son of Musa the 'Imranite, the wezir of his brother taken to God's mercy. He went to the Sultan and swore solemn oaths of fealty. He then made the troops take the oath, together with the 'Emirs and the notables of the realm. No two of them took oath together against him, and there offered not any resistance to him either plain or mountain, country or inhabited place. All his affairs went forward in peace and concord. f. 162"

And on that day did Taju'd-Din son of the Mevvsilite write letters to all the towns of the low-lying seaboard countries, and to all the highlands, as well as to the district of San'a' and the Sherifs; so that the inhabitants tendered their allegiance by troops and troops.

He then gave orders for the funeral procession of his brother, and execution of his last will. So they carried him forth from the castle in the early morning of the night in which he expired, Dhafir and Mudhaffer, with the notables of the realm, all walking before him until they entered with him into the college⁹³² he had constructed in the western quarter

of Ta'izz. They interred him therein, and the reciters of the Qur'an chanted over him continuously for seven days, as was customary with princes.

- f. 162^b And when Melik Nasir Jelalu'd-Din Muhammed son of Mclik 'Eshref heard of the death of his father, and of the assumption of the sovereignty and sway by his uncle, he himself being away at his fief of Qahma, he at once set out for the court of his uncle to ask for his commands. And when he reached his uncle, the latter advanced to meet him
- f. 163^a and received him with great demonstrations of honour. Later on, his brother Melik 'Adil Salahu'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of Melik 'Eshref came in also from San'a', which was his fief. Him also did he treat with gratifying marks of consideration and kindness. He proposed to them both to remain in their
- rvpa respective fiefs ; but they both begged to be relieved of their principalities, saying: "We love no service after (that of) our father."

The mediator between the two brothers and the Sultan was the jurist 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'LJmer the Yahyawite, who took for them from the Sultan a solemn undertaking that he would not make any raid against them or either of them, and also a solemn covenant from them that they would not dispute with him, or either of them contend against him. There existed between the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed and the said jurist 'Ebu Bekr a firm intimacy and a strong friendship. And the Sultan, on whom be God's mercy, used to rely on the opinion of the jurist 'Ebu Bekr in everything that he counselled him. The jurist was a paragon among the men of his time and the learned ones of his epoch. And when those things occurred that we have narrated concerning his overthrow at Da'is, and the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed was imprisoned in the castle of Ta'izz, the jurist 'Ebu Bekr was grieved with great sorrow for what had befallen him. Word was brought to Melik 'Eshref that the jurist 'Ebu Bekr intended to raise an opposition and to spread trouble. So Melik 'Eshref became distrustful of him.

The jurist was informed of the plot, and wrote to the Sultan a poem in which he said :

" You long for my slaughter, while I have no design concerning you but safety in all my circumstances.

And you say that the genu ate obedient to my power. But are the genu subjugated, .save to high heaven ?

Gently! For this is the staff of Moses,⁹³³ and its swift creep; and the tiara of Mundhir, with which is the tiara of Itka.⁹³⁴ fV,*b

And these stately steeds and guardsmen, all of them ; and this trenchant blade ; and the javelin ; O high one !

And these darts, first of possessions, alt of them, are the things the keen edge of which repels from the violation of covenants.

Surmise thou not, now, that I will invoke God, the Lord of wrath, against thee to perdition ; alas ! far be it from the like of me ! f. 163^b

I have never invoked against anything without regard for propriety ; for I have already clasped the skirts of Ta-Ha (Muhammed; Quran, xx, 1 ;⁹³⁵

And the Seal of the Apostles (Muliammed) never invoked against a company who vexed him through ignorance; nor did he ever act uniutelligenrly with the iguoraui⁹³⁶

But he forsook his home and his kin, emigrating to Medina according to the command (of God), not (man's) word

And after him arose the Faithful One ('Ebu Bekr) as magistrate, until his ailotted term expired, through the poison of a plotter.

The father ('Aliyy) of Hastyn completed, as his two sons, their term also by poison and by the swords of men gone astray.

So, too, the son of 'Ed-hem⁹³⁷ woked not, though they had wrought foolishly and poured on the head of him the urine of uriners.

And had likened the beard of him, though it had already become regarded with honour by the God in whom we trust, to (that of) an unreasoning ass.

But he delayed not, neither did they delay, nor hurry; for, after all, there is no eventuating matter that can be finished by haste.

f. 164^a

Who is he among them, thinkest thou, opines that he understands not how there came upon the throne of Bilqis⁹³⁸ in a moment an invoker of God?

And however often you shall obtain satisfaction from me, and shall take revenge, it is not for me to retort with a word, or retaliate by deeds.

Decree then whatsoever thou mayest see fit, whether in patience or in haste; for (your) command is nearer to (my) heart than (your) deed.

Does he. set fire to his prison whom his lord chastises, unless he be a brother of ignorant folly as to the future as well as the present ?

Tivo months are not of the tilings that call for haste. If thou hast heard them, consider the truth of my words.

Twenty months have succeeded each other; pass not thou beyond them. And even the end of them will not necessitate completion.

And there will enter the house one to whom, in respect of it, counsels from you are not agreeable that invite woes.

You have not denied the text and the revelation, and yet thou decreest. Now by the promise of my Lord God, this is not moderation.

Hear then what I have said, and take heed thereto with patience; but turn not aside by reason of tittle-tattle.

And take it as earnest, not as jest, nor as untruth ; for this word is not of the words of jesters "

And whoever ponders over these distichs will know the powers of the erudite Sheykh as to his acquaintance with learning.

f. 164^a

r. 160

The jurist, after the composition of this poem, set out for a district as a fugitive from Melik 'Eshref, where he dwelt until Melik'Eshref died. Then, when Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed became

master of the sovereignty and realm, the jurist returned to his city and joined the Sultan, who felt great joy at sight of him, and appointed as wezir his brother, the Intimate, Muwaffaqu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Muhammd son of 'Umer son of the Yahyawite, commonly known as "The Intimate." His wezirate began in the month of Jumada the first in this year 696 (March, 1297). He instituted for him what was done for the wezi'rs, such as the uplifting of the inkstand and the binding of the turban. He also conferred upon him the office of Judge of Judges. He was the second in the whole of his affairs, and there was not with him (on the part of the Sultan) any particle of peevishness or impatience. His command had free course in the lands, and he gave command for what is seemly, forbidding what is improper; and the Sultan supported him in all this. He had an absolute precedence over others with the Sultan, such as has never been heard of. The title of "Intimate" was given to him in all the cantons of Yemen in an absolutely unqualified manner; so that it became a kind of surname in respect of him, even as was that of the Intimate, the son of 'Ibad,⁹⁴⁰ in Babylonia; and all his children, as well as his brothers, were hardly known until they were designated after him, either as his son or his brother.

And when the Sultan appointed him wezir, as we have recounted, at the date given above, the mandate of the Sultan was issued to the Judge Husamu'd-Din Hassan son of 'Es'ad the Imranite for him and his brothers to dwell in Sehfen⁹⁴¹ in all dignity and honour, no circumstance of any kind being altered in their respect. But afterwards there came to the Sultan from Nasir, his brother's son, by way of advice, to his uncle, that a slave of the judge Hassan had gone up to the canton of 'Uman,⁹⁴² and had found a woman, freed from among the slaves of 'Eshref, who was wife to the judge Baha'u'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Es'ad, and that he had had a conversation with her, in which he had confided as a secret to her that he had with him a bottle of poison given

f 164^b by his master, the judge Hassan son of 'Es'ad, who had commanded him to make himself agreeable to anyone who might approach the person of Melik Mu'eyyed and cause him to drink thereof; also, that the object of the judge, and of the sons of his father, was the total destruction of the sons of Resul. So, when notice of this reached the Sultan, he became vexed with violent indignation; and he sent for them to render account of the properties of orphans and revenues of trust estates in mortmain for the period when they were the guardians thereof. But they obeyed him not on any point of this matter at any time. So he had them publicly arrested, and he built for them a prison over the gate of the house of the local government as a precaution against their evil designs.

" And whosoever consorts long with the world, it changes in his sight, so that he sees that its truth is a lie."

rwv

Now there had been in the heart of the Sultan, on account of the two sons of 'Er-Demir, Nejmu'd-Din and Bedru'd-Din, as also on account of the son of the Hekkarite,⁹¹³ a rancour ever since the day of Da'is. So He gave orders for them to be surrounded. The)' were seized, and he sent them to the castle of Dumluwa. After that, he seized also, next to them, the 'Emir of the Jandar⁹⁴⁴ guards, whom he placed with them in the house of detention at Dumluwa.

And in the interval of these events envoys of the Shcrifs came to the Sultan to congratulate him on his sovereignty and to arrange for peace. For they had, immediately on the death of 'Eshref, on whom be God's mercy, taken possession of Kewla and burnt it; they had also taken the two castles of Lijam⁹⁴⁵ and Na'man,⁹⁴⁶ as also the city of Sa'da. And on those bases did they conclude peace. The 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya was then encamped against Kehlan⁹⁴⁷ on Mount Sheref, and the Sherifs asked him to enter with them into the treaty of peace and to withdraw the leaguer.

But he commanded them to make peace for their homes, and ceased not to besiege the castle until he took it.

And in this year A.H. 696 (A.D. 1296-7) Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed went down to Zebid, his descent being in the month of Jumada the first, after that he had conferred on his son Mudhaffer the fief of San'a', and on (his son) Dhafir those of Qahriyya⁹⁴⁸ and Jaziban.⁹⁴⁹ Melik Mudhaffer set out for San'a' in (the month of) Rejeb of the year (May, 1297), and obtained restitution of the castle of Wedd⁹⁵⁰ from the Renu'l-Harith people in the latter part of (the month of) Sha'ban (June), after having lapidated it with the ballista.

f. 164

The Sultan returned to Ta'izz⁹⁵¹ in Sha'ban, and performed his fast in the city of Ta'izz. Melik Mudhaffer came down from San'a' in the beginning of the second half of Ramadan, the reason of his descent being the Festival. So he performed the festival in Ta'izz, and then returned to his fief.

The Sultan obtained restitution of the castles of Hajja in (the month of) Dhu'l-Hijja, and took Mikhlafa from Sarim 'Ibrahim son of Yusuf son of Mansur, which had been in his possession since the year A.H. 691 (A.D. 1292). But Sarim made conditions ; among these were the concession as a fief of Mewza' ⁹⁵² with the half of Hays, a general amnesty, and pardon for whatever offences he had committed.

And in this year A.H. 696 (A.D. 1296-7) Melik Mes'ud broke out in open rebellion against his brother the Sultan. He was holder in fief of the dependencies constituting the (vale of) Surdud,⁹⁵³ and resident therein. He first made an attack upon Mahalib ;⁹⁵⁴ then he advanced and marched to Harad,⁹⁵⁵ of which he took possession. His son, 'Esedu'l-Islam Muhammed son of Hasan, had previously presented himself to his uncle the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed when he was in the city of Ta'izz ; and he showed him honour and kindness, confirming his father in his fief. So when Melik Mes'ud rebelled against his brother and marched to Harad, he collected forces, and the Sherifs of the Suleymaniyya branch⁹⁵⁶ came to him, while horsemen fell away to him from the mountains

f. 165^a

f. 165

and the low vale beyond, in great numbers. Thus there was gathered together with him a large army.

The Sultan now equipped, to do battle with him, his brother Melik Mansur 'Eyyub son of Yusuf, and his own wezir, the judge Muwaffaqu'd - Din the Intimate ; also his own son Dhafir 'Isa son of Melik Mu'eyyed. He sent with them also three elephants.⁹⁵⁷ So they marched towards him with a goodly array of troops of the court.

And in this year A.H. 696 (A.D. 1296-7) died the eiudite jurist 'Ebu'l-Hasan 'Aliyy son of 'Umer son of 'Ism.'Wl son of Zeyd son of Yahya the 'Uzcyrite by title, the Sha'bite by family. He was a jurist learned in the two fundamental systems of jurisprudence, and also in the works branching out therefrom, in syntax and in lexicography. He was from a people out of the 'Esh'ub⁹⁵⁸ tribe, called Benu'sh-Sha'ir (sons of the poet), from a branch-clan named Benu 'Ahmed, some of whom dwell in Samigh⁹⁵⁹ and some in Iknit.⁹⁶⁰ He studied jurisprudence, was noble-minded, elevated in his aims, and much respected by the people of his town, as well as by others. He was brave in war, enterprising, and a great runner. It is said, in respect of his running, that when he ran after an antelope in the open country he would catch it in the race of fleetness. He used to indite charming poetry. He had enemies who used to raid against him in considerable masses, seeking to kill him and to spoil his house ; but he would sally out against them, engage them, and rout them single-handed. Sometimes he would kill or wound some among them. He used to receive honourably and treat with kindness those who came to him. His death, God's mercy on him, took place in Jumada the first of the year 696 (March, 1297).

(f. 165^b)

f. 166^a. ^b

And in the year A H. 697 (A.D. 1297-8) Melik Mes'ud marched, and such forces as were with him, collected from the lower Mikhlaf, together with those who had joined him from among the people of the hollow vale country and others besides, intending to go to Mahalib. The Mu'eyyediyyan forces of

the Sultan met them face to face, under Melik Dhafir Tsd son of Melik Mu'eyyed, and under the Intimate, 'Aliyy son of Mulvimmed the Yahyawite, between Mahalib and Harad. But when the two forces came within sight of each other, and both sides were preparing to do battle, Melik Mes'ud perceived that he was discomfited beyond all hope. He therefore sued for peace before the cavalry encounter. The forces of the Sultan seized him, therefore, together with his bon 'Ebedu'l-Islam. This occurred in Muharram of the year (October-November, 1297). They were conducted to the sacred secluded abode of the Sultan, who uttered reproaches against them, and sent them to dwell in the house of correction in the castle of Ta'izz. The)⁷ resided there a certain space, after which he set them free, commanding them to dwell at Hays, and assigning to them a handsome allowance, to support them both, with those who were with them, dependants and attendants.

۲۵۵

" Generosities, by which the protector shows his surrounding benevolence to the recipient thereof, and which confer an inheritance of grandeur after abasement"

And in the month of Safer in this year (November-December, 1297) Melik Mudhaffer came down to resign (his fief of) San'a', which he had not entered, having merely sojourned in Dhemdr.

In the month of Rebi the first, the Sherif Suleyman son of Muhammed son of Suleyman son of Musa was murdered. They who slew him were his own slaves in the Hot Valley ('el-YVadn-Harr).⁹⁶¹

In the month of Rebi' the latter the 'Emir Scyfu'd - Din Tughn'l went up to lay siege to the castle of Shakhhab.⁹⁵² So he placed a force against it, and seized a number of the Sheykhs of (the great tribe of) Medh-hij.

And there fell, in the latter part of one night in the month of the latter Jumada, the same being the night preceding a Saturday (March-April, 1298), a torrent of vehement rain, in the district and entire country of Yemen. It began as

midnight went by, and it was accompanied with violent thunder and a very high wind. The bulk of the rain fell in the low coast-land ; so much so that it was said it carried away ships from the seashore of Sherja⁹⁶³ and of 'Ehwab,⁹⁶⁴ with whatever was in them, casting them ashore. It demolished towering castles on the hills of the Tihama, and tore up great trees by the roots. The author, on whom be the mercy of God, has said : " I surmise that it was the same which has been called 'The Rainfall of the Saturday'; for this was celebrated and much spoken of, having occurred towards the end of the seventh century (of the Hijra), and few are they who witnessed it now alive in this our picseent time, the year A.U. 790 (A.D. 1388), but I was contemporary with a number of those who witnessed it, though they have all passed away now, by reason of the lapse of time."

f. 167^a

And in the month of Sha'ban, the 'Emir Jemalu'd - Din 'Aliyy son of Behram went up to Me'rib and repaired Khazma,⁹⁶⁵ restoring its affairs to what they were on the best of legal bases.

In the month of Ramadan died the 'Imam Mutahher son of Yahya in the Derwan of Hajja.⁹⁶⁶

And in the second half of the said month of Ramadan Melik MudhafTer went up to Sai'Va', the Sultan having already equipped a force towards Hajja. With it were the marshal of his household, the great 'Emir Bedru'd-Di'n Muhammed son of 'Umer son of Mi'ka'il, and also the jurist Sherefu'd-Dm 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy the Junejd, to camp against the son of the Sulayhiyy in Yumeyn, and against 'Umer son of Yusuf in Dhafer. They surrendered the two castles and came down on amnesty. Afterwards, the supreme cortege proceeded to the upper countries, on the occasion of the refusal of the Sherifs to conclude a peace. Its entry into San'a' took place on the 25th Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year 697 (about 3rd September, 1298). It next went up to Dhahir on the 14th Dhu'l-Hijja (22nd September;. The ascent was on the day the dawn of which was marked as following a lunar eclipse. A poet has said :

f. 167^b

" *With (personal) felicity the star has no influence; therefore Mars will not injure thee, nor Saturn.*"

And when the Sultan had taken up his quarters in the camp on the Sunday, he marched on the Monday with his forces towards Miqa', which he fought against, and then returned to his camp. Now the 'Emir Ibnu Wehhas and the Sheykh Qasim son of Mansur lord of Thula had broken with their associates, the Shen'fs, and had come in to the Sultan before he went up to Dhahir. Then there went forth, with the sons of the Sheykh Qasim son of Mansur, the 'Emir 'Alemu'd - Din Qasim son of Hamza and the 'Emir Sarim 'Ibrahim son of Yusuf son of Mansur, with an army to the countries of Himyer⁹⁶⁷ and Tarf, to wage war against the 'Emir Taju'd-Din. The Sultan remained with his forces a space of eighteen days, in the course of which his troops entered Sa'da, under command of the 'Emir Jemalu'd - Din 'Aliyy son of Behram and the 'Emir 'Esedu'd - Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of 'Izzu'd - Din, There had negotiated for them the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din Musa son of 'Ahmed, the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy, and the Sherif Muhammed Hadf. And when their forces had separated, the 'Emir Musa went down to his castle, 'Azzan, upon which the troops devastated his house and his garden.

f. 167^b۲۸۴
(f. 168^m)

In the year A.H. 698 (A.D. 1298-9) the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed marched on the first day of Muharrem (8th October, 1298) from his camp to the borders of Dhahir, and halted there eight days. He next advanced to Jumran,⁹⁶⁸ where also he halted eight days; proceeding then, and encamping in Lower Dhahir, having already devastated the house of the 'Emir Humamu'd-Din and also a garden of his. He then marched to the mountain of Dhafar, where the Shen'fs prepared themselves to do battle with him. So he burnt the vineyards that were round about it. The 'Emir Muhammed son of Dawud son of the 'Imam came in to him, remaining with him several days, and dying in his camp.

f. 168^b

About this same date the Sherif and Seyyid Muhammed son of Hadi, known as the Qutabarite, came and joined the Sherifs. They proposed to promote him to be 'Imam ; but he was modest, and refused the offer.

f. 169^a When Monday the 3rd of Safer (10th November, 1298) was come, the Sultan marched from his camp, and passed the night at Kewla, where he remained the Tuesday, marching on Wednesday, and camping at the pavilion near 'Eshyah,⁹⁶⁹ where he stayed Thursday, and resumed his march on Friday the 7th of Safer, He encamped against Mfqa' with his troops and his levies. His forces filled the whole of those localities, spreading abroad over the cantons. When Saturday the 8th Safer (15th November) was come, he set up a ballista against the castle, which he besieged straitly. It then belonged to the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, who was not in it at the time, but only his son, the Sherif Idris son of 'Aliyy.⁹⁷⁰ The divinely aided forces rushed against the castle three days in succession. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah then wrote to all the Sherifs successive letters demanding succour from them ; but they answered him evasively, and excused themselves on the plea of inability.

When matters became serious he wrote a letter suggesting peace, upon which proposals and references ensued. It was decided that the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din should have an interview with the Intimate Muwaffaqu'd-Din. So he went to him, and it happened that Melik Mansur and Melik Mudhaffer were present. They all assembled together, and the whole of them proceeded to the sacred presence of the Sultan. When information reached the Sultan, on whom be God's mercy, that the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah was coming, he mounted his horse from his tent to meet him, he being already close at hand. He received him with honour and kindness, and peace was concluded between them, he obtaining for the Sherifs a truce of seven months, and surrendering, without resource, the castle of Dheyfan,⁹⁷¹ because the Sultan refused to grant an amnesty to its people.

When he had settled down in the camp, he requested of the Sultan that the sacred banners should enter the castle as a sign of his submission and surrender. They were therefore hoisted on the highest point of the castle and also of 'Adhima,'⁹⁷² so that their streamers fluttered on the highest pinnacles of both castles. And when peace was thus settled, and the Sultan had taken possession of the two castles aforesaid, 'Adjifma and Miqa', then did the Sultan, whom may God assoil, who be extolled, show a very great degree of favour to the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah, and banished from him what was on his mind, renewing for him the assignment of a military band, and presenting him with a large amount of money and vestments. The whole of these arrived at Mi'qa', and he went forth to take up the robe of honour indicative of satisfaction, accompanied by a procession with military music under the flutterings of the leonine ('Aliyyide) banners. He gave him back his countries which he had in his possession, and on the first day of the month of the first Rebi the Sultan broke up from his camp and returned to San'a'. Thus hath said the Sherif Tdn's: "And I too journeyed in his suite with my father as far as Bewn, whence I went back; for I had come foith to him in the camp of Mi'qa', where he received me kindly and with honour, ordering for me a handsome gift in money, beautiful vestments, and a stallion of pure race." (f. 160^b)
f. 170^c

And when the Sultan had settled down in San'a', the 'Emirs of the Sheriffs came in to him, and the Sheykh of the Arabs. Among them were the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy son of Musa son of the Tmam, for the completion of the peace with the Sherifs. This was concluded on the basis of the surrender of Lijam, Na'man, Sa'da, and a portion of the district of Mida', as things were in the days of the Khalifa. Harbingers went forth with tidings of the territories of which he obtained possession.

The Sultan now took his departure, his face turned towards the alcove of bliss in the city of Ta'izz, having in his suite

f. 170^b the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Di'n 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah, the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy son of Musa son of the 'Imam, the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas, and the 'Emirs of the Arabs, the lands and the people yielding' obedience to him. He remained in Ta'izz four months, in the course of which was born unto the Sultan his son Melik Sa'id, of the princess Kerima, daughter of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of 'Aliyy son of Resul. A great festivity was made for him; but, at the termination of its continuance, he died after a few days, and it was as the poet has expressed it:

" *How short was the life of that star! And so with the life
of the star of the day dawns !*

فان And the crescent of the days that have passed away did not
become round as a full-moon; nor did it delay for the
time of disappearance."

The Sultan then went to Zebid in the month of the latter Jumada of this year 698 (February, 1299), accompanied by the 'Emirs of the Sherifs and the Sheykhs of the Arabs. He entered the city of Zebid with his army, and remained there during the month of the venerated Sha'ban, but performed the fast of Ramadan in the city of Ta'izz, where also he held the festival of fast-breaking. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah took leave of him on the day of the festival, as they were both seated at a meal. He set out for his own country in (the month of) Shewwal (July, 1299).

The Sherif 'Idris has related in his book the following: " We were talking over, in the presence of my father, on whom be God's mercy, the kindness of the Sultan towards him, and what he had bestowed on him in the day of his departure from Mi'qa' on the last day of Safer until he parted from him on the day of the new moon of Shewwal. We computed it in round numbers, not accurately, and it was more than seventy thousand ducats of the royal mint, besides vestments, horses, commodities, and furniture, with the like thereof."

" *These are generositys, not tivo bowls of milk sky-blue with water, which turns afterwards to urinings*"

And in the month of Dhu'l-Qa'da, Melik Mudhaffer Hasan son of Dawud set out for his fief at San'a'; for he had come down with his father on the day of his descent. His entry into San'a' was on the Monday, 13th Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year (about 1st August, 1299), and he remained there until the last day of Dhu'l-Hijja (26th September).

The royal court proceeded to 'Aden in the end of Shewwal, and remained there until the end of Dhu'l-Hijja. He held the festival of sacrifice there, and the banquet was served in vessels under the sight of the Sultan on the shore of the sea. The poets arose in the banquet with all kinds of panegyrics, while the merchants resident in the fortress offered choice gifts, as is usual with princes. The Sultan refused them, and commanded the distribution of robes of honour to them, and diplomas of rank, together with riding mules of choice breed, fully caparisoned with gold-embroidered saddles and variously decorated surcingles. The ship-captains from India observed their own ceremonial; and he gave orders for the honourable treatment of the ship-captains and the merchants who frequented the fortified frontier haven, commanding also the abolition of the security payable on the house of friendship. Pie set up by his goodness the fair of justice, and set up the fair for horses from the gate of the royal stable. The Karimiyya⁹⁷³ ship-captains and merchants went away each flying the flag of his equity in their various cities, while the frontier fortified port itself smiled under his words. He returned and went back to the city of Ta'izz.

In the year A.H. 699 (A.D. 1299-1300) Melik Mudhaffer took the castle of 'Aras⁹⁷⁴ with the sword by assault, having previously captured the castle of 'Erbab, both of which had belonged to the Tsma'fliyya⁹⁷⁵ faction. A great public rejoicing was organized at San'a* for this event, its cathedral mosque being dressed out with all kinds of draperies. The

f. 171

f. 171^af. 171^b(f. 172-^b)f. 173^a

iv

'Emir of the city gave orders for the shops and markets to be dressed out; and public cursing of the 'Isma'iliyya sect took place.

And in this year 699 died the great 'Emir Jemdlu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of 'Abdu'llah son of Hasan son of Hamza son of Suleyman son of Hamza, in his castle of Miqa'. He was one of the heads of the Sherifs, and one of their chiefs, notables, and rulers. His age was 70 and odd. His son has proverbially likened him to what is described in the words of Ziyad surnamed 'A'jem (the Mute or Muttcrer ; or, the Persian or Foreigner), where he sings :

" Mughira ⁹⁷⁶ has died, after long offering himself to slaughter among the spear-heads and the sword-blades."

And when the Sherif Jemalu'd-Din was dead, his family unanimously decided to raise to the chieftainship his son 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idris. This Sherif 'Idn's was one of the most distinguished of men, possessing united in himself all the qualities of perfection. He was a horseman and a bold, enterprising leader ; he was erudite, intelligent, wise, and sagacious, munificent, generous, honest, clement, versed in many different sciences relative both to prose and to verse. He was the author of the book named " Treasury of the Wise as to Dates and Notices";⁹⁷⁷ and to him belong other instructive compilations besides, especially historical. And when his father died he wrote to the Sultan, informing his gracious recollection that he was a fruit of the tree his gifts had planted, and a shoot from the stock his liberalities had watered. Shukr son of 'Aliyy the Qasimite proceeded to the sacred court to represent matters for him to the Sultan. To him he gave a written instruction to present himself at court and send him a safe-conduct from the Sultan. When the royal safe-conduct reached him he proceeded to the sacred court, where he arrived at the end of Dhu'l-Qa'da of this year 699, the Sultan being then at Thu'bat. He was

f. 173^b

r11

called to the hall of audience to pay homage, and the Sultan received him with perfect welcome, honour, and distinction. It happened that the festival of sacrifice was at hand, and a sacred mandate was issued to the marshal of the divinely assisted forces that the parade ground should be opened by none other but him, before the whole of the 'Errors and principal dignitaries of the realm. And so it was. Then, when the festival was gone by, there ensued a conference for the surrender of what was under his rule by way of castles, there being so possessed by him those of 'Adhima and Miqa'. He saw that their surrender would be a title of safety; for, in his opinion, that was equity; so he, fearing lest he might be put under arrest, turned his mind to compliance.

And in the year A.H. 700 (A.D. 1300-1) the Sultan received possession of the castles held by the Shcnf 'Idris son of 'Aliyy, on the 16th of Muharrem (1st October, 1300), when the Sultan commanded that all things should be observed as had been usual towards his father. A military band was therefore conferred upon him and banners. He further ordered for him a present of nine thousand ducats, rarities, vestments, horses, and slaves. He then rode on horseback with the 'Emirs and troops in the royal service under the flutterings of the Sultan's banners coming or going. He returned to his quarters accompanied by an escort of divinely assisted troops, who were admitted to a banquet magnificently laid out with viands of various savour and hues. He also received a patent for the fief of the city of Qahma.

f. 174^af. 174^b

After this the supreme cavalcade set out for the low sea-board country, its departure from Ta'izz taking place on Saturday, 3rd of Safer (17th October, 1300). When he had entered Zebid he abode there until some days of the first Rebi' had elapsed, and then he set out for the Surdud districts, entering Mehjem with a thousand horsemen of his forces, where he was congratulated by a number of the poets of his realm.

f. 174^b

The Sultan remained at Mehjem for a few days, returning

thence to Zebi'd, while the divinely assisted troops proceeded to the country of the Ma'aziba Arabs, by reason of certain disorders committed by them. He slew of them a considerable number, and spoiled their possessions with severity. They gave hostages, and these he left in Zebid. The Sultan proceeded to the village of date-palms in the early days of the month of Rejeb (March, 1301), remaining there several days.

When he set out to go up to Ta'izz, his son Melik Dhafir proceeded to San'a' as its holder in fief. The tribesmen met him in the defile of Sayd,⁹⁷⁸ and he attacked the people of Minqada⁹⁷⁹ in an especial manner, taking their horses from them by reason of what they had done. He then journeyed to Rida',⁹⁸⁰ and next to Dhemar, entering San'a' at length in the last decade of Ramadan. The Sultan journeyed from Zebi'd, with the intention of going to Ta'izz, in the middle of Rejeb (about 1st April, 1301).

In the latter days of this year 700 (August-September, 1301), written communications took place between the Sultan and the Sherifs by reason of events that had occurred on the part of the 'Emir Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Musa son of 'Ahmed, and of the 'Emir Taju'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Yahya. The Sultan, in consequence, moved to Jened and ordered up all the royal camel-trains from the sea-coast countries. The 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril, the chamberlain, proceeded to Dhemar, and the Sultan prepared to ascend to the upper countries. The judge, (Muhammed) the Dhemarite, then came in with hostages from the Sherifs and with a conclusion of peace that satisfied the Sultan.

In the year A.H. 701 (A.D. 1301-2) the Sultan journeyed from Jened to Dumluwa, where he remained twenty days and then returned to Ta'izz. He again resolved on ascending to the upper countries. So he summoned the Sherif 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idri's son of 'Aliyy from Qahma. When he reached Ta'izz information came in that the Sherifs, the Benu 'Aliyy, lords of the Mikhlaf-Suleymaniiy,⁹⁸¹ had murdered

the commandant Khatilba, and had seized forty horsemen of its garrison. He had been stationed at Raha⁹⁸² with a hundred horsemen. So the command of the Sultan went forth to the Sherif 'Idris, ordering him to advance towards them, He attached to him a force of the divinely assisted body-guard, and also the collector of Zebid, 'Ahmed son of the Khirtabirtite, together with the 'Emir governing at Harad. So the divinely aided forces marched to Raha, and entered it by assault in the latter end of the month of Sha'ban (April, 1302) The rebels went forth in flight, the troops pursuing them towards Lu'lu'a.⁹⁸³ The force destroyed by fire the villages of the evildoers, who then begged for quarter and an amnesty. They offered also to restore the horses they had captured at Raha. The Sultan's lieutenant, the Sherif 'Aliyy son of Suleyman son of 'Aliyy, received possession of Raha, and the divinely aided force returned on its way to the sacred court of the Sultan

In the latter Jumada (February, 1302) the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril had a fight with the Jahafil and 'Ajaum'-⁹⁸⁴ tribes, he being then holder of Lahj as his fief, and killed of them about forty men. He had a second encounter with them afterwards, and slew about ninety of their men.

In the latter part of Sha'ban of this same year 701 (April, 1302) the Sultan ascended to the upper countries, stopping several days at Jened, several more at Mews'a, and again some days at San'a' Thence he set out for phahir, going up by the defile of 'Ujeyb.⁹⁸⁵ The reason that necessitated his ascent was that which was done by the two 'Emirs Musa and Taju'd-Din in time of peace by their devastating Ta'izz⁹⁸⁶ and Qunna;⁹⁸⁷ then the proclamation of himself as 'Imam by the son of Mutahher, with his gathering together with the Sherifs in Jewb, and his advancing to Tarf; also, the descent of the 'Emir Taju'd-Din to Hajja of Mikhlafla The Benu Shawir⁹⁸⁸ and others of the Arabs had already taken an oath of fealty to him. He therefore set fire to 'Arida,⁹⁸⁹ and then turned back.

f. 110

f. 176^b

When the Sultan had ascended by the defile of 'Ujeyb, the 'Emir Musa son of 'Ahmed confronted him there, and the 'Emir 'Abdu'llah son of Wehhas. So the Sultan ascended the mountain of Dhafar⁹⁹⁰ by means of the mountain Subh,⁹⁹¹ and took possession of Qunna⁹⁹² on the Tuesday the last day of Ramadan (May, 1302), camping there with his entire force. Early on the Wednesday morning he marched, and a portion of his troops went down and fought a battle in the irrigation channel, where a chief officer of Melik Mansur's household was killed. The Sultan then turned back, and by climbing attained to a commanding position above Dhafar, in the direction next to Qahir⁹⁹³ on its west, towards Qunna. There he remained eight days, and set about its restoration. A severe state of suffering befell the troops there, through lack of water and provisions. A bucketful went up to the price of ten pieces of silver, and one Zebi'd pint (?) of flour the same. But when the Sultan had ascertained the privations of the troops he gave orders for the removal of the camp to Werwer,⁹⁹¹ placing in garrison at Qunna the 'Emi'r Nejmu'd-Din Musa son of 'Ahmed, and at Ta'izz a certain Husam son of Mes'ud son of Tahir. This is the ancient castle that was dismantled by Suleyman son of Qasim. He gave orders to restore both those places, and set up a ballista in Ta'izz which battered them, causing extreme damage. The battering and the siege were incessant, and battle after battle was fought from time to time below the ' Gate of Aid '⁹⁹⁵ between the men of the camp and the people of Dhafar. A calamity now befell the camp, and a great number of camels died, more especially. The price of provisions sometimes cheapened, so that a Zebid peck (?) cost only four pieces of silver, while at other times it became dear and would reach the price of seven pieces of silver. Then he would enjoin on the troops to muster and engage in fight. The leonine kettledrums would be beaten, the Sultan's banners would flutter in guise of flashing lightnings.

The 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Suleyman son of Qasim saw that,

should matters continue in this fashion, it would result in the ruin of his territories. He therefore had recourse to policy in the affair. He sent forth the sons of his brother with a company of the Sheriffs to the outside of the rampart of Dhafar near to the 'Gate of Khayber,'⁹⁹⁶ his wezir 'Aliyy son of Duhruj being- with them. He shouted out, at the top of his voice, that the 'Emir and the Sherifs begged that the Sultan would draw near to them, when they all would serve him and say : " We are the slaves of the Sultan." The son of Duhruj then asked for a safe-conduct, with which he might present himself at the tented camp. This was accorded. So he went down and stood respectfully in the presence of the Sultan. The matter was then settled on condition that the Sherif Suleyman son of Qasim should sell to the Sultan the castle of Telmus⁹⁹⁷ for fifty thousand ducats, giving as hostages for this the two sons of his brother, Muhammed and Dawud, as well as his wezir 'Aliyy son of Muhammed son of Duhruj ; that the Sultan should dismantle Ta'izz, lately restored above Dhafar, as also Qunna; and that the 'Emir Taju'd-Din should surrender the castle of Hadda,⁹⁹⁸ with Huqub,⁹⁹⁹ dismantling the castle of Shureyb,¹⁰⁰⁰ and that he should remove to the Mid a¹⁰⁰¹ country, retaining something of his present territories and giving his son as hostage.

f. 177^a

They who were about the Sultan deemed this a commendable arrangement, as the Sultan would doubtless obtain possession of Sa'da, while the hostages would be guarantees for fidelity to the engagements. The Sultan consented to it, therefore, and received the hostages, after having proclaimed his goodwill towards them ; he also sent up to them the stipulated amount of treasure. He equipped the jurist Sherefu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy the Juneydite with troops to take possession of Telmus, the Sherff Suleyman son of Qasim sending as envoy with them one of his trusty men. So they all proceeded to Sa'da, while the Sultan held the festival of the sacrifice at Werwer. The poets had remained behind by reason of the distance of the difficult way, so that none

f. 177^b of them were present but the erudite Sabiqu'd-Din Yusuf the 'Ansite, who on the day of the festival recited a fine poem. The jurist 'Afffu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of Ja'fer, too, sent his poem to the camp at Werwer.

f. 178^a And when the Friday was come, the 15th Shewwal (about 15th July, 1302), the Sultan broke up from the camp at Werwer, and marched towards Hurtban,¹⁰⁰² which he assaulted on the uSth, the troops fighting vehemently. The Shefalit¹⁰⁰³ men reached the gate of the castle, where a cut and thrust struggle took place. The Shefalit men took down what was broken, and the people of the castle destroyed what was borne. The Shefalit men returned to the combat, but found all in ruins. Had it been otherwise, little was wanted for its capture. There were killed a certain number of the troops, shot with Arabian arrows ; among them the 'Emir Muhammed son of the Sha'bite. The Sultan then gave orders for a camp to be formed against them, with the erection of a ballista. He stayed there eight days, and then journeyed to San'a', leaving in the camp against Hurthan the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Abbas son of Muhammed son of 'Abdu'l-Jeh'l.

111 In this year 701 died the great 'Emir, the Sherif 'Ebu Numeyy Muhammed son of 'Ebu Sa'd son of 'Aliyy son of Qatada the Hasanite, lord of Mekka, which God guard, who be extolled. He was a great 'Emir, who had long been in the enjoyment of the 'Kmi'rship, fond of literature and of listening to it. He performed liberalities to poets who had recourse to him by letting loose their imaginations in the racecourses of poems.

f. 178^b When the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed came to the sovereignty, he equipped in the year A.H. 696 his divinely aided banner and a sacred litter of pilgrimage under the escort of the Qa'id 'Ibnu Zaki. The Sherif 'Ebu Numeyy received him with honour and distinction, so that the streamers of the divinely aided banner fluttered on the Mount of Recognition on (the day of) 'Arafa¹⁰⁰⁴ (eve of the Festival of Sacrifice), when his mu'ezzin proclaimed the titles of the Sultan above the heads of those

present, from the alcove *of* (the well) Zemzem,¹⁰⁰⁵ so that those qualities were heard of by whomsoever that sacred spot embraced. He swore the most solemn oaths of fealty to the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, taking hold of the upper part of his shirt with both his hands, as the custom runs.

There came to the said Sherif what the beneficences of the Sultan necessitated of that which the Khalffa. had appointed, in money, provisions, vestments, perfumes, musk, lign-aloes, ambergris, alum of all colours, and splendid robes of honour.¹⁰⁰⁶ The amount of the coin was eighty thousand pieces of silver ; that of the corn, four hundred quarts. His 'Emirship over Mekka and its environs lasted more than fifty years. There were born to him more than twenty sons, and his sons split up into factions after him, the Shen'fs and their leaders taking the different sides of his sons. A portion of them sided with Rumeytha and Humeйда, while another faction took part with 'Ebu'l-Ghayth and 'Utayfa. Rumeytha and Humeйда became more powerful than 'Ebu'l-Ghayth and 'Utayfa, both of whom they seized. These two remained in the prison of the former two a certain space of time, when they devised a plan, got out, and took refuge *in* one of the houses of the leaders and Shen'fs, who gave them both an asylum.

When the Egyptian caravan of pilgrims arrived 'Ebu'l-Ghayth went out to meet them, and they took sides with him. When the assembly of pilgrims dispersed, the Egyptian 'Emir of the Pilgrim-Caravan laid hands on the two Shen'fs Rumeytha and Humeйда, he being at that time the great 'Emir Ruknu'd-Din Beybars. He took them both with him in chains to Egypt, appointing as 'Emirs in Mekka Muhammed son of Tdris and 'Ebu'l-Ghayth, whom he caused to take an oath of fealty to the lord of Egypt. The two remained thus for a certain interval, after which the Sherff 'Ebu'l-Ghayth expelled Muhammed son of Idris from Mekka. Matters became serious ; battles were fought between the two frequently, and in these a number of the Sherifs were slain.

The Sherif 'Ebu'l-Ghayth now wrote to the Sultan Melik

f. 179^af. 179^a

rr Mu'eyyed, with the offer of submission, service, and fidelity. He sent an hostage, and the Sultan accepted the offer from him.

f. 179^b In the year A.H. 702 (A.D. 1302-3) the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, on whom may God have mercy, equipped the Sherif 'Idri's son of 'Aliyy, who laid waste Jahiliyya¹⁰⁰⁷ and Rahaba. He also equipped the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Dm 'Abbas sun of Muhammed to the mountain of the tent-dwellers (Hashem), whose crops he destroyed.

The Sultan had taken hostages from the Sherifs when he proposed to break up from his camp at Werwer. These were the two 'Emirs, Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Qasim and his brother, the 'Emir Dawikl son of 'Ahmed son of Qasim, the Sheykh 'Aliyy son of Duhruj and his son, together with the judge 'Ahmed the Dhemarite. He had also equipped the jurist Sherefu'd-Di'n 'Ahmed son of 'Aliyy the Juneydite to receive possession of the castle of Telmus, the Sherifs sending forth with him an envoy of their own, as we have recounted. But the people of the castle refused to surrender it, and delivered it to the Sherif 'Ebu Sultan. The Sherif Shukr journeyed to the Sherifs at Dhafar to complete what they had stipulated as to the surrender of the castle of Telmus, and he remained with them a season. There then came a letter from him asking for the dispatch of the 'Emir Muhammed son of Hatim; and him the Sultan sent also to them.

rr In the midst of all this the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril arrived from his fief at Lahj ; upon which the Sultan conferred on him San'a' as his fief. This occurred in the second half of Safer (October, 1302). The 'Emir Shukr and the 'Emir Muhammed son of Hatim remained at Dhafar a certain space of time, and then both came back to the Sultan with a truce for six months, against further hostages given by the Sherifs. Prolonged negotiations ensued upon this point, and the Sultan became extremely angry. He therefore equipped the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril and the 'Emir 'Ibnu Wehhas, who encamped in Werwer. They had with them the Sheykh Muhammed son of f. 180^a 'Aliyy son of Duhruj in custody. He had tendered his services

and fidelity, having guaranteed to the Sultan the capture of Dhafar in eight days.

When they had reached Werwer they sent out a force and took possession of Qunna,¹⁰⁰⁸ which they began to restore. The blockading camp remained at Werwer. A severe scarcity befell these countries, so that a Zebid measure reached in the camp the price of four ducats, and even more than this. Many districts were deserted by their inhabitants; they died of starvation, and the very clay soils were sold at a very low price. The scarcity was universal over the whole of Yemen, plain and rocky.

The Sherif 'Ebu Sultan remained in Telmus. The 'Emirs (deserted to) 'Izzu'd-Din, and the people of Sa'da returned from Felela.¹⁰⁰⁹ The Sultan equipped the 'Emir Nejmu'd-Din Musa son of 'Ahmed to Sa'da to put its affairs in order. He also equipped the 'Emir 'Abbas son of Muhammed with a force to the country of the 'Emir Taju'd-Din, to make war on him. The Sherifs seized the judge Muhammed the Dhemarite, and took whatever they found in his house.

r*

In the month of Rejeb there fell in the district of San'a' violent rains, but prices remained as they were. At Dhafar there entered through this rain such quantity as to fill the homesteads. The leaguer of Telmus and Dhafar ceased not, while the dearth increased until the Zebid peck of flour rose to thirty pieces of silver in the camp.

In the latter days of Rcjeb the people demanded that peace should be made on condition of the return of the money paid for Telmus. They paid down on account of it sixteen thousand (ducats) together with silk and jewels for twelve thousand more, obtaining a delay for the remainder until the 10th of Shewwal, giving as hostages for it the two sons of the 'Emir 'Ahmed son of Qasim and the castle of Mudara,¹⁰¹⁰ by the hand of the 'Emir Wehhis. The Benu Duhruj took away their families from Dhafer and took up their abode in San'a'. The 'Emir Taju'd-Din surrendered the castle of Hadda, and gave his son as a hostage with the pledge delivered by the 'Emir Suleymn son

of Qasim. Peace was concluded between the Sultan and the lords of Dhafar with Taju'd-Din on condition that the Sultan should dismantle Telmus and then do what he liked with it without offence being taken.

f. 180^b And in this year A.H. 702 (A.I. 1302-3) the Sultan, on whom be God's mercy, conferred Lahj as a fief upon the Shcrif 'Imadu'd - Din 'Idris son of 'Aliyy, when Tughril removed thence in the former Reb'f of the year (November, 1302). He therefore journeyed thither and arrived theie on the 4th of the latter Rebi' (about 1st December). The Jahafil tribesmen had collected bodies of men and formed a camp at Sa'id.¹⁰¹¹ But when the Shcnf Imadu'd-Din arrived at Da'is¹⁰¹² they broke up from their camp. The troops rode after them and overtook a party, among whom was Yusuf son of Midaqqa, whom they slew, and whose head they cut off. The Jahafil remained after this for a space in Suheyb,¹⁰¹³ making predatory excursions to the sea-coast and elsewhere. The Shen'f Tmadu'd-Din then marched against them, and he was joined by the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of Nur, who then held the fief of 'Ebyen.¹⁰¹⁴ They penetrated against them into a locality named Shu'ba,¹⁰¹⁵ and 1cached places in their country that none of the Sultan's forces had ever arrived at before this. When the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din returned from his campaign, he equipped a force to the coast and they surprised 'Ibrahim son of Shu'ayr son of 'Abdu'l-'Aziz, who was at that time the best horseman of the Jahafil tribes. They killed him and cut off his head. The horsemen of Sa'id, too, surprised five of the 'Ajalim tribe, and slew them.

In the month of Sha'ban of this year A.H. 702 the Sultan turned his course towards Yemen, entering the castle of his capital Ta'izz on the last day of that month, or, as is also said, on the first day of Ramadan (about 1st April, 1303).

And in this year died Melik 'Adil Salahu'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of Melik 'Eshref; his death, may God have mercy on him, took place in the village of Diras. And in the latter part of the month of Ramadan the Shen'f Tmadu'd-Din Idris son

of 'Aliyy came up to the capital, Ta'izz, on account of the festival. A number of the poets were also present, and the jurist 'Afifu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of Ja'fer recited a poem, reverberated everywhere, of the very choicest of his verse, delivering it on the day of the festival.

In this same year A.H. 702, also, the Sultan issued his command, may God have mercy on him, for the building of his college, known as the Mu'eyyediyya, in the Western Ward of Ta'izz. He established therein an 'imam, a mu'ezzin, a beadle, a teacher, orphans to learn the Qur'an, a professor of the school of the 'Imam Shafi'iyy, a tutor, students of the sacred science, and a leader who should recite the Qur'an after the seven methods of vocalization, bestowing thereon a trust estate in mortmain of lands and vineyards sufficient to maintain the whole of them. He further gave in trust for ever a number of choice books to this college.

f. 181^bf. 182^a

In the year A.H. 703 (A.D. 1303-4) there arrived the 'Emir Bedru'd-Di'n Mektub the Merqabite, as envoy from the countries of Egypt to Yemen, with news of the victory, through the divine aid, gained over the troops of the Tartars by the Muslims at Merju's-Suffer¹⁰¹⁶ (Meadow-land of the Whistlers, in Hawran, south of Damascus), the number of the slain then in the said battle being one hundred thousand killed. The Sultan paid great attention to the envoy who brought him the bulletin of triumph; the military kettledrums were beat, and proclamation made for public rejoicing and felicitations. The whole of the notables of the realm went forth, wezirs, 'emirs, and commandants, to meet the envoy. The Sultan, God's mercy on him, gave orders to show honour to the said envoy and to have him lodged in a place suited to his condition. He bestowed on him gifts abundantly and in perfection. An answer was written for him in the sense of what he had brought, and he went back to his lord, returning to Cairo.

(ff. 182^b; 184^r)f. 184^b

Afterwards news came of the arrival of a large military force from the countries of Egypt at Mekka the Honoured, which may God guard, who be extolled. The Sultan acted with

circumspection, went from Ta'izz to Zebid in the latter part of Dhu'l-Qa'da, gave orders for the repair of Birk,¹⁰¹⁷ to which place he sent a commander with a detachment of the divinely aided forces. When the pilgrimage was concluded news came that the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Selar, lieutenant of the realm in the Egyptian territories, had performed the pilgrimage with very large escort, and had distributed an immense amount of money as alms to the inhabitants of the two sacred cities. Thus has said 'Ibnu 'Abdi'l-Mejid in his book named "The Gladness of Yemen" (Behjetu'l-Yemen): "I have heard that his alms were over six hundred thousand pieces of silver, and of corn of superior quality, brought by sea by the road of Qusayr¹⁰¹⁸ to Judda,¹⁰¹⁹ was ten thousand *irdebb*¹⁰²⁰ (about six thousand quarters); and that there was not left in Hijaz that year anyone in debt." He has also said: "And it has been communicated to me that the income of his fief, of his trusts, of his properties hired out, and of the rent of his estates in Egypt and Syria, each day was a hundred thousand pieces of silver, special to his own treasury, besides what was incumbent on him as appropriated to his dependents." Thus end his words.

f. 185^v And in this year A.H. 703 (A.D. 1303-4) there came a man of the merchant class from the countries of Khata¹⁰²¹ by way of China, whose name was 'Abdu'l-'Azizson of Mansur the Kelbite, with merchandize to an enormous amount. He had with him three hundred bales of silk, each weighing three hundred *rats* of Baghdad (lbs. avoird.); four hundred and fifty pounds of musk, run into vases of pewter; of china porcelain a large quantity; a goodly supply of jade vessels inlaid with gold, such as large dishes; a like quantity of alum of various colours; a great number of male and female slaves, and five pounds weight of the silver of diamond.¹⁰²² He asserted that the whole was an alms to the two sacred cities entrusted to his keeping by merchants of that region. The customs-dues or tithe of what came with him to the fortified frontier of 'Aden the well-guarded was fixed at three hundred thousand pieces of silver. When he had taken up his abode in 'Aden he proceeded to the sacred

gate, where he was received by the leonine generous one¹⁰²³ with universal munificence. He presented before the place of audience gifts in money and rarities that were admired. So the command emanated for their acceptance, and the Sultan showered on him rich dresses of honour, causing him to ride on noble saddle-beasts.¹⁰²⁴ He wrote in his favour as a return for what he had offered, several times its value. A sacred mandate was sent to the officers in charge at the well-guarded frontier port for them to show him respect and honour; and he was offered his choice either to continue his journey or to remain. He opted to journey in the direction of Egypt and its dependencies, so to renew his ties with its inhabitants.

And in this year A.H. 703 (A.D. 1303-4) the Sherif 'Idris son of 'Aliyy brought about a skirmish with the Jahafil tribesmen, in which he gave proof of his 'Aliyyide energy and Hasanide valour.¹⁰²⁵ The total of those who gathered together on the Jahafil side was forty horsemen and a thousand two hundred foot, while the Sherif had with him two hundred foot and forty horse. He made a great carnage of the Jahafil, while there were slain of the troops an inconsiderable number, though among them was the Sherif 'Aliyy son of Muhammed the Leper ('el-'Ebresh), who was a son of a paternal uncle of the Sherif 'Idris.

And in this year A.H. 703 (A.D. 1303-4) died the 'Emir 'Ebu Sultan, who held possession of Telmus. He had agreed with the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Behram for the surrender of the castle to the Sultan, and the two had exchanged hostages to this effect. But after his death the garrison had made themselves completely masters of the situation, and tendered allegiance at his decease to the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Musa son of 'Ahmed son of the 'Imam. He accordingly marched thitherwards with a store of corn in the latter part of the night. When the son of Behram heard of this he issued from Sa'da towards them, and severe fighting ensued between them, the two 'Emirs, 'Aliyy son of Musa and 'Aliyy son of Behram, keeping close to each other, and two horsemen being killed on the two sides. f. 185^b

The Sultan had already sent the 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Musa to organize Sa'da. He also sent the 'Emir 'Abbas son of Muhammed son of 'Abdu'l-Jelil to the countries of Taju'd-Din to make war on him. On the part of 'Aliyy son of Musa at Sa'da that occurred which has been stated ; and when the store of corn had gone up to Telmus there arrived the 'Emir Mu'eyyed son of 'Ahmed the Hedewite, one of the erudite men of the Zeydiyya sect, one of their eminent men of talent, one of their tuskers, and one of their governing minds. He abode a space in the camp of the Sherifs, their camp being under the castles of the 'Emir Musa.

While this was taking place the 'Emir Muhammed son of Mutahher son of Dhuleyma arrived, who was on his way to Sa'da. The 'Emir Mu'eyyed son of 'Ahmed went to meet him in the town of the Benu 'Uweyr.¹⁰²⁶ Afterwards the Sherifs joined them with a goodly array of horsemen, and they all journeyed together with the design of reaching Telmus. The Ghuzz Kurds mounted their steeds from Sa'da, and barred their way, when there took place a great conflict between the two forces. The right wing of the Sultan's troops was broken, as also their left wing, while their centre maintained themselves with admirable intrepidity. But, when their comrades had been routed, it was not possible for them to maintain their position after the force had been disorganized, and they therefore followed after the fugitives. On that day was slain 'Ay-Bek of Hijaz the 'Eshrefite, who was one of the heroes summed up as such. Three horsemen and four footmen were killed with him, while seven head of steeds were captured. The Sherifs immediately marched on the city of Sa'da, and this took place in the latter half of Sha'ban in the year 703 (about April, 1304). The Sherifs remained in Sa'da a certain number of days, and then they began a correspondence for peace. A truce was concluded to the end of Dhu'l-Hijja with the stipulation that Sa'da should be evacuated by both parties. The Sherif Shukr went down to the sacred court to treat for the conclusion of peace, and there journeyed with him the Sherif

¶

Dawud son of 'Izzu'd-Din. He was not accepted, and therefore returned abashed to his companions. They worked to make the truce definitive; and the Sultan equipped as a field force the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Abbas son of Muhammed, with two hundred horse and two captains from the Medh-hij tribe in the latter part of Dhu'l-Qa'da. They corresponded concerning peace after the completion of the preceding truce.

And in this year A.H. 703 died Melik Dhafir Qutbu'd-Din 'Isa son of Melik Mu'eyyed in the castle of Ta'izz on the 24th Mtiharrem. His funeral was attended by his brother Melik Mudhaffer and his paternal uncle Melik Mansur with all the notables of the realm. He was buried in the college of his father, built in the western quarter of the city of Ta'izz. r11
rn
(ff.186^b-188^b)

In the year A.H. 704 (A.D. 1304-5) the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Buz son of Hasan set out from Harad for Sa'da to reinforce 'Abbas son of Muhammed son of 'Abbas and 'Aliyy son of Behram. The 'Emir 'Abbas son of Muhammed destroyed the seed-crops of the Sherffs at Sa'da and in its districts. And there entered the cattle and families of over thirty horsemen, with three hundred footmen into Ta'izz of Sa'da.¹⁰²⁷ He went down into the hollow of Jewf, thence reaching San'a', and proceeding towards Yemen. Then, when Sa'da became free of troops, the progeny ('Al) of Shemsu'd-Din collected their forces and went down into the hollow of Jewf, remaining three days at the market-place (Suq) of the progeny ('Al) of Di'am,¹⁰²⁸ the districts belonging to the Sultan having already congregated in Zahir,¹⁰²⁹ they having also a certain function of government in Na'man.¹⁰³⁰ f. 189^a

And in the month of Safer the Sultan arrested the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of 'Izzu'd-Din, together with his son the Sherff Shukr son of 'Aliyy the Qasimite, and gave orders also for the seizure of his children wherever they might be. This was on account of what had entered the mind of the Sultan respecting their conduct at Sa'da and Telmus. And he chastised them as their likes are treated.

And at this date a supreme mandate issued for the equipment

۳۱۲ of the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Buz as envoy to the lands of Egypt. But information came that the 'Emirs in Egypt had wrought foul play on the Sultan,¹⁰³¹ and that the country was out of order. So the Sultan postponed that design, according to the son of Buz four sets of kettledrums with four banners, who then returned to his fief.

f. 189^b And in the first Jumada month the distress ceased with the dearth, and prices became low in all the cantons of Yemen. The commandant also came back who had gone to repair Birk, he being Musa son of 'Ebu Bekr son of 'Ala'u'd-Din. And the Sherif Tahir son of 'Ebu Numeyy had come to him at Birk from Mekka, which God guard, who be exalted, with the view of proceeding to the sacred court of the Sultan, and had continued his journey with him. But when they had arrived in the neighbourhood of Lu'lu'a,¹⁰³² people of the Juhcyna¹⁰³³ tribe set upon them. The escort was routed, and the Shcrif Tahir remained behind against the people. He was killed, and all their baggage and beasts were captured.

And in the month of Re job of the year 704 (February, 1305) the supreme cavalcade went from Zebid to the capital of Ta'izz, where it remained during Sha'ban. There set in upon the Sultan an indisposition soon after his ascent. The people were agitated at this, and Yemen was filled with dread. But God, who be extolled, granted the grace of his restoration to health in the latter part of Sha'ban, and he ceased not to dwell in Thu'bat¹⁰³⁴ until the 10th of Ramadan (about 25th March, 1305). ۳۱۳ He then mounted to the castle (of Ta'izz), and the day of his ascent was a day to be seen.

In the month of Shcwwal (May, 1305) the Sultan gave the city of 'Ebyen¹⁰³⁵ and its dependencies as a fief to the son of Behram. He despatched the son of Buz towards the territories of Egypt on the 1st of Shewwal (about 25th April), having already given him Qahma¹⁰³⁶ in fief. He set out on his journey in the first decade of the month, with all sorts of rarities of Value, such as silver-plate articles of various kinds, such as basons and ewers, trays, censers, globes, scabbards ; poles of

lign-aloes and sandal-wood, large lumps of ambergris, pods of musk; choice articles of china porcelain and jade, such as dishes and cream-coloured vases, the beauty of which it is impossible to describe; Abyssinian eunuchs; Indian bamboo spcar-shafts, Chinese couches, gilt brackets; valuable turban-sashes, cloths of Beylaqan¹⁰³⁷ (near the Araxes and Shirwan, west of the Caspian), most esteemed gold brocades of China; vases, plates and dishes; chests full of musk in grains, China gambir or catechu (*Terra Japonica*), refined camphor, another assortment; also, of what relates to spices, as pepper, cloves, ginger, lac, sappan-wood, hides-full; of wild beasts, as elephants, wild asses, giraffes, all clothed with satin silk interwoven with gold thread in designs; and horses of price from Arabian sires and dams, worthy of the state of him to whom they were sent. The whole of this was borne in two large ships. The like of this offering is usually not delayed beyond two or three rulers, with the view of securing good-will and amity, with a continuance on terms consonant with friendly relations.

f. 190^a

ff

And in this year A.H. 704 the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril bent his steps to the sacred court, offering his resignation of San'a', by reason of a dispute arisen between him and the eunuch Yaqtit, superintendent of the domains of the Sultan. The sovereign relieved him of the fief, and conferred it on his own son Mudhaffer, whose Heutnant set out to take possession of it on the 12th Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year (about 25th May, 1305).

After this the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din, with the Sherffs, returned to 'Anan¹⁰³⁸ a second time, and the 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutahher came to them there. So the Sultan equipped, to war against them, the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril, who advanced against them at 'Anan. They then went down into the low hollow country ('el-Jewf),¹⁰³⁹ to which he followed them, and they went up to Sa'da. He marched after them, made an inroad as far as Felela,¹⁰⁴⁰ and devastated all he was able to reach of their canton. A truce was then made until the end of Dhu'l-Qa'da; he returned towards San'a', which he entered on the fifth day after quitting Sa'da.

And in the month of Dhu'l-Hijja the 'Halt' or 'Stand'¹⁰⁴¹ (Waqfa) of Pilgrimage, at 'Arefat, took place on a Friday (9th of the month, 2nd July, 1305), and an immense concourse from Egypt came on pilgrimage. The commandant of the pilgrim-caravan was the great 'Emir Ruknu'd-Din Bey-Bars the Khassaki, with whom a number of Egyptian 'Emirs performed the pilgrimage. With them came also the two Sherifs Rumeytha and Humeyda, two sons of 'Ebu Numeyy, who had been in Egypt in chains, as we formerly narrated. Now, when the pilgrimage had been wholly accomplished, the 'Emir Ruknu'd-Din Bey-Bars commanded the presence of the two (other) Sherifs, their brothers 'Ebu'l-Ghavth and 'Utayfa, to let them know that the lord of Egypt had appointed as governors their two brothers Rumeytha and Humeyda. But they did not reply to express that to hear was to obey, so that a certain mutual repugnance sprang up between them. There was then in Mckka and Medina a great dearth, so that a quart of wheat reached the price of twenty pieces of silver, and of millet sixteen pieces. Rumeytha and Humeyda were established in the government of the country, pursued an excellent line of conduct, and abolished somewhat of the taxes.

And in this year A.H. 704 'Abdu'l-Baqi son of 'Abdu'l-Hamid came from the fortified frontier port of 'Aden to the sacred courts of the Sultan, asking to be made the Secretary of Epistolary Composition. Contentions ensued, which led to a lack of permanency. His age was then three and twenty years. When he found that he was not successful in his object he set out for the territories of Egypt, reciting the words of the poet:

" O thou water of 'Udheyb,¹⁰⁴² and thou art sweet; there has interposed, hitherwards of thee, an insalubrious water I"

(f. 191^{a, b}) In the year A.H. 705 (A.D. 1305-6) the Sultan conferred
f. 192^a 'Ebyen¹⁰⁴³ as his fief on the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril, and he

went down to it in the latter half of Muharrem (8th-23rd August, 1305). The son of Behram left that fief; and when he presented himself at the august courts as removed from 'Ebyen, the Sultan ordered four sets of kettledrums, four banners, and the fief of Rahban¹⁰¹⁴ to be conferred on him. The Sherifs of the family (Al) of Shems had made a predatory incursion of Harad before the arrival there of the son of Behram, and had done damage in its neighbourhood. There were in it a captain and a garrison of the troops of the Sultan, and these sallied forth to engage the Sherifs. They fought a battle near to the city, but they were driven back to the covered way (*derb*), and the Sherifs entered the city, where they pillaged whatever they could lay hands on, and retreated without loss of time. The Benu Hamza disagreed with the Sherifs, and the son of Wehhcis joined them.

The Sultan now equipped the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Umer son of Mikd'il, then marshal of the guard, with a goodly force, to the canton of San'a', where he remained to the end of the month of Ramadan (about 15th April, 1306), going down again after the conclusion of peace between the Sultan and the Sherifs, on the basis that one-third of the canton of Tchnus should belong to the Sultan. Hostages were taken from them for this condition, and the people of Sa'da returned to Sa'da, where they took up their abode.

rw

And in the end of Sha'ban in this year 705 (March, 1306) Melik Mudhafifer gave in his resignation of the fief of San'a', and proceeded to the private apartments of his father, who bestowed the fief on the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril. He set out for the fief, and when he reached Dhemar he made a stay there until the month Dhu'l-Qa'da, capturing, during the interval of his stay, one of the castles of the Benu 'Ubeyda.¹⁰¹⁵

And on the 24th Ramadan (about 7th April, 1306) the Sultan conferred on the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idris son of Aliyy the fief of 'Ebyen and its dependencies. Also, in the middle of Shevvwal (about 30th April) the Sultan commanded that the Jahafil tribe should be restored to their pensions,¹⁰⁴⁶ of

f. 192^b

which they had been deprived for two years by way of punishment.

In this year A.H. 705, too, the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Buz returned from the lauds of Egypt after having been treated with all due honour. There came with him an envoy named Tmtiyazu'd - Dm the Turite. He sojourned in Ta'izz for a certain number of days, presented himself at the Sultan's court, and was received with honour and kindness. He then journeyed to Zebfd, and remained there until his travelling needs were got ready, when he set out to return to his master.

This year A.n. 705 the pilgrimage was gone through by an immense conclave of people from Egypt and the provinces of the western lands, from Babylonia, Persia, and Yemen, so that God alone could know their number, who be extolled. Three banners were assembled on the eve of the festival of sacrifices ('Arefa) : one, of the lord of Yemen ; one, of the lord of Egypt ; and one, of the lord of Babylonia (Traq), Khuda-Benda, i.e. The Hero,¹⁰⁴⁷ in the Turkish idiom. A scuffle broke out at Mina¹⁰⁴⁸ between the Egyptians and the men of Hijaz. The commandant of the Egyptian caravan was the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din 'Abagha, who was a rough, coarse, bloodthirsty fellow, prone to every kind of sin. He put to death a number of the people of the highland ridge of Arabia, treating them with harshness, and not feeling for them any pity or commiseration.

f 193^a In the year A.H. 706 (A.D. 1306-7) the Sultan obtained
f 193^b possession of the castle of Qara'i',¹⁰⁴⁹ which is an appendage of Tawila, so that arrows and stones can be shot in exchange between them. The Sherif Taju'd-Din then formed a camp against Qara'i', and captured the castle of Shureyb.¹⁰⁵⁰ The 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din now issued forth from San'a' in the month of the latter Rebi (October, 1306), and the 'Emir 'Abbas son of Muhammed. They defeated him, and the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din provisioned both castles with all kinds of stores after he had repaired them both. So he returned victorious and successful in the month of Sha'ban (February, 1307).

And on the 13th day of the month of Jumada the latter

(about 25th December, 1306) the birth took place of Sultan Melik Mujahid in the city of Zebid.¹⁰⁵¹ It has been said that his birth occurred on the 10th Ramadan (about 15th March, 1307) in a sitting-room of the Sultan's palace at Zebid, this room being known commonly as the Birth-Room, inasmuch that in it he was born. But God knows best.

And in the latter half of the latter Rebi (25th October-9th November, 1306) the son of 'Asheb captured the castle of Sabba¹⁰⁵² in Wasab.¹⁰⁵³ It is an immense castle and butts with the stars, and it clothes itself with the clouds; one of the most inapproachable and impregnable, most precipitous and advantageous of castles, the last of the fastnesses of Yemen,

He who pitches a camp

pinnacle of a high mountain, and there is but one pathway to it. The Sultan determined to retake it, so he detached the wezir MuwarTaqu'd-Din to Jubla, who enrolled footmen from there. The Sultan journeyed to Zebid in all haste, as the poet 'Ebu't-Tayyib Mutencbbi¹⁰⁵¹ has expressed himself, where he says :

" More violent in rushing assault than the headlong winds, and swifter in gift-giving than it in blowing."

The Sultan next went forth, pitching his camp against Scibba for a space, and the son of 'Asheb hastened to tender his submission, stood up on the foot of compliance, and went down under the sacred amnesty. The Sultan received possession of the castle, and also of other castles, then returning whence he came. And when he settled down in the city of Zebid public rejoicings were held, and the good tidings were announced by beat of kettledrums. The poets of his realm, too, felicitated him on the event.

And in the month of Shewwal of the year 706 (April, 1307) the Jahafil tribe broke the peace and made a predatory inroad on Lahj. Of them was killed 'Abbas son of 'Ebu Sufra, one of their chief men and of their horsemen. They had already

(f. 194^b)
f.194^b

made a raid against 'Ejna¹⁰⁵⁵ on the 8th of the month, when 'Ahmed, the son of 'Ebu Sufra too, was killed, who was more looked up to by his people than was his brother. On the 20th Dhu'l-Qa'da, again, they collected large levies and went against 'Ejna for the second time ; but they could not hold their ground against it, and returned by way of Rakhakh.¹⁰⁵⁶ The troops pursued them, and overtook them towards the evening, when they had met with a senium¹⁰¹⁷ wind and had dispersed. The troops then killed of them about forty men, and their evil and turbulence were stopped.

In the year A.H. 707 (A.I). 1307-8) the Bakhu¹⁰⁵⁸ tribe overflowed and carried invasion into the canton of Harad. So the Sultan detached against them in that canton about three hundred horsemen of his divinely aided body-guaid, who made a raid on them and broke up their mass.

And in this year of A.u. 707 the Sherif Muhammed son of Khalid fled from Zebid, where the Sultan then was. He left behind his hostages, his mother and his sister.

In the month of Jumada the first the governor of Shcy'an¹⁰⁵⁹ rebelled against the 'Emir Taju'd-Din, and sold the castle to the Sultan. The 'Emir Taju'd-Din went to attack him, and killed a large number of his followers. The Sultan then detached, to make war on the 'Emir Taju'd-Din, the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tughril, marching in his company with the ballista¹⁰⁶⁰ to batter 'Azzan. And when they were come to Dila¹⁰⁶¹ he met the 'Emir Taju'd-Din with his brother the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Hamza. Or, the place of their meeting was below the defile of Bukur.¹⁰⁰² They agreed to remain at peace and to serve the Sultan. He made them take the oath to do so, gave them robes of honour, and returned to his camp, taking with him the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Hamza. And when they arose on the morn of the second day, the auspicious, divinely aided banners of the Sultan dominated the castle of Bukur, their streamers waving there in loyalty to the Sultan. The 'Emir Taju'd-Din then went down to the camp, where the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din received him kindly, gave him a robe of honour, made him a handsome money

rxl

f. 195^a

present, and gave dresses of honour to the greater number of his slaves and followers. Peace was concluded between them and the Sultan for five years. The 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din then proceeded to the august court, having with him the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din Iiamza son of 'Ahmed, whole brother of the 'Emir Teiju'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed, who had never before this visited the courts of the Sultan. There were with him the son of his brother, 'Abdu'lUih son of Taju'd-Din, and a number of Aiab inbesmen.

In this year A.H. 707, too, the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Selar, regent over the lands of Egypt, resolved upon sending the 'Emir Bey-Bars,¹⁰⁰³ with a numerous army, to Yemen. He commanded the 'Emir 'Izzu'd-Din the Rufous ('el-'Ashqar), Controller of the Exchequers, to proceed to the district of Qus¹⁰⁶⁴ to build ships. Of these he constructed upwards of fifty, when God appointed his death, and the death of his children and household, together with his family, all in a few days, so that not one of them was left. The 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Selar desisted from that design, and advised that the jurists, judges, superiors of dervish convents, dwellers in hermitages, and men of righteousness and piety should be summoned to the presence of the Sultan Melik Nasir, to inform him that this enterprise was not to be lawfully persevered in, seeing that Yemen was a land of the faith, a country of science and of men of science, of jurists, of righteous men, and of people of piety, while its king was a vicegerent of the Caliph's dominion and permanent in his rule, as had already been legally admitted, so that transgression against him was not permissible. So the Sultan was diverted from the idea ; placing this to the delay of the controller.

When the Sultan Melik Mu'eyycd became aware of this, he prohibited the spice-merchants ('el-Karim, Karimiyya)¹⁰⁵⁵ this year until an envoy should come with intelligence thereof. Matters were arranged for the dispatch of an envoy from the lands of Egypt to Yemen, together with a turbaned dignitary. The envoy was a man named Sa'diyy, a slave of Melik Dhahir (Ruknu'd-Din Bey-Bars Bunduqdarf Salihyy), and the turbaned

fff

functionary was the judge Shemsu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Adlan, one of the judges. The tenour of the missive was a confirmation of the *status quo*, and that the Sultan had fully abandoned the design he had formed, he being at the present epoch possessed of a desire for peace and good-will. The two envoys set out for the countries of Yemen, and came to the place where the Sultan was staying, he being then unwell and unable to converse. It so happened that the 'Emir who had come as envoy was attacked by an illness that terminated in his death, which occurred on the 22nd Jumada the first, 708 (about 7th November, 1308), at Zcbtd, outside the city. The judge Shemsu'd-Din returned to the lands of Egypt, bearing with him the answer respecting the matter about which he had come.

- (f. 196^{ab}. And in the year A.H. 708 (A.D. 1308-9) occurred the installation of the Sultan's pavilion named Ma'qiliyy, in Thu'bat¹⁰⁰⁶; f. 197^a cessation from which took place in the middle of Safer (about 4th August, 1308). It was a pavilion in the environs of which all beauties were found deficient, while comeliness rose as a sun in the horizon of its sublimities. The performers of travel in various regions are agreed that there was not its like in Syria or Babylonia, and that they had never seen its equal. It was a hall 25 cubits (about 62 feet) in length, with a breadth of 20 cubits (50 feet). Its two ceilings, unsupported by columns, were ornamented with gilding. It had four belvederes, with four balconies. There was nothing in it but marble and gold. In front of it was a pool of the length of 100 cubits (about 250 feet) by 50 cubits (125 feet) in breadth, on the margins whereof were the semblances of birds and wild beasts of yellow copper (brass, bronze) that spouted water from the mouths; and in the middle of the pool a fountain casting up water to the sky and reaching to a wide distance. In front of it a jet spouting to a distance, the water from which flowed into the pool, which was like a sheet of crystal, which could not be described in any other **terms**. And in the hall were latticed windows looking on a garden of wonderful aspect, beautiful on examination and at first sight.

The artificers were occupied in working on it for the space of seven years. Thus saith the author, whom may God confirm : " I heard one relate, as from another, who lived in the days of its construction, that there used to go up to it every day about seventy mule-loads of foreign artificers, of carpenters, painters, brass-workers, founders, masons, marble-workers, gilders, artists ; besides those who rode asses, and those not mounted, of their assistants; and besides workmen of the country, who equalled them in numbers several times over: And when its construction was completed, after the fashion detailed above, the Sultan, on whom be God's mercy, who be extolled, commanded that a public rejoicing should be held, great and comprehensive, at which should be present the notables of the people—nay, their commonality, according to the variety of their conditions and difference of their grades. The Sultan, God's mercy on him, looked down on them from the second story, and commanded that robes of honour should be distributed to the notables of the people ; and of his munificence he made to flow a gift to everyone, causing them to attain to their desires through his liberality. The poets felicitated him on this event."

f. 197^b

۳۲۵

(f. 198^a)f. 198^b

And when the edification of the Ma'qiliyy was finished with, the Sultan gave orders for the construction of a second pavilion in the garden of Salla,¹⁰⁶⁷ and then went to the capital, Zebfd, on the 4th Jumada the first of the year 708 (about 20th October, 1308), remaining there half a month, and then proceeding to Mehjem. There he stayed until Tuesday, 19th Rejeb (about 1st January, 1309), when he advanced to Hajja with a large army. This occurred when the siege of Dhahran¹⁰⁶⁸ waxed tedious and the captains of the forces could attain to no result. The Sultan reached Jahiliyy¹⁰⁶⁹ on the 23rd Rejeb (5th January and Dhahran was taken on the 24th. The camp and the ballista were then removed to Shemsan,¹⁰⁷⁰ where fighting became frequent. He battered it with the ballista,¹⁰⁷¹ and the ballista produced an immense effect on it. Melik Mudhaffer and the Intimate Muwaffaqu'd-Din used to go down to be present at the shock administered to it. The conflict about it was spun out

f. 199^a

until the middle of Sha'ban (about 1st March, 1309), when the lord thereof surrendered it. After its surrender the 'Em(r Taju'd-Din came to the camp, where the 'Emir, the son of Wehhas, and the lord of Thula, as also the levies of Upper Yemen, had arrived before him, so that Hajja was brimfull of troops. The son of Wehhas mediated as to a peace with the lord of Juraf,¹⁰⁷² who returned to the services of the Sultan and gave his son as hostage. He also mediated as to a peace with the 'Imam Muhammed-son of Mutahher, on the basis of the surrender of 'Azzan and Birash.

The Sultan then returned from Hajja on Saturday, 19th Sha'bdn (5th March), entered Mehjem on the 23rd (9th), left there again on the 25th (nth), and proceeded to Zebid, where he remained, performing the fast of Ramadan and the festival at its conclusion. On the 16th Shewvval (29th March) the 'Emir Taju'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Yahya son of Hamza arrived at the courts of the Sultan in Zebid, after determined refusal and unlikely projects. He received him with honour, presented him with rarities, made much of him, and treated him kindly. He had never before presented himself in person to the Sultan. He was one of the notables and of the chiefs of the Sherifs, lord of the Arabian castles of Kehlan¹⁰⁷³ and Tawila, as well as of a number out of the many of the smaller castles. The Sultan treated him with his favours, overwhelming him with the flood of his attentions.

The supreme cortege proceeded to the Sea of 'Ehwab,¹⁰⁷⁴ the sea-coast of Zebid. He mounted an elephant when he entered Faza,¹⁰⁷⁵ and made the 'Emir Taju'd-Din mount behind him, when the heart of the Sherif quaked by reason of his ride on the elephant. The Sultan remained at the seaside awhile, returned to Zebid, stayed there a space, and then proceeded to Ta'izz, which he entered on the 27th Dhu'l-Qa'da (about 7th May, 1309). He commanded the presence of the 'Emir Taju'd-Din for a ramble and a recreation on the pavilions at Thu'bat, Qurada, Dahla,¹⁰⁷⁶ and Salla. So he saw a great king, with "paradise and silk." And when the Sultan arrived at Thu'bat the 'Emir

Imadu'd-Din Idris son of 'Aliyy felicitated him 011 his arrival there on the first day of the sacred decade of the month of Dhu'l-Hijja (1st May, 1309).

In the month of Shewwal of this year A.H. 708 (March, 1309),
 Muhammed son of 'Amis and his son took from the Sheykhs
 of Hajja the castle of VTe'dhun,¹⁰⁷⁷ and the two put to death
 its lord, 'Aliyy son of Sa'sa'a, and his brother 'Ishaq. f. 200^a

And in the month of Dhu'l-Qa'da of the year A.H. 708
 (April, 1309) intelligence arrived from Mekka the Honoured
 that the people of Egypt had raised to the dignity of Sultan
 Ruknu'd-Din Bey-Bars the Khassaki',¹⁰⁷⁸ who had taken the
 name of Melik Mudhaffer. The cause of this was that Bey-
 Bars and Selar had got command over the realm, with control
 over the revenues and the treasuries, so that, through them, the
 Sultan had only the title of sovereign left him. So He consulted
 them as to his undertaking the pilgrimage, sending his sons
 away with the Egyptian pilgrim caravan, he himself taking the
 road to Damascus, so as to journey with the pilgrim-caravan of
 Syria. But when he was out of Egypt and could say his life
 was his own, he took the way to Kerek¹⁰⁷⁹ and sent forth his
 slaves after his sons, fetching them back and delivering himself
 from Egypt and its people. So they made Bey-Bars Sultan,
 as we have related. And in this year A.H. 701 there was
 manifested on the part of the two Shen'fs Kumeytha and
 Humeйда at Mekka the Honoured a tyranny, oppression, and
 greed for the goods of the people which had not been usual
 with them both before this time. f. 200^b

In the year A.H. 709 (A.D. 1309-10) the Sherif Imadu'd-Din
 set out for the conquest of the two Shen'fs,¹⁰⁸⁰ having with him
 a divinely aided force. It chanced that the son of 'Aliyy son of
 Sa'sa'a had just perfected a plot in the castle of the Me'dhun,¹⁰⁸¹
 so that the troops of the Sultan entered it and took possession,
 seizing also the son of 'Amis and his son. The Sultan's deputies
 were given possession of the castle, and also of the castle of
 Khurbus¹⁰⁸² in the Hibr¹⁰⁸³ country, which the troops had
 taken as well. Orders came from the Sultan for the delivery

of the son of 'Amis, as also of his son to the son of 'Aliyy son of Sa'sa'a, and to the son of his paternal uncle, the son of Tshaq son of Sa'sa'a. So these two put those two to death, in revenge for their fathers, at the gate of Jdhiliyy.¹⁰⁸¹

The Shen'f proceeded with the troops from Dhahira¹⁰⁸⁵ towards the upper Sheref, and gained the mastery over the town of Sa'd¹⁰⁸⁶ in the district of Hibr, as also of the castle of Qahira in the district of Mahabisa.¹⁰⁸⁷ He took hostages from the people of both the Sherefs, and advanced against the lower Sheref on the nth of the first Rebi' (about 20th August, 1309), camping against Qilhah.¹⁰⁸⁸ On the same day the castle of Qufl¹⁰⁸⁹ was taken possession of. It was held by 'Ibnu-Miqra'a, a slave of the Shen'f 'Ibrahim son of Qasim. The levies of the two Sheref districts joined the troops of the Sultan, the total being five thousand men, with which the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Di'n undertook an attack on Mount Sahil,¹⁰⁹⁰ one of the most unassailable of mountains and of the most unapproachable. It was in the possession of the Shen'f Yahya son of 'Ahmed the Qasimite, who fought in its defence. The Shen'f 'Imadu'd-Di'n put the sons of his paternal uncle, with the levies from the Arabians, in the van of the gathering, marching himself in the rear with the troops of the Sultan ; but no one came to meet them hithciward of the castle of 'Aqnab,¹⁰⁹¹ against which he pitched, and which he captured, gaining possession also of the castle of Nasira.¹⁰⁹² He then marched against Mount Mcshela.¹⁰⁹³ Great consternation now befell the Shen'f Yahya son of 'Ahmed, who begged for peace on condition that he should surrender the castle of Arus,¹⁰⁹⁴ the permanent abode of the Shcrff, where were his treasures and his stores of corn ; and also the castles of Shcmsan¹⁰⁹⁵ and Semu'el ;¹⁰⁹⁶ leaving in his possession only the castle of Mansura.¹⁰⁹⁷ He removed to this latter, and gave his son as hostage that he would go down to the sacred court of the Sultan.

When the lower Sheref was thus pacified, and there remained in it to the Sherifs only the castle of the Mes'ula,¹⁰⁹⁸ who

inhabited the Mount Hanim, and of whom there were already at the court a certain Muhammed son of 'Aliyy and his brother endeavouring to sell the castle to the Sultan, the 'Emir Tmadu'd-Din pitched against it with the divinely aided troops for three days, at the *end* of which the people in it sold it to him for two thousand ducats and the return of the two Sherifs from the court. The glad tidings reached the Sultan just when the Intimate had agreed to buy it from the two Sherifs for five thousand, with some horses and vestments. The Sultan decided in favour of the capture, rescinding what the Intimate had entered upon. The Sherif 'Imadu'd-Din then marched to the upper Sheref.

f. 201^a

And on Monday the 16th of in this year A.H. 709 the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Di'n Tughril was murdered. The Kurds it was who killed him at Dhemar, near the gate of the city, in the pavilion of the Sultan. He had asked for a detachment of troops from the court, and a goodly detachment went up to him for the purpose of getting *in* payment of the assessments due from the districts. The Kurds took it into their heads that his intention was to seize them, so they attacked him in the latter part of the night. Warning was given to him several times during the night ; but he cast away his prudence, and the decree of God became a fore-ordinance fully carried out. When they had determined to kill him they assembled, went out from the city, sought the camp of the troops of San'a', houghed their horses, proceeded to the pavilion, and occupied the stable. The troops of the Sultan, slaves of the marine guatds, and others now attacked and dispersed them, driving them away from the pavilion towards the gate of the city. The slaves then returned to the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Di'n, who was in the pavilion. They begged him to come out to them ; but he refused, and took no heed of them. The troops then dispersed. After a time the Kurds went to attack him again, and they beset him until after sunrise. He then went out to them under a pledge of safety ; but they killed him, and with him his brother-in-law, who was his marshal of the

f. 201^a

rri

household, his secretary, the governor of Dhemar, as also four of his slaves. The whole of those killed with him was eight persons, he being the ninth of them. They pillaged the camp and all the horses and equipments in it. They who could escaped with their lives.

When the troops reached the Sultan robbed of their horses, accoutrements, and personal effects, the Sultan compensated them for what was lost, and equipped a force with the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din 'Umer son of the judge 'Imad, who was then captain of the body-guard. He also despatched the 'Emir 'Abbas son of Muhammed towards San'a' by way of the seaboard country and Hajja, having with him a handsome sum of money with which to enrol troops. The son of 'Imad took time on his journey until 'Abbas should come forth from San'a', in which were the 'Emir 'Alemu'd-Din ITamza son of f. 201^b 'Ahmed, the 'Emir 'Ibnu Wehhas, the lord of Thula, men of the tribe of Ilemdan, the family of Shureyh, and others besides. They and the son of 'Imad entered Dhemar on a Sunday, the Kurds having- decamped to Wadi Harr¹⁰⁹⁹ and taken possession of the castle of Hezzan,¹¹⁰⁰ which they provisioned, and in which they stationed a garrison.

The troops followed them to Wadi Hair, fighting with them for three days, in one of which three of the Kurds were killed and their horses captured. After this the Kurds dispersed to every quarter, while the divinely aided forces ravaged the possessions of Kadi son of Mansur, returning then to Dhemar. The Shcri'fs went back to their respective countries, and the two 'Emirs remained at Dhemar.

Correspondence and messages took place between the Kurds and the 'Imam 'Ibnu Mutahher. He complied with their wish, and journeyed to the country of the sons of Shihab, asking the Kurds to come there, which they did. -'Abbas marched to San'a' with the levies of San'a', the Kurds and the 'Imam going to Qarn-'Anter,¹¹⁰¹ which they took by assault. They who were therein did battle, being about a hundred men. The Arabian tribesmen took Beyt- Beram,¹¹⁰² Beyt - Redm,¹¹⁰³ Qahir¹¹⁰⁴ in

Hadur, and Redman of the Benu Khawwal.¹¹⁰⁵ The 'Imam gathered his host against San'a' in the latter part of Ramadan, the 'Emir 'Abbas being posted with some horse in Sa'ila,¹¹⁰⁶ behind the gate. The people of San'a' fought against the prowlers. Some of the troops, too, entered by way of the Sultan's garden, and went back again. The 'Imam returned also to Hadda¹¹⁰⁷ and Siba', remaining in it there. There were with him, of Kurds and others, about a hundred horsemen. Reinforcements in succession continued to arrive at San'a'; and later on the Sultan went up in person.

When he reached Dhemar he timed his departure thence at dawn. So by the evening he was at the gate of San'a'. But the 'Imam had no stomach to renew his attack against it.

In the month of Shewwal of this year 709 (March, 1310), the ShenTs took the oath of allegiance to Shcmsu'd-Din, (who was) in Sa'da, to which they despatched the Kurdite, causing him to journey by way of Harad.¹¹⁰⁸ The Sultan was vexed, sending his son Mclik Mudhaffer to the plain (Qa') of Beytu't-Tahim¹¹⁰⁹ where he camped on the 6th Dhu'l-Hijja (about 7th May, 1310), and at once advanced to Beyt-Khabbid,¹¹¹⁰ which he occupied, so that his troops became visible to the 'Imam 'Ibnu Mutahtter at Hadda. So he, and the Kurds with him, retreated by way of Hazza¹¹¹¹ to Hafid,¹¹¹² going up thence to Siba'.¹¹¹⁵ The rendezvous between the Sultan and his son Melik Mudhaffer was for the Tuesday, when the troops of the Sultan were to have ridden from San'a' to Hadda. Melik Mudhaffer was in too great a hurry in the latter part of the Monday, and this haste of his was the means of salvation to the son of Mutahtter and the Kurds. For every doom there is a written decree.

On the 1st of Dhu'l-Qa'da (1st April, 1310) the 'Emir Humamu'd-Din violated the peace existing between him and the Sultan. He wrote to the family of Shcmsu'd-Din proposing an interview and an alliance. The 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutahtter remained in Mount Rehiqa,¹¹¹⁴ and the Kurds in Rewba,¹¹¹⁵ with Melik Mudhaffer in his camp in the plain of Beytu't-Tahim, for the space of half a month ; and Muhammed

son of Dhi'b the Shihabite sowed discord between the 'Imam and the Kurds. The troops then went up the mountain, when both the 'Imam and the Kurds retreated. Afterwards they went down by way of Mefhaq,¹¹¹⁶ and dispersed from that place. The 'Imam now marched to Dherwan,¹¹¹⁷ then to Dhalima,¹¹¹⁸ where he kept the festival of sacrifice. The Kurds marched towards Tawran.¹¹¹⁹

The 'Emir 'Aliyy son of Musa next came to the 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutahher, and with him the members of the family of the 'Imam. Together they advanced in the direction of Sherf,¹¹²⁰ by reason of the information that reached them about a delay in the pay of the troops, and their dispersal in consequence. They went up by way of Kehlan; but the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din drew out his forces to repel them, and they returned disappointed towards Dhahir.¹¹²¹ There they menaced Qunna,¹¹²² and being joined by the 'Emir Humamu'd-Din there, they encamped against it for three days. They then dispersed, and the 'Emir Humanni'd-Din returned to Dhafar, while the 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutahher and the Sherif 'Aliyy son of Musa marched to Sa'da.

On the 1st of Dhu'l-I.ijja in this year 709 (1st May, 1310) the Sultan gave orders for the arrest of the Sherif Jemalu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wchhas, and his two sons Dawud and Mu'eyyed, in San'a', alleging against him certain matters requiring this action. He sent troops with 'Abbas son of Muhammed to encamp against his castle of 'Azzan,¹¹²³ despatching the ballista with him. The Sultan kept the festival of sacrifices at San'a'.

f. 202^b In this year A.H. 709 the 'Emir Tajud-Di'n Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of Yahyd son of Hamza died on the 20th of the latter Jumada (25th November, 1309). He had been with the Sultan from the day of his descent to him in Zebi'd the year previous, until the day of his death. May God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

This same year died also the jurist, the Tmam, the erudite Radiyyu'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the

Yahyawite. There had been between him and Melik Mu'eyyed a familiarity and companionship before the sovereignty devolved on the latter, who had confidence in his integrity, with a boundless trust, so that the Sultan never altered anything he did, believing that whatever he did was the best to be done. It is said that by his recommendation were the trust estates in mortmain transferred from the judges of the canon law to the officers of the exchequer, whereas they had never been previously given in charge to any other than the canon law judges. He died at Zebi'd in the night before Thursday the 10th of the latter Rebi' in this year 709 (about 7th September, 1309), and his brother, the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din 'Aliyy son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Intimate, was present at his burial. He had hasted down to him from Ta'izz, and found him struck with apoplexy. He was buried by the side of the grave of the righteous Sheykh 'Aliyy son of 'Eflah, in the cemetery near the Siham Gate.¹¹²⁴ May God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

(f. 203^a, ^b)
f. 204^a

In the year A.u. 710 (A.D. 1310-11) the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din Abbas son of Muhammed son of 'Abbas received possession of the castle of Dhafar, and removed his camp towards Dhafar, camping at Taffa¹¹²⁵ by the side of the castle of Ta'izz. He planted the ballista against it, but the Sherifs expressed a desire for peace, offering to enter the sacred service through Sheykh Nejmu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Umer son of Jened at Sa'da, the Sherifs giving hostages for its execution. He marched in a state of armed preparation towards the Sultan at San'a', who ratified what he had done, and the herald proclaimed the peace by night against the wish of the 'Emir 'Abbas, who was then commanding over the campaign. All this was a trick on the part of the Sheykh son of Jened, by reason of his knowledge of the extremity to which the people of Dhafar were reduced if the siege were established against them. They had asked succour from him, and he set about averting the siege from them with all celerity. The Sultan reckoned this to him as one of his offences. The Sultan ratified what

was arranged in respect of the peace, and then set out from San'a' for the capital city of Ta'izz on the 25th of Safer (24th July, 1310), leaving in the districts of San'a' the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of Buz as lord of the fief.

rrv And in this year A.H. 710 the 'Emir Tmadu'd-Din Tdriş son of 'Aliyy took possession of the castle of Miftah,¹¹²⁰ in addition to the castles of the two Sherefs of which he had already made himself master. He delivered the whole to the Sultan's representative, who was Hasan son of Tammah son of Naji, whom the Sultan had appointed governor of the Sheref cantons.

On the 17th of the latter Jumada (about nth November, 1310) the supreme cortege ptoceeded from the capital city, Ta'izz, to the capital, Zebi'd. And at this date the Kurds were granted peace, they entering into submission after the land, with all its wide extent, had been made too narrow for them. They gave in their submission of their own free will, and took refuge under the sacred precincts, shading themselves in its shadows, and begging for the downpour of its beneficence. The natural Resuliyy disposition inclined towards them with favour, and the matter was settled with the condition that Hezzan¹¹²⁷ should remain in their hands. Whoever wished it were taken into the service, and they gave five hostages.

f. 204^b

In this year A.H. 710 the Sultan conferred upon the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Buz son of Hasan son of Buz as a fief the cantons of Sa'da, the Jewf hollow,¹¹²⁸ and of Jeththa¹¹²⁹ in the low seaboard country, compensating the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din with Qahma in Heu of Jeththa.

In the latter Jumadd the 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutahher journeyed in order to have an interview with the Kurds, who had expressed a wish for him. So he came to Re'su'l-Baqir,¹¹³⁰ where he stayed waiting for them. But they conceived the idea of peace, and made peace for themselves with the Sultan; the 'Imam therefore returned to Werwcr.¹¹³¹

The Sultan went up from Zebi'd to Ta'izz in the latter part of Dhu'l-Qa'da; and in the said year All. 710 a number of 'Emirs from Egypt performed the pilgrimage at Mekka with a dense

military force; their project being to arrest the two Sherifs Rumeytha and Humeйда. When these two became aware of this they took flight from Mekka, and the troops were unable to effect their capture. When the pilgrimage was accomplished, and the Egyptian force had taken its departure to return to Egypt, the two came back to Mekka.

(f. 205^a)
f. 205^b

In the year A.H. 711 (A.D. 1311-12) a grand enterprise was started by the 'Imam Muhammed son of Mutaħher, and he advanced to Sheref with a body of troops. The tribesmen of Sheref had suffered from the magistrates appointed by the Sultan certain things they did not like. So the 'Imam marched with them towards Mount Sahil, where he achieved nothing. He then went up to the country of the Mahashima,¹¹³² and warred against Qahira,¹¹³³ of which he made himself master, capturing also the castle of Hebib,¹¹³⁴ Mount Sa'd,¹¹³⁵ Sheji'a,¹¹³⁶ and Miftah.¹¹³⁷ The whole of the people of upper Sheref obeyed his summons. Upon this the Sultan went down to the low seaboard country, sending out detachments to that district, and ordering the Shen'f'Imadu'd-Din Tdriş to proceed thither as usual with him. So he marched to Mount 'Aqnab,¹¹³⁸ collected the forces, and wrote to the tribes; but they did not respond. He then marched to 'Akkas¹¹³⁹ on the 7th of Sha'ban (about 18th December, 1311), and fought with them for eight days, their forces amounting then to one thousand five hundred men. Each day a number of his troops disappeared; but the 'Imam asked for succour of the tribes in Hajja, in Shatib,¹¹⁴⁰ and of 'Ehnum,¹¹⁴¹ as also of those of the north country ('Esh-Sham).¹¹⁴² They came forward to him, and they attacked the camp on the 15th Sha'ban (26th December) with six thousand foot. The troops of the Sultan were broken before the arrival of the Tmam, and none stood his ground save the Sherif Tmadu'd-Din, with four horsemen. The Sherif Tmadu'd-Din was taken prisoner, with his maternal uncle; the son of his paternal uncle, Qasim son of 'Idrîs, was killed; and the fourth escaped after his horse had been houghed. In the fight the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Ghazi son of 'Ebu Bekr son of Khadir was

f. 206^a

killed, who was at the time governor of Mewqir,¹¹⁴³ of Mikhlafa, and of the districts of Surdud. Seven of the foot-soldiers, too, were killed. The 'Kmir 'Imadu'd-Din remained a prisoner about half a month, when he escaped and reached the castle of 'Azzan,¹¹⁴⁴ belonging to the two sons of Sherahbil.

The 'Imam now collected his levies and drew up against him, but gained nothing. The 'Emir took possession of the castle of Miftah on the 15th Ramadan (about 26th January, 1312), after 'Ibnu't-Tammah had emptied it of all that was in it as provisions.

He, as also those with him, bore patiently with the scarcity of food. The 'Emir Tmadu'd-Din now moved his quarters to Dhafer,¹¹⁴⁵ the castle of the 'Emirs, the sons of Safiyyu'd-Din, in the middle of the month of Ramadan, the Sultan having already equipped his son Melik Mudhaffer, with the Intimate Muwaffaqu'd Din, to Sheref before the disaster. News of this reached them while they were at Mehjem. They therefore advanced and encamped ^{at} Qilbah, proceeding next to the spot where was the camp of the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Di'n, and routed the levies of the 'Imam. Shcykh Rcbahiyy, lord of Mount Toys, was killed. The Sherif now moved from the castle designated above to the camp of Melik Mudhaffer at Qilbah, remaining with him in very great comfort until the 24th Shewwal (about 7th March, 1312). He then commanded him to take up a station in Mount Sahil, and left with him a thousand foot of the force. Melik Mudhaffer, with the Intimate Mmvaffaqu'd-Di'n, then went down to the low seaboard country, and sent the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Di'n 'Abbas son of Muhammed son of 'Abbas to I.Iajja to wage war on 'Ibrahim son of Mutahher in Dherwan. 'Abbas encamped in the plain of Shemsan.

As the trouble between the Sultan and the 'Imam was thus trailing out in length, an arrangement was come to for an amnesty from the Sultan for a whole year, in order that the people should have rest from the trouble, and warfare laid aside its burdens. Melik Mudhaffer and the Intimate, as also the 'Emir Shemsu'd-Di'n, returned to the courts of the Sultan at Zebid.

And in this year A.H. 711 died Sultan Melik Wathiq 'Ibrahim son of Sultan Melik Mudhaffer Shemsu'd-Di'n Yusuf son of 'Umer son of 'Aliyy son of Rcsul at Dhafar of the Ilabudite. He was unique in his good attributes. He possessed a knowledge of polite literature, and had a bachelor's degree in several of the sciences. He used to indite poetry, and noble elegies mourn over him : i. 206^b

" And whoever lias Dawud son of Yusuf¹¹⁴⁶ as his while brother, it is no wonder that he should be looked upon as generous."

It is related that the son of 'Ahmed Rifa'iyy ¹¹⁴⁷ came to Dhafar with the object of performing the Mckka pilgrimage, and the Sultan met him with honour and respect. He remained with him three days in sumptuous hospitalities. Each day he sent him a thousand ducats during his stay as a guest, together with a complimentary note. Such was his Mudhafferian disposition and 'Ahyiyc sense of brotherhood. When tidings came of his death the Sultan gave ordeis that recitations of the Qur'an should be made for him during seven days, the princes of the sons of Resul, the dignitaries of the realm, and the notables of the people being present at the recitation; after which, each day, they adjourned to a sumptuous repast, until the seven days were accomplished. May God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

In this year A.H. 711 died also the judge Muntakhabu'd-Din 'Isma'il son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy, ¹¹⁴⁸ of Haleb as his native town, known as the painter, and surnamed Muntakhab. He was a learned, wise, and sedate man, with a widespread reputation and abounding fame. He had journeyed from his native country to Mekka the Honoured, where he dwelt a space. He then migrated to Yemen, where his reputation had been repeatedly talked of. When he came to Zebid, where Ncjmud-Din son of Khirtabirtiyy was the governor, this officer wiote to Sultan Melik Mudhaffer, informing him of the arrival, and the Sultan commanded that he should be respected, considered,

honoured, and revered. He was a pious, abstemious man, a master of jurisprudence and its bases. He became an intimate of the jurist 'Umer son of 'Asim, of whom mention has been made. There happened then, after all this, a conference, in which the Companions of the Prophet and their relative superiorities were discussed, with all of whom may God be satisfied. From him was heard a preference for 'Aliyy, on whom be God's greeting, over all besides him of the Companions ; and in consequence they accused him of heresy, and spread this abroad concerning him. So he kept to his house and deserted them, giving himself up to agriculture. He was held in great consideration therein, by reason of the honour and respect shown to him by (the prince? Sultan Mclik) Mudhaffcr, and his recommending him to the governors. Later still Sultan Melik Mu'eyyid married his daughter, and she bore him Melik Mujahid. God's mercy on the whole of them.

(f. 207^a)

f. 207^b

In the year A.H. 712 (A.D. 1312-13) Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed went up from Zebid to Ta'i/z on the day of the new moon of Muharrem (8th May, 1312). On the 14th of the first Rabi' the Shen'f 'Imadu'd-Din Yahya son of Taju'd-Din was murdered. The cause of his assassination was that certain of the tribesmen, inhabitants of Milhan, excited him against some others different to themselves, and sided with him and his forces. But when he wished to go forth, he gave back the castles of the arbitrators before his departure from the mountain. They then overwhelmed him, and he was slain, as well as forty odd of the men who were with him.

And at this date there came envoys of the 'Imam to the Sherif 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idris son of 'Aliyy to endeavour to effect a peace between him and the Sultan before the expiry of the truce. The Sherif sent them on to the sacred court, where they were met by the Sheykh Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah son of 'Umer son of Jened ; for the Intimate Muwaffaqu'd-Din was at the time unwell. The question was settled by a peace for ten years, to begin with the latter Jumada of the year 712 (5th October, 1312), on condition that the upper Sheref with

its castles, Hibr¹¹⁴⁹ in Hajja, the lord of Beyt-Redm with his partners, the revenues of the family of ('Alu) Wishah, wherever they arise, Dhafer of the son of Wehhas, and all others recognized as belonging to the 'Imam in Hajja, Dhalfma, and other than these two, should belong to the 'Imam, as well as three thousand ducats every year. The herald proclaimed in Ta'izz the peace for ten years.

When peace with the 'Imam was ratified, and the Kurds became separate from him, the Sultan sent out a detachment of the household troops, of two hundred horsemen, together with footmen of Mcdh-hij, for the siege against Hczzan.¹¹⁵⁰ He also ordered the 'Emi'r 'Esedu'd-Di'n Muhammd son of Hasan son of Buz to march from San'/i' and join them with his forces. The Sheykh 'Ebu'l-Jcned then went forward and concluded peace for the Kurds on condition of their leaving off their entering into Dhemar and Rida^(lir)¹ their evacuating the fief (of San'd'), and that their hostages should still remain at 'Arus.¹¹⁵² The Sultan then commanded the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Di'n to take up his abode in Dhemar, making it his home, which order he conformed to.

rvT*

And on the 3rd of the latter Jumada the Sultan journeyed to Jened for the purpose of the chase. He remained there until the nth of the month (14th October, 1312), when he returned to Ta'izz, and proceeded to Zcbi'd on the 24th, entering Zebi'd the 4th of Rejeb (3rd November). And in the night preceding Friday the 24th Rejeb (22nd November), the barracks of the garrison of Ta'izz were burnt down. The causes whereof were differently stated by the people. Much property was destroyed therein, utensils, furniture, valuable books, and other things besides, which could not be numbered. Among that which was consumed were two large and complete sleeping-tents of cloth of gold, one yellow, the other red. The Sultan was then at Zebi'd; but on the Saturday, 25th Rejeb, he went forth to Feshal¹¹⁵³ for the purpose of hunting, remaining there until the end of the month, when he returned to Zebid.

f. 208"

And in this year A.H. 712 the Sultan ordered the construction

n°3

of a pavilion at Zebid, on the outside of the Shubariq¹¹⁵⁴ gate, in the garden of which he had commanded the formation, commonly known as the Enclosure of Lebfq.¹¹⁵⁵ The plan of the pavilion, as then built, was that of an upper chamber 45 cubits (r 12 feet) long, at the upper end of which was a seat of six cubits. It had a spacious vestibule, and above this a pavilion with four halls overlooking the garden in all its parts.

f. 208^b

In this year A.H. 712, also, Melik Nasir, lord of Egypt, performed the pilgrimage at Mckka, with one hundred horsemen of his slaves, and six thousand slaves on camels, whose weapons were bows. He reached Mekka the Honoured in twenty-two days from the date of his exit from Damascus, clad in the pilgrim garb and humbling himself before God. He performed the circumambulations round the Cubical House in a state of vexation with the people, for he was lame in an unsightly degree. He performed the whole of his ceremonial duties, and when he quitted the pilgrim state he caused his head to be shaved, and gave largesse to the people and distributed alms. He then returned, having with him the Sherif 'Ebu'l-Ghayth son of 'Kbu Numeyy. His two brothers Rumeyth and Humeйда had already taken to flight when they became aware of his coming, fearing that he would lay hands on them. They went forth from Mckka and pillaged the merchants who had come to Mekka in a most merciless manner, leaving nothing to any one of them. They committed also other villainous acts never perpetrated by mortal. They remained absent from Mckka until the days of the pilgrimage had come to an end, when they returned to the city.

m

In the month of Sha'ban of this year 712 (December, 1312) Melik Mudhaffer Hasan son of the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed was attacked by an indisposition in his body, this happening after his arrival from Sheref, he having been not quite well even before he went up there. The fever never left him, and was accompanied with a cough. And when the matter became serious, his father ordered him to ascend to the upper country. So he went up, but matters grew more threatening in Ramadan.

Then the Sultan thought to go up also, but he delayed a while. And when it was the day of the festival, tidings came in that shocked him. So he ordered the Intimate Muwaffaqu'd-Din to go up in all haste; and he went up on the day of the festival at noon, being on a Monday (about 2nd February, 1313). He arrived at Ta'izz about dawn on Tuesday, as the sun was rising. The Sultan left Zebid at noon on the Tuesday, entering Ta'izz on Thursday. He sent for his son to Thubat, and sent the physicians to treat him, but he increased in weakness only, and in loss of flesh. Things ceased not to be thus until he died on the Sunday the 6th of Dhu'l-Qa'da (6th March), after he had expressed his last wishes, and deliberately exhibited constancy in those last wishes. Among the whole number of his expressed last wishes there were found that he should not be vociferously wailed over, that *no* garment should be rent over him, that his corpse should not be swathed save in one cotton cloth, that nothing should be killed over his grave from among his horses, and that he should be buried in the cemetery of the Muslim community. And his father gave effect to his last wishes as to everything that he had expressed, save in the burying. For verily he commanded him to be buried by the side of his brother Dhafir in the college named Mu'eyyediyya in the western suburb of Ta'izz. He was one of the most noble of princes in worth. He expressed as one of his last wishes that there should be built for him a college in the village of Makharib, that running water should be led to it, and thence to a tank below it. His father executed the whole of this. The day of his burial was a day to be seen; and there were present at his interment all the princes of the house of Resul, who also witnessed the recitation of the Qur'an over him for seven days. His father commanded that the recitations should be performed for him at every place in the dominions. 'Afif son of Ja'fer wrote to the Sultan with condolences for him in these distichs :—

" *Is he the lord of princes and their Sultan ? Or is he one towards whom obedience is an obligatory duty ?* f. 209^a

*There is no prince to untie ivhat he hath tied; nor is there
a prince to tie up what he hath disintegrated.*

*There is no substitute for thee in this human race ; while as
to the whole race, thou art a substitute for them"*

And on the ioth day of Dhu'l-Qa'da of this year 712 (about ioth February, 1313) died the judge Jemalu'd-Di'n Muhammd son of 'Ahmed the Yahyawite. He used to act as deputy for his paternal uncle the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din, the Intimate, in the functions of Judge of Judges. He used to lay down the laws and decide the cases, while no one contested his decisions. 11 is more usual practice was to follow the path of total self-denial, to such degree that the greater number of his family and associates used to say, in respect of him, that he never took to himself anything of the world's goods. It was his paternal uncle, 'Ebu Bekr, who had brought him up ; and never did there accrue to them the office of the judgeship or that of the wezfrship, save after that they [had] taken the degree of doctor of laws, had professed devoutness, had performed the pilgrimage, had lived as a seeker of sanctuary in Mekka and Medina, and had become acquainted with mankind in Yemen, in the north cantons, and in Hijaz. He never gained anything of the world's goods as the whole of the people thereof make their profit, neither did he ever take a woman to be his wife. His expressed opinion was formed on those of his two paternal uncles, 'Ebu Bekr and 'Aliyy; nor did these two ever differ from him. In the number of the associates of his uncle 'Ebu Bekr there was a party who avowed his competency, and who at times placed him as the superior of his uncle 'Ebu Bekr.

In the same year A.H. 712 died the judge Muwaffaqu'd-Din, the Intimate, 'Aliyy son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawite, commonly called the Intimate. He was a perfect man, a leader of men, erudite, a good jurist, astute, eloquent, valiant. He filled the offices of the wezirship and judgeship in the Mu'eyyediyyan reign until the day of his death, which took

place on the 3rd of Dhu'l-Hijja of the year (12th April, 1313); may God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

In the year A.H. 713 (A.I). 1313-14) the Sultan proceeded f. 209^b
from Ta'izz to Jened, where he remained a space ; and in the month of the latter Rebi' (July-August) a mandate of the Sultan was issued to the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of Buz, for him to set out from Dhemar and pitch his camp against the castle of Hezzan, setting up the ballista against it. He did what he was commanded to do, and set up the ballista against it. The 'Emir Shemsu'd-Din 'Abbas son of Muhammed son of ' Abbas, too, joined (the Court) on his removal from (the government of) Harad. And in the latter part of the month of the latter Rebi^v the Kurds murdered Hasan son of Iyas, governor of San'a', together with six men of the Ghuzz people, of whom were the son of Ghalkib, Taj son of 'Izz, and the son of Minqar, besides a number of footmen. So the Sultan detached 'Abbas son of Muhammed with fifty horsemen besides his own array, who set out from Ta'izz on the 5th of the former Jumada (27th August, 1313), and lemained with the son of Buz in his camp. The ballista ceased not to batter Hezzan until it had destroyed so much of it that no one knew that thunderbolts had ever done to a castle what the ballista had effected in Hezzan. ۞۞۞

When the Kurds became hard pressed and they were reduced to extremity, seeing death plainly before them, they took asylum with the Sultan. The Sheykh Muhammed son of 'Abdu'Mh son of 'Umer son of Jened wrote in their behalf entreating the Sultan's kindness towards them, and referring to him for an amnesty in their respect. A mandate of the Sultan was issued granting them an amnesty, and was entrusted to the 'Emir 'Ibrahim son of Shukr and to JelAl son of 'Esed. These, then, were introduced into the Sultan's presence at Jened, where they made their submission and begged for the favourable disposition of the august mind. He reverted to the generous natural character and granted them forgiveness on condition that nothing should emanate from them which

might call for anger in their respect. They surrendered Hezzan and returned to Dhemar as they were used to do in the service. The Sultan ordered the camps pitched against them to be removed, and those camps were in effect removed on the day of the new moon in the month of Rejeb of the year 713 (21st October, 1313).

f. 210^a The 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of Hasan son of Buz proceeded to San'a', and the 'Erafr 'Abbas son of Muhammed to the country of the Ilemdan tribe to destroy their grain crops, devastate their land, and pitch his camp against Beyt-En'um,¹¹⁵⁶ because of what had arisen on their part that was not approved of. The Sultan commanded, therefore, that their crops should be ravaged in return for what they had done.

And at this date the august cavalcade proceeded to Zcbi'd, and entered it on the 12th of Rejeb (2nd November, 1313). And there came to the Sultan, as he was staying in Zebid, the great 'Emir Hadi son of 'Izzu'd-Din and Dawud son of Musa, entreating for the 'Emir 'Esedu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ahmed son of 'Izzu'd-Din ; but their request was not granted that he should come forth out of prison. There was now issued a command from the Sultan for the advance of the 'Emir 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idris son of 'Aliyy to the district of Suheyb^{n:i7} with a considerable force of horse and foot. He remained in the land of the 'Esawida¹¹⁵⁸ until they had pledged double hostages. He then marched to Maqmah,¹¹⁵⁹ where the troops ravaged their town and destroyed a large quantity of their store corn. The 'Emir also devastated a large extent of sown crops and other things belonging to the Jahafil.

On the 1st of Dhu'l-Hijja (18th March, 1314) the Sultan set free the 'Emi'i Jcmalu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas from the prison of Ta'izz, the Sultan himself being then at Zebi'd. The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din, and with him the Governor of Ta'izz, went down to the august Court to request that he might return to the service of the Sultan, and that the castle of Dhafer¹¹⁶⁰ might be taken possession of; these

requests were complied with. His stay in the prison was of four years' duration, neither one day more nor one day less. He remained in Zebid a space, a number of his people and of the sons of his paternal uncle having come down to him and informed him of the refusal of his son to give up the said castle. He therefore begged the Sultan to accept his children and paternal cousins as hostages, with four lawful wives of his female household who were already at SatVa', and that he should be left to go up as he was, so that he might attain to an entrance into the castle and deliver it over to the agents of the Sultan his lord. This was permitted to him, and he journeyed to his son. When he had ascended to the castle and taken possession thereof, he* turned out his son and ordered him to journey to the court of the Sultan. He delivered the castle to the agents of the Sultan. f. 201

And in this year A.H. 713 the Shen'f 'Ebu'l-Ghayth son of 'Ebu Numcyy arrived at Mekka from Egypt with a large military force, among them being three hundred and twenty horse from among the Turkish slave-guards and five hundred horse from among the Sherifs of Medina, besides what had joined on to them from among the freebooters and robbers. When Rumeytha and Humcyda obtained intelligence of their coming, they both fled in the direction of I.Ialy of the son of Ya'qub.¹¹⁶¹ The Shen'f 'Ebu'l-Ghayth then took charge of Mekka. The commander was the 'Emi'r Seyfu'd-Din Tafsa. When the auspicious ark and the divinely aided Mu'eyyedien banner arrived, the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tafsa and the Shen'f 'Ebu'l-Ghayth went forth to meet them, and went up with them to the mountains of 'Arefat, as was the custom. f. 210^b

In the year A.H. 714 (A.D. 1314-15) the Shen'f 'Ebu'l-Ghayth son of 'Ebu Numcyy, with the 'Emir Seyfu'd Din Tafsa journeyed towards the canton of Haly of the son of Ya'qub to seek for Rumeytha and Hurneyda; but they found no tidings of them, as the two had already reached the country of the Serat mountains. When the 'Emir Seyfu'd-Din Tafsa reached Haly he would not enter the place, but remarked : (f.211^a f. 211^b)

" This is the first of the dominions of the lord of Yemen, and is not to be entered, save by command of the Sultan Melik Nasir." So he turned back on his heel.

In Safer of the year 714 (May-June, 1314) the 'Emir 'Abdu'llah son of 'Aliyy son of Wehhas delivered over the castle of Dhafer¹¹⁶² in an equitable manner to the 'Emir Suleyman son of Muhammed, lord of 'Arus,¹¹⁶³ the castle of Lijam^{11M} being given up to him. He moved to this latter, and transferred all that he possessed at Dhafer, family and goods; so he gave up Dhafer and went forth from it. His hostages were allowed to depart from San'a'; and letters came from the 'Emir Suleyman announcing his having taken possession, on the night preceding Thursday the 14th of the first Rebf in the year (1st July, 1314). Drums were beat at the joyful news, and the harbingers received robes of honour. The Sultan equipped his hostages, people and children, sending them forth to him. The 'Emir 'Abdullah came down to the sacred court of the Sultan, who bestowed upon him the kettle-
rdrum and banners, conferring upon him also the fief of Qahma.

And in the night preceding the 15th of the latter Rebf¹ of this year 714 (28th July, 1314) died the Shcrif 'Imadu'd-Din 'Idrt's son of 'Aliyy son of 'Abdullah son of Hasan son of Hamza son of Suleyman son of Hamza son of 'Aliyy son of Hamza. He was a noble man, witty, brave, generous, munificent, prodigal. He was learned, intelligent, wise, talented, possessed of the qualities of an 'Imam. He was a poet, eloquent and correct. We have already given samples of his verse enough to bear witness to his eminence. He was the author of the book named " The Treasuty of Good Men, towards a Knowledge of the Biography and Traditions (of the Prophet)," which is a superior and instructive work. He also wrote a number of books on various sciences. A number of poets have eulogized him, to whom he used to make magnificent gifts. He was, God, who be extolled, have mercy on him, extreme in his munificence, generosity, and valour. God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

And in the year A.H. 715 (A.D. 1315-16) the 'Emir 'Ala'u'd-Din Kesh-Dughdi^{U65} came to court, and with him a party of persons sent for from the lands of Egypt and Syria. The said 'Emir 'Aki'u'd-Din was marshal of the household to Melik Mudhaffer, lord of Hamat; and was eminent among the men of his class, uniting prowess of the spear with chasteness of speech. He had in his memory a whole number of the poems of the pre-Muhammedan days of paganism, of the poets born pagans but dead in 'Islam, and of others besides, modern Muslims and affiliated Arabians. He knew also more or less of falconry; and it is said that he knew somewhat of the art of playing musical instruments. He advanced in the favour of the Sultan with so great a lapidity that the like had never been known. The Sultan, on whom be the mercy of God, who be extolled, recompensed him with an extensive fief, giving him also the kettledrums and banners. He made him one of his familiars.

(ff. 212^b-213^a)
f. 213^bf. 214^a

In this year A.H. 715, also, the Shenf Humeyda son of 'Ebu Numeyy returned to Mckka and killed his brother 'Ebu'l-Ghayth,^{nGG} making himself master of Mekka. The Sultan Melik Nasir was angered at this, and sent out a compact array of forces in company with the Shcrif Seyfu'd-Din 'Utayfa. So when Humeyda received intelligence of their arrival he fled from Mekka, of which 'Utayfa took possession, Humeyda getting away to the east.

And in this year A.H. 715, again, the judge Jemalu'd-Din Muhammed son of the jurist Radiyyu'd-Di'n 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawite took charge of the office of Judge of Judges, the Sultan giving him that important post as a mark of honour to his father, for his age at the time was but 20 years.

And in it, too, died the jurist, the 'Imdm, the very learned 'Ebu'l-Hasan 'Aliyy son of the jurist 'Ibrahim son of Muhammed son of Huseyn the Bejlite, whose nativity was in the year A.H. 633 (A.D. 1235) or A.H. 634 (A.D. 1236). He was a blessed man, renowned for his perfect knowledge of jurisprudence and nobility of character, as well as good moral qualities. He

studied jurisprudence at first under his paternal uncle 'Isma'il. He then migrated to Beyt-Huseyn,¹¹⁶⁷ and completed his law course under the jurist 'Umer son of 'Aliyy the Teba'ite, from whom he acquired the *Muhedhhib*¹¹⁶⁸ in a satisfactory manner, and who made him learn it by heart. So he got it by heart in such fashion of memory as to distinguish between the (conjunctions) 'also' and 'so' (in the consecutive clauses). He also acquired from him the science of rhetoric and others, chastening his diction under him in a way to excite admiration. He next journeyed to the jurist 'Ahmed son of Musa son of 'Ujeyl,¹¹⁰⁹ acquiring instruction from him also. He then returned to his own country and took up his abode in the village of Shujeyna,¹¹⁷⁰ keeping to the path of piety and abstention with a perfect tenacity, while he set himself up as a professor. People came to him from near and from far, and he became famous for science and for virtue. He was the noblest man of his epoch in respect of character, the most apprehensive of science by his faculties, and the most frequent as to giving lectures on the Qur'an and on the apostolic practices.¹¹⁷¹ Thus saith Jenediyy:¹¹⁷² "Abdu'llah son of Muhammed the Red ('el-'Ahmc), one of the professors of Zebid, informed me, saying: 'I was a companion of the jurist 'Aliyy son of 'Ibrahfm, and kept to his society for twenty years, during which I never knew an asker who asked of him and he made an excuse; on the contrary, he gave him that for which he asked; and he used to practise all the duties towards God, whether obligatory or commendable, with an assiduous performance. He was the most blessed in his teaching of all the jurists.'" Again hath Jenediyy said: "And the jurist Muhammed son of 'Abdu'llah the Hadramawtite, the jurist of Zebid, and its official legist, also informed me, saying: 'When I came to the jurist 'Aliyy son of 'Ibrahim, wishing to read under him, and I was in a state of trepidation, I wished to collect my senses for the acquisition of science. At the first lesson which I read with him, I rose up, but experienced the very reverse of the ardour that had animated me, for there were

rw

f. 214^br*ai*

on my mind a number of problems that had appeared doubtful to me. But when I began, and read with him the first day, I brought to mind the whole of the problems ; still, not one of those problems was there which I so brought to mind but that its difficulty vanished and its error became distinguishable from its correct portion, and I have never ceased to realize an increase until this my present time, which, I doubt not, is a fruit of his blessing." Jenediyy has further said : " Pie was possessed of great worldly means. If he remained in his house, he fed all who came, all visitors, and all students whose means were exhausted. He used very frequently to perform the Mekka pilgrimage, spending, on the road and at Mekka, sums without limit. They have counted his times of performance thereof, and it was something over thirty pilgrimages. He was the most ready of men in imparting jurisprudence, and the most perfect of them in repeating the *Muhedhhib* away from any copy of the book by heart. There issued from his instruction about a hundred professors, and there was not among all the teachers of latter times, in the low seaboard lands or in the highlands, anyone who had more disciples than he." His death took place on the 12th Muharrem of the year 715 (18th April, 1315).

In the year A.H. 716 (A.D. 1316-17) there came upon the Sultan a severe sickness, which it was feared would destroy him, and from it he was near to dissolution. There arose false rumours of his death, and it is related that the judge Jemalu'd-Din Muhammed son of 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawitc wrote to Melik Nasir Jelalu'd-Din Muhammed son of Melik 'Eshref I on confidential matters, and ordered him to publish a claim (to the sovereignty), together with his loss of all hope for his paternal uncle. He wrote letters to the chief towns also. When this information became spread abroad, the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed issued in haste from Ta'izz to Jened, he being still labouring from ague. The son of his brother took fright at this, and sought a refuge in Mount Sewraq,¹¹⁷³ a mountain easy of defence and towering over the

f. 215a

rev

city of Jened. The Sultan equipped troops against him, their commander being the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Buz son of Hasan son of Buz. He pitched against him, and surrounded the mountain on every side. Melik Nasir then begged for an amnesty from the Sultan, who granted it to him. He then came down to him under the amnesty, and an alliance, with peace, resulted between them. It is said he informed the Sultan of the cause of this event, and that he who had engaged him to undertake the act was simply the judge Jemalu'd-Din son of 'Ebu Bekr the Yahyawite. When the Sultan had ascertained the truth of the matter, he dismissed the judge Jemalu'd-Din from the judgeship and chained him up in the castle of Ta'izz, conferring the functions of the judgeship on the judge Radiyyu'd-Din 'Ebu Bekr son of 'Ahmed son of 'Umer son of 'Edi'b, one of the jurists of the Shafi'ite school. This took place in a council held by the Sultan with a large number of the jurists of the highlands and of the low countries of the sea-coast, unanimity being secured in the decision. He was a jurist of eminence, possessed extensive science and well acquainted with many current matters deduced by reasoning or handed down traditionally, as also a fecundity of speech and an experience that had drawn milk from all the teats of fortune.

In the year A.H. 717 (A.D. 1317-18) there arrived at court the judge 'Ebu'l-Mahasin 'Abdu'l-Baqi son of 'Abdu'l-Mejfd from Damascus by way of Mekka in consequence of a request from the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, who gave to him, of his munificence, an amount beside which appears small all the munificence of bygone worthies of generosity and liberality. He appointed him to the office of secretary for epistolary correspondence in the territory of Yemen. He was the paragon of his epoch and the unique one of his generation for chastity of diction, eminence, exemplariness, and nobleness.

In this year A.H. 717, again, the divinely aided forces entered Felela,¹¹⁷⁴ taking possession thereof. Rejoicings took place in the whole territory.

In the same year an envoy arrived from the lord of **Hurmuz** with presents and rarities; the Sultan received him as was fitting, showing him honour and kindness.

(f. 217^b)f. 218^a

In this year A.H. 717, also, died the jurist Sherefu'd-Din 'Ahmed son of the jurist 'Aliyy the Juneyd son of the jurist 'Ahmed son of the jurist Muhammed son of Mansur son of Juneyd, who was born in the year A.H. 659 (A.D. 1260-1). He was learned in jurisprudence; he knew the Qur'an by heart, was experienced and well-informed. He was appointed tutor in the 'Esediyya¹¹⁷⁵ College in the city of Ta'izz after his father had filled the office. The jurist 'Ebu Hekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawite used to look with favour on his condition and that of his brothers, out of consideration for his discipleship to their father. Subsequently the soul of Melik Mu'eyyid called on him to read and recite the Qur'an in the days of his father Meltk Mudhaffer. He enquired for a competent jurist, and was directed to the jurist Muhammed son of 'Abbas the Sha'bite, whom he requested to teach him to recite, but who excused himself and indicated this son of Juneyd. Mu'eyyid sent for him and told him his object. He answered "Consult my father," meaning the jurist 'Ebu Bekr son of Muhammed son of 'Umer the Yahyawite. Mu'eyyid replied: "Didst thou not mention to us that thy father is already dead?" So he informed the prince of whom he meant. The prince consulted the jurist, who advised him to engage the son of Juneyd. Mu'eyyid therefore read and recited with him; and there sprang up between the two a familiarity, friendship, and intimacy, to such a degree that he used to ride out when the prince rode. He went up with him to San'a' on a she-mule with an ornamental girth, after the manner of riding used by wezirs. In San'a' the people used to betake themselves to his door and acclaim in passing him. He ceased not to be with him until the prince journeyed to Shahr¹¹⁷⁶ in the year A.H. 694 (A.D. 1294-5) I and when Mudhaffer died, and there arose between 'Eshref and Mu'eyyid the dispute that ensued, so that Melik Mu'eyyid was made prisoner and his followers dispersed,

f. 218^b

this jurist went to Shujeyna¹¹⁷⁷ and remained with the jurists, the sons of the Bejlite. When the sovereignty lapsed to Melik Mu'eyyed, the jurist presented himself to him and was reinstated in his former position, where he never failed to enjoy the favour of Mu'eyyed. He was a jurist versed in the sources of the law, a master of syntax and lexicology. He had also a talent for inditing poetry, and discoursed satisfactorily on mystical philosophy. The people of Semker¹¹⁷⁸ had a full confidence in him. He expired on a Wednesday the 12th of the first Jumada in the year A.H. 717 (21st July, A.D. 1317). May God, who be extolled, have mercy on him.

f. 219^a And in the year A.H. 718 (A.D. 1318-19) the judge Safiyyu'd-D/n 'Abdu'llah son of 'Abdu'r-Rnzzaq of Wasit came to court at the urgent request of the Sultan, who spent upon him up to the time of his arrival about two thousand mithqals¹¹⁷⁹ of coined gold. When he arrived, as we have related, the Sultan conferred on him the office of Collector-General of the Revenue. He was in great favour with the Sultan, and his control extended over all the exchequers. He was husband to the daughter of the 'Emir 'Ala'u'd-Din Kesh-Dughdi, who it was that indicated him to the Sultan. He was very severe in his proceedings towards the people. He next went to 'Aden, and brought thence to the public treasury three hundred thousand royal ducats. When he came with this sum he met the Sultan at Jened, who showed him honour and kindness, exalting the estimation in which he was held.

And in this year A.H. 718 envoys went forth to Egypt; these being the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din Hasan son of 'Esed and those who had the custom to travel in his suite. Sultan Melik Nasir received them in the very best manner.

In this year A.H. 718, again, the 'Emir 'Ala'u'd-Din Kesh-Dughdi organized the forces of the Sultan, divinely aided, on the model of the Egyptian armies. He established a wing on the right flank and a wing on the left flank, placing behind the Sultan numerous companies. He made the slave-guards mount by sound of trumpet, forming among them a corps of battle-axe men ; and he got the Sultan to mount in that costume.¹¹⁸⁰

In this year A.H. 718, too, died the august lady, the Lady of the Palace of Dumluwa, daughter of our lord the Sultan Melik Mudhaffer Shemsu'd-Din Yusuf son of 'Umcr son of 'Aliyy son of Resul, who was she that was named Nebila. She was a righteous woman, God-fearing, affectionate towards her kin, beneficent to whomsoever sought refuge with her. She built a college in the city of Ta'izz and a mosque in Mount Sabfr.¹¹⁸¹ She also built a college in the city of Zebid, which is called 'Eshrefiyya,¹¹⁸² to the south of the mosque of the two pillars (Mesjidu'l-Mi'leyn).¹¹⁸³ She gave, in mortmain trust for the whole, estates sufficient to maintain all. She used to live in the castle of Ta'izz until there bioke out between her brother Mu'eyyed and the son of her brother, Nasir son of 'Eshref, the misunderstanding mentioned above. The Sultan then became alarmed at her, and ordered her to take up her abode in the town. She therefore went down from the castle, and dwelt in the western quarter of the city of Ta'izz until she died, her demise occurring in the middle of Muharrem, A.H. 718 (18th Maich, A.D. 1318); may God, who be extolled, have mercy on her. f. 220^b

In the year A.H. 719 (A.D. 1319-20) the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed proceeded to the cantons of Siham, staying at Kcdra,¹¹⁸⁴ dismissing some of the governors and appointing others. The judge Safiyyu'd-Din was permanent in the controllership of the exchequers. This same year, too, Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed bestowed on the 'Emir 'Ala'u'd-Din Kesh-Dughdi the Heutenancy of the Sultan and the field-marshalship of the divinely aided forces, in which office he advanced above others in an unheard - of manner, so that there sprang up between him and the judge Safiyyu'd-Din, his son-in-law, an estrangement of outward manner and inward feeling. (f. 221^a)
f. 221^b

In this year A.H. 719, again, there arose in the Sultan an ill-feeling against the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din 'Umer son of 'Ala'u'd-Din the Shihabite, whom he put out of office, arrested him, and consigned him to prison. Certain words were attributed to him on the subject of Melik Nasir. He remained f. 222^a

several weeks in prison, when the Sultan, having ascertained that he was innocent, set him at liberty.

There arose between the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din and the judge Jemadn'd-Din prolonged disputes. The judge Jemalu'd-Din produced *in* the presence of the Sultan a body of persons who bore witness against the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din in respect of many words uttered on the subject of Melik Nasir. Upon this Melik
nr Ndsir presented himself in person before the Sultan, and by denials cleared away from the 'Emir Shuja'u'd-Din all that had been reported as having been said by him. The Sultan was convinced of the part that had been played by the judge Jemdlu'd-Din, and became extremely exasperated against the judge, whom he delivered over to the judge Safiyyu'd-Din to extract from him a large sum of money. So he compelled him to pay fines of large amount by torture of a hideous nature.

f. 222^b In the year A.H. 720 (A.D. 1320-1) the 'Emir 'Ala'u'd-Din Kesh-Dughdi fell sick of a grievous disorder, which eventuated with him in death. Then there arose many suits against the judge Safiyyu'd-Din 'Abdu'llah son of 'Abdu'r-Razzaq, and the clerks of the exchequers proved in the presence of the Sultan that he had taken a certain amount out of the revenue. So the Sultan dismissed him from the office of Collector-General of the Revenue, giving the duty of this office to the 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Yusuf son of Ya'qub son of Jewad, who was a great 'Emir, of elevated views, and prudently cunctative. He begged of the Sultan, on whom may God, who be extolled, have mercy, that he would not place the punishment of anyone in his hands, and that any revenue that might be ascertained as due to the exchequers the Sultan should commission the 'Emir of the body-guard to levy it. This is a great indication of his goodness.

And in this year A.H. 720 there came to court the judge the most honourable Muhyi'd-Din Yahyd son of 'Abdu'l-Latif of
HI* Tekrft, from the dominions of Egypt, by way of Mekka the Honoured. He submitted in the presence of the Sultan many jewels, such as emeralds and pearls. He advanced in the good

graces of the Sultan at a rapid rate, and was raised to the grade of weztr. The Sultan delivered to him from his own private treasure one hundred thousand ducats of pure metal according to the award of the merchants. He also wrote in his favour to 'Aden for fifty thousand ; and when he went down to 'Aden he took possession therein as though its owner, he grasping also the office of wezir.

In this year A.H. 720, again, there came to court the 'Emir Bedru'd-Din. Hasan son of 'Ahmed son of Mukhtar, the 'Imam, the eminent, the erudite in the sciences of the ancients as to astronomy, geometry, and the almagest. He was instructed in every art and had some knowledge, practically, in every science, There was no one in the lands of Kgypt or countries of Syria, with all their extent, that could be compared to him for knowledge. The Sultan rejoiced greatly at his arrival.

f. 223^a(f. 223^b)

In the year A.U. 721 (A.D. 1321-2) the judge Muhyi'd-Din came to court from 'Aden, and there ensued between him and the judge Safiyyu'd-Din many suits, and there chanced to Muhyi'd-Din some incidents that were not prepossessing, and that ensued in a diminution of the esteem in which he had been held by the Sultan. In these he was seeking for the wez/rship, in the acquisition of which he strove, labouring diligently. When he became importunate and over - pressing the Sultan said : " By no means ; there is no hope (for him)." Then again the Sultan desired to console him, so, on the day of the festival, the festival of the cessation of the month of fast, he made him ride in the place of the procession usually occupied by the wezir, and he therefore rode with the turban and cloak, costumed in the fashion of the wezirs of Egypt.

f. 224^a*no*

And in this year A.H. 721 died the Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, on whom be God's mercy. He had aheady decided upon going down to Zebid, as was his usual custom every year. He went forth to the pavilion named Shejira,¹¹⁸⁵ and abode there about ten days by reason of an indisposition that befell him. When this sickness became serious, he being still at the pavilion Ddru'sh-Shejira, he commanded his son Sultan Melik Mjudhdh

(f. 224^b)f. 225^a

to go up to the castle, he having then no other child besides him. He went up to the castle in the latter part of the day on the Monday, 30th of Dhu'l-Qa'da of this year (21st December, 1321), and his father, Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed, died soon after midnight in the night preceding Tuesday the first night of Dhu'l-Hijja (22nd December).

The 'Emir Jemalu'd-Din Yi'i[^]uf son of Ya'qub son of Jewad had already gone down, who was at the time Heutenant of the realm, field-marshal of the forces, and marshal of the household troops. Together with him there had gone down a body of the forces and of the chiefs of the 'Kmirs. He showed an exemplary firmness, preserved the order of the state, and had the call "Blessed is the night!"¹¹⁸⁰ shouted by the sentries in Shejira until the night had come to an end. Late in the night they carried up the deceased Sultan to the castle and laid him down in the court of justice, he having, God be merciful to him, already expressed as his last wish that a party of jurists should perform his mortuary ablution, among them being the jurist the Dhafarite and the bodyguard.sman Baha ; also, that all the utensils used in his ablution should be of earthenware bought in the market, where also his winding-sheet was to be purchased. These were all bought so, as above described ; and that was the first thing that the people disapproved of in his son Mujahid.

f. 225^b He was carried from the court of justice to his own college, which he had originated in the western quarter of Ta'izz; he was there buried, and the day of his interment was a day to be seen. And ah ! alas, for a calamity which left the public amazed and the courtiers bewildered !

Among the monuments left by him was the college which he had instituted in the western quarter of Ta'izz, known by the name of the Mu'cyyediyya, and in which he set up a professor, with students and a tutor, a precentor, a mu'edhdhin, a teacher and orphans to learn the Qur'an, and a chanter who should recite the Qur'an in all seven of its *literatim* versions.¹¹⁸⁷ He gave in mortmain trust lands and vineyards sufficient to maintain them ; and he further bestowed thereon in mortmain trust a

library of exquisite manuscripts. He built in his days a number of edifices also. His daughter, again, who was styled the Lady of the Palace of Dumluwa, built a college in the city of Zebid and a mosque in Ta'izz ; also a college in Dhafar of the Habudite. She rebuilt, furthermore, a mosque in Zebid. His privy-purse treasurer built a mosque in the city of Ta'izz, which is the one that stands between the western quarter and 'Adma,^{1188,9} by the side of which are the basins. It is known as his to this day, being called the Mosque of the Treasurer, "Mesjidu'l-Khazinclar." The 'Emir Muhammed son of Mika'fl, marshal of his household forces, built also a college in Zebid, the one that fronts the Shubariq¹¹⁹⁰ gate. Beneath it passes the conduit, and it is now in ruins.

۳۱۷

The Sultan Melik Mu'eyyed was a good prince, brave, enterprising, impetuous in a charge, munificent, generous, prodigal. There are some celebrated deeds of his, instances of bravery and of munificence, known to his familiars and to the public. He was, God's mercy on him, a student in many of the sciences. He made some progress in every art, taking a bachelor's degree in every science. He used to learn by heart the Muqaddima¹¹⁹¹ of Tahir son of Babashadh, and, so as to recite it, Zujajiyy's work on words and sentences named "The Sufficiency of the would-be Learner by heart" (Kifayetu'l-Mutahaffidh).¹¹⁹² He studied the *Tenbih*¹¹⁹³ (Admonition) of 'Ebu 'Ishaq of Shiraz, so as to recite it accurately. He studied the detailed books on every art, and attended lectures on the apostolic traditions by Sheykhs in whom confidence was placed, and who were of those who carried far back their authorities. The Sheykh, the venerated 'Imam, 'Ebu'l -'Abbas 'Ahmed son of Muhammed the Taberite¹¹⁹⁴ ('Et-Taberiyy), Sheykh of the Apostolical Practices in the Holy Court (of the Temple of Mekka), gave him his diploma as a doctor licensed to teach the Collections of Bukhariyy and Tirmidhiyy,¹¹⁹⁵ taught him the Sahih of Muslim,¹¹⁹⁶ and licensed him as to all the other fundamental works according to the tenour of what he might transmit from books he had heard, **lectured** from, and had learnt, as to what he had himself written

f. 226^a

۳۱۸

upon in every branch, and whatever existed written by him. He wrote an abridgment of the book *fem/iera*¹¹⁹⁷ on falconry, explaining in his abridgment what the author of the work had not entered into, as to the operation of dredging with flour and lengthening the wing by a graft. He wrote a satisfactory commentary~on the "Book of the Chase," by 'Ebu Firas,¹¹⁹⁸ which book begins with the distich:

*" What is life f That with which the hours arc lengthened. Life
is that ivith which pleasure is perfected"*

He copied out a portion of the poems of the time of Ignorance, of the converts to 'Islam who were pagans before its promulgation, and of those who wrote Arabic as an acquired language when 'Islam first spread. He collected works on science in all its different varieties, whether on the science of the modes of reading them, on the readers or reciters of them, of the traditions relating to them, of their jurisprudence, of their elements, of their branches, of their realities, of their literature, of a knowledge of days of battle of the Arabians, their dates, their nominal designations, and the poetry relating to them, according to their various generations, a vast quantity. But God knows best.

